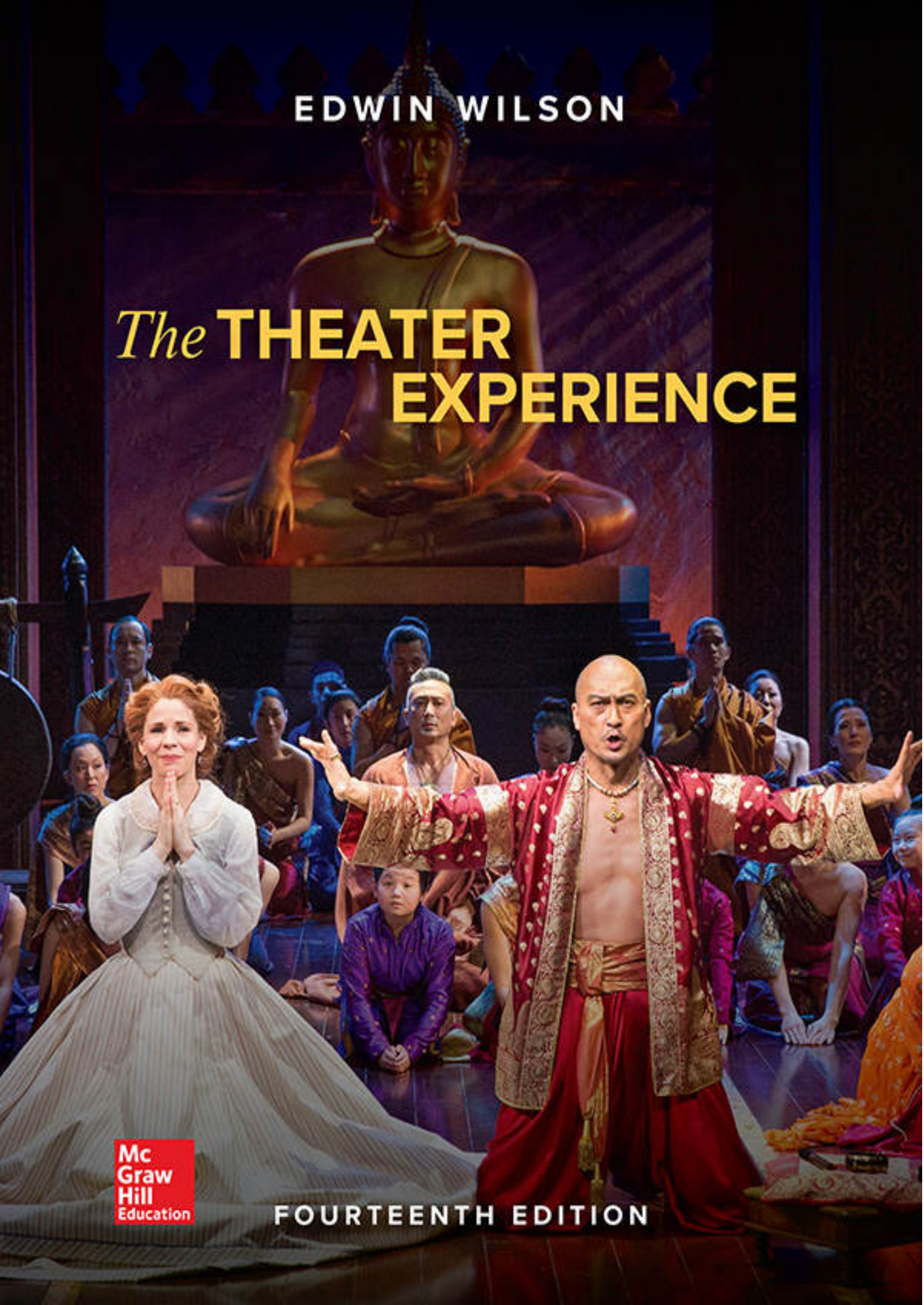

EDWIN WILSON
The THEATER EXPERIENCE
Mc Graw Hill Education
FOURTEENTH EDITION

# The Theatre Experience

# The Theatre Experience

FOURTEENTH EDITION

**EDWIN WILSON**
Professor Emeritus
Graduate School and University Center
The City University of New York

Mc Graw Hill Education

THE THEATRE EXPERIENCE, FOURTEENTH EDITION

Published by McGraw-Hill Education, 2 Penn Plaza, New York, NY 10121. Copyright © 2020 by Edwin Wilson. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. Previous editions © 2015, 2011, and 2009. No part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written consent of McGraw-Hill Education, including, but not limited to, in any network or other electronic storage or transmission, or broadcast for distance learning.

Some ancillaries, including electronic and print components, may not be available to customers outside the United States.

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 LWI 21 20 19 18

ISBN 978-1-260-05607-5 (bound edition)
MHID 1-260-05607-4 (bound edition)
ISBN 978-1-260-49340-5 (loose-leaf edition)
MHID 1-260-49340-7 (loose-leaf edition)

Portfolio Manager: *Sarah Remington*
Lead Product Developer: *Mary Ellen Curley*
Senior Product Developer: *Beth Tripmacher*
Senior Content Project Manager: *Danielle Clement*
Content Project Manager: *Emily Windelborn*
Senior Buyer: *Laura Fuller*
Design: *Egzon Shaqiri*
Content Licensing Specialist: *Ann Marie Jannette*
Cover Image: ©*Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux*
Compositor: *MPS Limited*

All credits appearing on page or at the end of the book are considered to be an extension of the copyright page.

**Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Wilson, Edwin, 1927- author.
The theatre experience / Edwin Wilson, Professor Emeritus, Graduate School and University Center, The City University of New York.
Theater experience
Fourteenth Edition. | New York, NY : McGraw-Hill Education, [2020] | “Previous editions 2015, 2011, and 2009.” | Includes bibliographical references and index.
LCCN 2018047648 | ISBN 9781260056075 (student edition : alk. paper)
LCSH: Theater. | Theater—History.
LCC PN1655 .W57 2020 | DDC 792—dc23

LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2018047648

The Internet addresses listed in the text were accurate at the time of publication. The inclusion of a website does not indicate an endorsement by the authors or McGraw-Hill Education, and McGraw-Hill Education does not guarantee the accuracy of the information presented at these sites.

www.mhhe.com

# About the Author

Teacher, author, and critic, Edwin Wilson has worked in many aspects of theatre. Educated at Vanderbilt University, the University of Edinburgh, and Yale University, he received an MFA from the Yale School of Drama, as well as the first Doctor of Fine Arts degree awarded by Yale. He has taught at Yale, Hofstra, Vanderbilt, Hunter College, and the CUNY Graduate Center. At Hunter, he served as chair of the Department of Theatre and Film and head of the graduate theatre program. At CUNY, he was executive director of the Center for the Advanced Study of Theatre Arts, later known as the Martin E. Segal Theatre Center. Edwin Wilson served as theatre critic for *The Wall Street Journal* for twenty-three years. In addition to *The Theatre Experience*, he is coauthor with Alvin Goldfarb of *Living Theatre: A History*, published in its first six editions by McGraw-Hill and in its seventh edition by W. W. Norton. He is also coauthor of *Theatre: The Lively Art* and the *Anthology of Living Theater*, *both also* published by McGraw-Hill. In addition he edited the volume *Shaw on Shakespeare*.

Wilson was president of the New York Drama Critics Circle and served for several terms on the Tony Nominating Committee and the Pulitzer Prize Drama Jury. He is on the board of the John Golden Fund and for thirty years was on the board of the Susan Smith Blackburn Prize. He served for many years on the board of the Theatre Development Fund, of which he was also president. Before turning to teaching and writing, Edwin Wilson was assistant to the producer for the film *Lord of the Flies*, directed by Peter Brook, and the Broadway play *Big Fish, Little Fish*, directed by John Gielgud. He produced several off-Broadway shows and coproduced a Broadway play directed by George Abbott. He also directed in summer and regional theatre, serving one season as

resident director of the Barter Theatre in Abingdon, Virginia, and was executive producer of the film *The Nashville Sound*. As a playwright, Wilson has had successful stage readings or productions of a farce, a history play, a musical revue, and a musical version of Dickens's *Great Expectations*, for which he wrote book and lyrics. He also authored a murder mystery, *The Patron Murders*.

To the memory of my wife, Catherine.

# Contents in Brief

**Part 1 The Audience**

**1** The Audience: Its Role and Imagination
**2** Background and Expectations of the Audience
**3** Theatre Spaces

**Part 2 The Performers and the Director**

**4** Acting for the Stage
**5** The Director and the Producer

**Part 3 The Playwright and the Play**

**6** Creating the World of the Play
**7** Dramatic Structure and Dramatic Characters
**8** Theatrical Genres

**Part 4 The Designers**

**9** Scenery
**10** Stage Costumes
**11** Lighting and Sound

**Part 5 The Theatre Today**

**12** Theatre Today: Traditional, Musical, Nontraditional, and Political Theatre
**13** Theatre Today: Diverse and Global

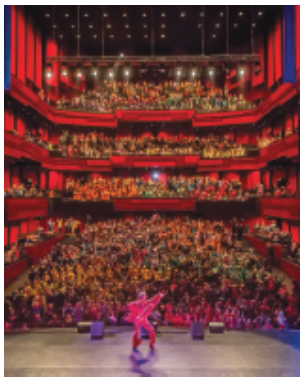
Plays That May Be Read Online
Glossary
Notes
Index

5011444

# Contents

## PART 1
## The Audience

### Chapter 1 The Audience: Its Role and Imagination



(©Arctic-Images/Corbis Documentary/Getty Images)


The Mediated Arts: Film and Television
The Contrast between Theatre and Film
Theatre Is Transitory and Immediate
Human Beings—The Focus of Theatre
The Chemistry of the Performer–Audience Contact
Theatre as a Group Experience
*Psychology of Groups*
*How Audience Composition Affects the Theatre Experience*
The Separate Roles of Performers and Spectators
*How Should the Audience Be Involved?*
*Audience Participation through Direct Action*
The Imagination of the Audience
*Tools of the Imagination: Symbol and Metaphor*

*The "Reality" of the Imagination*
The Imaginary Worlds of Theatre
*Realistic Elements of Theatre*
*Nonrealistic Elements of Theatre*
*Combining the Realistic and the Nonrealistic*
*Distinguishing Stage Reality from Fact*
Summary

**Chapter 2 Background and Expectations of the Audience**

(©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

Background of Individual Spectators
Background Information on the Play or Playwright
Background of the Period
*Theatre and Society*
*Modern Theatre and Culture*
Expectations: The Variety of Experiences in Modern Theatre
*Broadway and Touring Theatre*



*Resident Professional Theatre*
*Alternative Theatre: Off-Broadway and Elsewhere*
*Young People's and Children's Theatre*
*College and University Theatre*
*Community and Amateur Theatre*
The Critic, the Reviewer, and the Blogger
*The Critic/Reviewer*
*Fact and Opinion in Criticism*
*Critical Criteria*
The Dramaturg or Literary Manager
The Audience's Relation to Criticism
*The Audience's Independent Judgment*
Summary

**Chapter 3 Theatre Spaces**

(©T Charles Erickson)

Creating the Environment
Theatre Spaces
*Proscenium or Picture-Frame Stage: History and Characteristics*
*Arena Stage: History and Characteristics*
*Thrust Stage: History and Characteristics*
*Created and Found Spaces*
*All-Purpose Theatre Spaces: The Black Box*
Special Requirements of Theatre Environments
*Evaluating the Theatre Space*
Summary

## PART 2

# The Performers and the Director

**Chapter 4 Acting for the Stage**

(©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

Acting in Everyday Life
*Social Roles*
*Personal Roles*
Acting in Life versus Acting Onstage

Three Challenges of Acting
*Making Characters Believable*
*Physical Acting: Voice and Body*
*Synthesis and Integration*
Evaluating Performances
Summary



**Chapter 5 The Director and the Producer**

(©Boston Globe/Getty Images)

The Theatre Director
The Traditional Director
*The Director and the Script*
*The Director's Collaborator: The Dramaturg*
The Auteur Director and the Postmodern Director
*The Auteur Director*
*The Postmodern Director*
The Director and the Production: The Physical Production
The Director's Work with the Performers
*Casting*
*Rehearsals*
*The Director as the Audience's Eye*
*Movement, Pace, and Rhythm*
*Technical Rehearsal*
*Dress Rehearsal*
*Previews*
*The Director's Collaborator: The Stage Manager*
The Director's Power and Responsibility
The Producer or Managing Director
*The Commercial Producer*
*Noncommercial Theatres*

*The Producer's and Director's Collaborator: The Production Manager*
Completing the Picture: Playwright, Director, and Producer
*Evaluating Directing*
Summary

## PART 3

# The Playwright and the Play

### Chapter 6 Creating the World of the Play

(©Joan Marcus)

The Subject and Verb of Drama: People and Action
Structural Conventions: The Rules of the Game
*Limited Space*
*Limited Time*
*Strongly Opposed Forces*
*A Balance of Forces*
*Incentive and Motivation*
Creating Structure
*Plot versus Story*
*The Opening Scene*
*Obstacles and Complications*
*Crisis and Climax*
Point of View



*The Dramatist's Point of View*

*Society's Point of View*
Summary

**Chapter 7 Dramatic Structure and Dramatic Characters**

(©Robbie Jack/Corbis Entertainment/Getty Images)

Dramatic Structure
*Characteristics of Climactic Structure*
*Characteristics of Episodic Structure*
*Combinations of Climactic and Episodic Form*
*Rituals as Dramatic Structure*
*Patterns as Dramatic Structure*
*Serial Structure*
*Structure in Experimental and Avant-Garde Theatre*
*Structure in Musical Theatre*
Dramatic Characters
*Extraordinary Characters*
*Representative or Quintessential Characters*
*Stock Characters*
*Minor Characters*
*A Narrator or Chorus*
*Nonhuman Characters*
*The Audience and Character Types*
*Juxtaposition of Characters*
*Orchestration of Characters*
Summary

**Chapter 8 Theatrical Genres**

(©T Charles Erickson)


Types of Drama
Tragedy
*Traditional Tragedy*
*Modern Tragedy*
Heroic Drama
Bourgeois or Domestic Drama
Melodrama
Comedy
*Characteristics of Comedy*
*Techniques of Comedy*
*Forms of Comedy*
Tragicomedy
*What Is Tragicomedy?*
*Modern Tragicomedy*
Theatre of the Absurd
*Absurdist Plots: Illogicality*
*Absurdist Language: Nonsense and Non Sequitur*
*Absurdist Characters: Existential Beings*
Summary




## PART 4

# The Designers


**Chapter 9 Scenery**

(©Geraint Lewis)


The Audience's View
The Scene Designer
A Brief History of Stage Design
Scenic Design Today
*The Scene Designer's Objectives*
*Elements of Scene Design*
*The Process of Scene Design*
The Scene Designer's Collaborators and the Production Process
*Designing a Total Environment*
Evaluating Scene Design
Summary


---

**Chapter 10** **Stage Costumes**

(©Robbie Jack/Corbis Entertainment/Getty Images)


Costumes for the Stage
*Objectives of Costume Design*
*The Process of Costume Design*
*The Costume Designer at Work*

*The Costume Designer's Resources*
*The Costume Designer's Collaborators*
Related Elements of Costume Design
*Makeup*
*Hairstyles and Wigs*
*Masks*
*Millinery, Accessories, and Crafts*
Coordination of the Whole
Evaluating Costume Design
Summary

**Chapter 11 Lighting and Sound**

(©blanaru/iStock/Getty Images)

Stage Lighting
*A Brief History of Stage Lighting*
*Objectives and Functions of Lighting Design*
*The Lighting Designer*
Sound in the Theatre
*Amplification*
*The Sound Designer*
*Understanding Sound Reproduction and Sound Reinforcement*
*Sound Technology*



Special Effects in Lighting and Sound
Evaluating Lighting and Sound Design
Summary

**PART 5**

# The Theatre Today

## Chapter 12 Theatre Today: Traditional, Musical, Nontraditional, and Political Theatre

(©Carol Rosegg)


Traditional Theatre
The American Musical
Nontraditional (Experimental or Alternative) Theatre
*Happenings*
*Multimedia Theatre*
*Environmental Theatre*
*Postmodernism*
*Performance Art*
Political Theatre
Summary


## Chapter 13 Theatre Today: Diverse and Global

(©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

Feminist Theatre and Women Playwrights
Lgbtq Theatre
Diverse Multicultural Theatre
*African American Theatre*
*Asian American Theatre*
*Latino/a Theatre*
*Native American Theatre*
Global Theatre
*Theatres in India, China, and Japan in the Modern Period*
*Theatres in the Middle East*
*African Theatres and Drama*
*Russia and Eastern Europe*
*Western Europe, Britain, and Ireland*
*Latin American Theatres*
*Australia and Canada Since World War II*
Summary

Plays That May Be Read Online

Glossary
Notes
Index

# Preface

## ACTIVE AUDIENCE PARTICIPANTS, ACTIVE CLASS PARTICIPANTS

*The Theatre Experience* prepares students to be well-informed, well-prepared theatre audience members. With an audience-centered narrative that engages today's students, a vivid photo program that brings concepts to life, and features that teach and encourage a variety of skill sets, students master core concepts and learn to think critically about theatre and the world around them. As a result, students are better prepared for class, and better prepared for theatregoing.

### Engage with Your Role

- True to its original vision—to focus on the audience's experience of attending a live theatre performance—the 14th edition of *The Theatre Experience* **opens with three chapters that focus on the student as an audience member**. Topics include the difference between being at a live performance and watching a dramatic performance on film, TV, or an electronic device; the enhancement of the experience aided by the proper preparation and background; and the awareness of the role of the audience in live theatre.

(©VisitBritain/Eric Nathan/Getty Images)



- **Play Links** allow you to read many of the plays mentioned in the text online. Any play referenced in the text that can be found online is highlighted in blue typeface when first mentioned in a chapter. Should you want to read one of these plays, you can refer to the list that precedes the Glossary at the end of the book and find its URL. Titles are listed alphabetically.

The plays can be used to highlight key concepts and to complement the discussions found in *The Theatre Experience*, 14th edition. In addition, many of the new "Thinking about Theatre" and "Experiencing Theatre" exercises can also be supplemented and enhanced with examples from these plays.

## Master the Basics

**Parts Two, Three, and Four cover the important elements of theatre**: acting, directing, playwriting, and design. The authors' efficient structure and succinct style set up students for a clear understanding of the basic concepts, freeing up valuable class time for deeper discussions and more personal engagement with course concepts.

**Photo Essays and a dynamic art program** allow students to visualize the core theatrical concepts introduced in each chapter. Topics include modern domestic drama (Chapter 8), forms of comedy (Chapter 8), costumes and masks (Chapter 10), uses of stage lighting (Chapter 11), and others.

### Think Critically and Engage Actively

Based on feedback from instructors and students, the 14th edition of *The Theatre Experience* offers both time-tested and newly revised text features that help students deepen their understanding and appreciation of the theatrical experience.

- **"Playing Your Part"** is a feature in each chapter that includes two distinct sets of questions and activities that emphasize thinking and engaging critically.
  - **"Experiencing Theatre"** activities help students actively engage with the concepts of the text. These exercises ask students to undertake activities within the classroom or to understand how aspects of their everyday lives connect to core concepts discussed in the text.

## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. If you were to write a play about your life, what would you choose as your opening scene? What would some of your complications be? Would there be a climactic moment?
2. If you were to write a play about a family you know (your own or another), what point of view would you take? Why? Are there strongly opposed forces or balanced forces in this family?
3. If you were told you were going to have to attend a play that lasted over four hours, what would your reaction be? Why? What are your traditional expectations about the space and time of a play?
4. After watching a popular film, describe how the opening scene aids in setting the action. Describe one or two of the

complications in the film. Can you discuss the film's point of view?



- **"Thinking about Theatre"** questions challenge students to analyze and examine elements of a theatre experience.

## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. Think of a play you have read or seen where the main character encounters one impediment or roadblock after another. Describe the various obstacles that must be overcome before the end of the play.
2. Think of a play or musical you have seen or read where two major characters are in conflict with one another. Describe the two characters and explain the source of their conflict. How does it play out?
3. Think of a situation some people saw as very serious, but another person viewed as humorous. Explain what you believe led different people to see it so differently. What was your own feeling—was the incident funny or sad?

- **"In Focus"** boxes, also appearing in every chapter, help students understand and compare different aspects of theatre. They address historical perspectives on theatre, contemporary applications of technology, issues of theatrical structure, and global and other current issues in theatre, such as color- blind and nontraditional casting. Theatre artists such as Peter Brook and Josef Svoboda are also featured.

# WHAT'S NEW IN THE 14TH EDITION OF *THE THEATRE EXPERIENCE*

The 14th edition of *The Theatre Experience* has been updated, taking note of new talent that has appeared on the scene as well as new approaches to writing, directing, acting, and design presented in previous editions. New plays, new productions, new approaches, and new subject matter have all been recognized and explained. At the same time, well-established forerunners in the theatre universe, whether Greek, Roman, Elizabethan, or later, have been looked at anew.

The most significant changes in the 14th edition appear in Part Five, "The Theatre Today." This has been condensed to two chapters from three, and detailed information on history has been edited and reduced. This movement away from extensive theatre history in Part Five has allowed more space for what is suggested in the title of this section—the theatre today—therefore making this edition of *The Theatre Experience* more relevant to today's instructors and learners alike.

All elements of today's theatre are covered more thoroughly and clearly. Subjects such as women's theatre, LGBTQ theatre, global theatre, and theatre of diversity are dealt with in more detail and depth than in previous editions.



## Selected Chapter-by-Chapter Changes

In addition to the major changes outlined earlier, we have included significant new material throughout the text, including the following:

### Chapter 1: The Audience: Its Role and Imagination

- The opening section of Chapter 1 has been completely revised. In addition, a section titled "The Mediated Arts: Film and Television" has been introduced.

### Chapter 3: Theatre Spaces

- New description of the transformation of the Broadway Imperial Theatre for the musical *Natasha, Pierre & the Great*

*Comet of 1812* as an example of how space is a key element of a production.
- The discussion of stage directions has been moved to this chapter from the chapter on scenery to help students better understand the proscenium theatre.

**Chapter 4: Acting for the Stage**
- More extensive discussion of contemporary acting techniques and actor training.
- New "In Focus" box on technology and the actor.

**Chapter 5: The Director and the Producer**
- Extensive discussion of the responsibilities of the stage manager and the casting director.
- New "In Focus" box on color-blind and nontraditional casting.

**Chapter 7: Dramatic Structure and Dramatic Characters**
- Updated "In Focus" box on writing for theatre, film, and television as well as extensive coverage of dramatic structure in all its forms and variations. Also, detailed analysis of dramatic characters, both human and nonhuman. Included as well are such matters as the orchestration and juxtaposition of characters.

**Chapter 8: Theatrical Genres**
- New "In Focus" box on additional forms and the debate over categorization.

**Chapter 9: Scenery**
- Enhanced discussion of video and projection design.
- New "In Focus" box on projection design.
- Enhanced discussion of the use of technology to assist the scene designer.

**Chapter 10: Stage Costumes**
- New "In Focus" box on technology and costume design.

**Chapter 11: Lighting and Sound**
- New "In Focus" box on rock concert and theatre lighting.
- New discussion of assistive listening devices for audience members who are hearing impaired.

**Chapter 12: Theatre Today: Traditional, Musical, Nontraditional, and Political Theatre**

- A complete, thorough revision of both Chapters 12 and 13 (reduced from three chapters in previous editions to two in this edition).



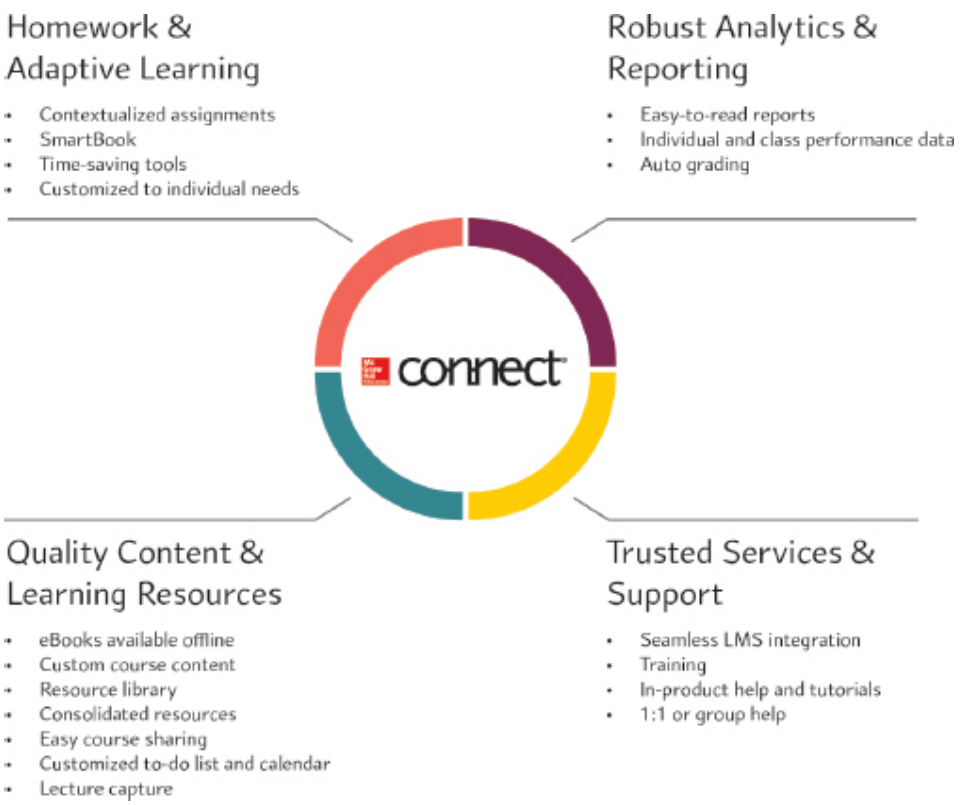
- This chapter includes revised coverage of traditional theatre in today's theatre as well as musical theatre. In addition, it covers new material on nontraditional and political theatre.

**Chapter 13: Theatre Today: Diverse and Global**

- Covers a wide range of contemporary theatre, including new material on feminist and women playwrights, continuing with LGBTQ, African American, Latino/a, and Native American theatre, and concluding with global theatre covering theatrical activity in six continents.
- Questions on how to evaluate a production of a historic play as well as how to evaluate a production of a new or contemporary play.

## CONNECT: ENHANCING THE THEATRE EXPERIENCE

Connect combines the content of *The Theatre Experience* with award-winning adaptive tools that help students prepare for their time in class with you. The tools in Connect help students understand and retain basic concepts: parts of the theatre, the creative artists and technicians who make it happen, and the tradition and historical background from which theatre springs. When students successfully master concepts using McGraw-Hill's Connect, you can spend more class time discussing theatre and theatrical performances, fostering a greater appreciation for the course and inspiring students to become lifelong audience members. Connect is reliable, easy to use, and can be implemented on its own or paired with your school's learning management system. Contact your McGraw-Hill Higher Education representative to learn more or to speak with an instructor who already uses Connect for his or her theatre courses.




xx

Connect for *The Theatre Experience* now includes two ways to read: an eBook and SmartBook. The eBook provides a simple, elegant reading experience, available for offline reading on a tablet. SmartBook creates a personalized online reading experience by highlighting the most impactful concepts that a student needs to learn. Students periodically test their knowledge as they read, and SmartBook adapts accordingly, highlighting content based on what the student knows and doesn't know. Real-time reports quickly identify the concepts that require more attention from individual students—or the entire class.

**SmartBook**

DESIGNED FOR
- Preparing for class
- Practice and study
- Focusing on key topics
- Reports and analytics

SUPPORTS
- Adaptive, personalized learning
- Assignable contents
- Tablet iOS and Android apps

**eBook**

DESIGNED FOR
- Reading in class
- Reference
- Offline reading
- Accessibility

SUPPORTS
- Simple, elegant reading
- Basic annotations
- Smartphone and tablet via iOS and Android apps

SMARTBOOK™

## Support for Instructors and Students

*The Theatre Experience* offers a wealth of supplemental materials to aid both students and instructors, including the Instructor's Manual and both computerized and print versions of the Test Bank.

For students, resources keyed directly to this edition include:

- The Theatre Goer's Guide, which is an excellent introduction to the art of attending and critiquing a play. This guide will assist students in everything from making theatre reservations and knowing when to applaud to evaluating a performance and doing web research.



- Detailed explanations and examples of major theatrical forms and movements.
- Synopses of plays.

create™

Craft your teaching resources to match the way you teach! With McGraw-Hill Create, you can easily rearrange chapters, combine material from other content sources, and quickly upload content you have written, like your course syllabus or teaching notes. Search through thousands of leading McGraw-Hill textbooks, and arrange your book to fit your teaching style. Create even allows you to personalize your book's appearance by selecting the cover and adding your name, school, and course information. Order a Create book and you'll receive a complimentary print review copy in 3–5 business days or a complimentary electronic review copy (eComp) via e-mail in about one hour. Go to www.mcgrawhillcreate.com today and register. Experience how McGraw-Hill Create empowers you to teach your students your way.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

First and foremost I wish to thank Professor Alvin Goldfarb for his invaluable and indispensable contribution to this and the previous edition of *The Theatre Experience*. My coauthor on *Living Theatre* and *Theatre: The Lively Art*, Al's ideas, his research and writing skills, his originality and imagination, and his persistence have been indispensable in completing this, the most audience-oriented and concise version of *The Theatre Experience* of the entire series.

I first developed many of the ideas in this book while teaching a course in Introduction to Theatre at Hunter College of the City University of New York. To my former students and colleagues at Hunter, I express my continuing appreciation. Also, to those professors and other experts who have contributed importantly to prior versions, I express my deep appreciation. They include Alexis Greene, Naomi Stubbs, Susan Tenneriello, Donny Levit, and Frank Episale. In addition, I express my gratitude to Professor Jeff Entwistle for his prodigious contribution to the chapters on design, and I also thank Professor Laura Pulio for her helpful suggestions on acting. A special thanks also to Professor Oliver

W. Gerland and his fellow teachers at the University of Colorado. I would also like to thank Professor Scott Walters, University of North Carolina–Asheville, for developing the first teacher and student study guide materials for *The Theatre Experience*, and Professor John Poole, Illinois State University, for his revisions that are now found in the instructor resources.

We'd also like to thank the following reviewers who have contributed to this edition:

James Bell, Grand Valley State University

Scott Boyd, Middle Tennessee State University

Chris Gray, Illinois Central College

Richard Hansen, Middle Tennessee State University

Ethan Krupp, Bloomsburg University of Pennsylvania

Jeannine Russell, Wichita State University



Through twenty-six editions of my three textbooks published by McGraw-Hill, including the previous edition of this text, my colleague Inge King, the incredible photography expert, discovered every photograph that appeared in every edition of every text. Inge is amazing as well as being an irreplaceable colleague and there is no way adequately to acknowledge her taste and abiding loyalty, as well as her creativity. At the same time, a new photography editor, Emily Tietz, has taken over the duties of researching and obtaining permission for illustrations in this edition of *The Theatre Experience*. Emily has proved to be resourceful, energetic, and persistent in these endeavors as well as a person with excellent taste. I am most grateful to her.

At McGraw-Hill I express my gratitude to the following:

David Patterson

Sarah Remington

Mary Ellen Curley

Beth Tripmacher

Ann Marie Jannette

Danielle Clement

# Part One

## The Audience

**1 The Audience: Its Role and Imagination**

**2 Background and Expectations of the Audience**

**3 Theatre Spaces**

### THE AUDIENCE

The basic encounter in the theatre is the exchange, the chemistry, the electricity between the audience and the actors performing onstage. The presence of the audience sets live theatre apart from all other forms of dramatic entertainment. Here the audience is gathered for a production of *A Midsummer Night's Dream* in Shakespeare's Globe Theatre on the South Bank of the

River Thames on July 16, 2013, in London, England.
(©Oli Scarff/Getty Images)

2

We may not realize it, but when we attend the theatre, we, as spectators, are essential to the experience. To be complete, each one of the performing arts—opera, ballet, symphony concerts as well as theatre—requires an audience. Whether watching a classic like *Romeo and Juliet*, or a modern family play, for most of us, it is likely that our first encounter with a dramatic work was on film, television, or a handheld electronic device. No matter how impressed we were with seeing a play or a musical in this way, however, it must be remembered that the experience of watching television or a movie is quite different from attending the theatre. With TV or movies, we are looking at a screen on which there are no live people but only images of people. And the experience of being in the presence of a living, breathing person makes all the difference. Another way of putting this is to say that the audience is not an incidental factor in a theatrical performance; if we are audience members, we become an indispensable element in what is occurring.

At a theatrical performance, we become keenly aware of the actors onstage. What we may not realize is that the actors are just as aware of our presence. Laughter at a comedy or a deep silence at a tense moment in a serious drama is communicated directly to the actors and has a very real effect on their performance.

In a number of events other than the performing arts, spectators often play a key role. For example, most sports contests—football, baseball, basketball, soccer, tennis, NASCAR races—elicit huge interest from fans. This is true whether the sports event is at the high school, college, or professional level. In other spheres as well, the participation

Fans cheering at the NASCAR Sprint Cup Series auto race in Martinsville, Virginia. (©Don Petersen/AP Images)

Seen here is a group of people gathered to watch the August 21, 2017, eclipse of the sun. (©Volkan Furuncu/Anadolu Agency/Getty Images)



of viewers is crucial. Political conventions and political rallies depend on large, supportive crowds to be considered successful. A good example is a national nominating convention. The hall where the event takes place becomes a giant stage set, with a stagelike platform, backdrops, and carefully arranged positions for entrances and exits. The programs are carefully scripted to build to a climax, with a finale consisting of stirring music and literally thousands of balloons dropping from the ceiling.

Despite the similarity between theatre events and sports events, there is one unmistakable difference. Theoretically, a sports contest could take place in an empty stadium and still be considered complete: though the thrill and the excitement would be missing, the results would be entered in the record book, and the won–lost statistics would be just as valid as if the game had taken place before a large crowd.

This is not true for the performing arts. Each theatre, ballet, or opera performance, each musical concert is intended specifically to be presented in the presence of an audience, which is an absolutely essential part of the event. Of course, any of these can be recorded digitally or otherwise, but listening to or viewing one of these is not the same as attending a live event. In a very real sense, a theatre performance at which no audience is present is actually *not* a performance. It may be a rehearsal of some kind, but the performance occurs only when the actors perform in the presence of an audience.

In Part One we will explore who makes up the audience, how audiences are created, how they differ from one another, how they

respond to what is happening onstage, and how they interact with performers.

The audience at a performance of *The Two Gentlemen of Verona* at Shakespeare's Globe in London. (©Gideon Mendel/Corbis Documentary/Getty Images)

The audience watching a 3D movie. (©Image Source/Getty Images)

## THE ROLE OF THE AUDIENCE

*The audience and the performers are the two essential elements of theatre: both are required for theatre to occur. The presence of the audience sets theatre apart from the experience of watching a theatrical presentation on film, on television, or in any other electronic medium. A comparison can be made to the theatricality of a rock performance and the*

*impact on the audience by the performers. Here the audience watches and reacts to the performance of Pall Oskar, an Icelandic pop singer, songwriter, and disc jockey, performing in Harpa Concert Hall, Reykjavik, Iceland.* *(©Arctic-Images/Corbis Documentary/Getty Images)*

1

# The Audience: Its Role and Imagination

*Live theatre: The performance of a dramatic event by a group of actors in the presence of their counterparts, the audience members*.

The title of this book tells us that attending the theatre is an experience. It is an experience, but more than that, it is a *unique* experience. Along with the other performing arts—music, dance, and opera—it occurs only in the presence of an audience. Music can consist of a concert by a symphony orchestra, a pop concert before thousands, or an intimate cabaret performance: the key factor is that there is a live audience in attendance. The same would be true of dance: it could be a formal ballet in a concert hall or a modern dance group in a small, intimate setting. However, it occurs only when there is a live audience present. A presentation by any performing arts group involves a different dynamic from the appreciation of other artworks such as painting, sculpture, or literature. A theatre performance, for instance, changes from moment to moment as the audience encounters a series of shifting impressions and stimuli. It is a kaleidoscopic adventure through which the audience passes, with each instant a direct, immediate experience.

The transitory nature of the performing arts sets them apart in other ways from literature and the visual arts. A painting, a piece of sculpture, a novel, or a collection of poems is a fixed object. When it leaves the artist's hands (or, in the case of a book, when it leaves the printer's shop), it is complete. In a world of change and uncertainty, these objects remain the same. Today, the statue of the *Winged Victory* at the Louvre Museum in Paris is the same majestic figure that was fashioned 2,200 years

6

ago on the island of Samothrace in Greece. When we see this statue, we are looking at a soaring figure, facing into the wind, which is essentially what the Greeks saw at the time it was created. A theatre production changes from performance to performance because of differences in audience responses or in slight changes in the interactions among the cast members. And once a specific production is over, that production no longer exists.

Beyond the transitory nature of theatre, a second point to be made is that theatre alone among the performing arts centers entirely on human beings and their behavior, a point that we will discuss in more detail later in this chapter. A case could be made that opera focuses on people as well, but it should be remembered that though opera deals with human beings and their actions, it does so primarily through the medium of music. Confirmation of this fact is that operas are invariably identified by the name of the composer, never the playwright or librettist. It is always Mozart's or Verdi's opera, never the writer's opera. Music, of course, is sound: the notes produced by a singer or instrumentalist bringing alive a musical score. And dance is motion, the graceful, sometimes incredible movements made by performers in ballet, modern and popular dance, or tap.

## THE MEDIATED ARTS: FILM AND TELEVISION

Standing between the performing arts and the fixed arts (painting, sculpture, literature) is a third art form: the ***mediated arts*** (radio, film, television, digital streaming, and the like), that is, performances captured or recorded through the use of other types of media. Whereas the other art forms have been with us for thousands of years, this third art form is relatively new. Ever since the inception of these various media, there have been dire warnings that each one would make the performing arts—especially live theatre—obsolete. Beginning in the early years of the twentieth century, mechanical and electronic inventions came fast and furiously. First there was radio, then black-and-white cinema, followed by movies in color; after that, television, again first in black and white and then in color and later, in quick succession, an electronic smorgasbord of digital devices (such as microcomputers, smartphones, and tablets) that now allow for the streaming of performances (recorded and even live), and so forth.

> **mediated arts** The mediated arts, which include radio, film, television, digital streaming, and the like, are performances captured or recorded through the use of other types of media.

At every step of the way it was argued that live theatre could not possibly withstand this onslaught of rivals that were so readily accessible and so much less expensive. Why go to the theatre when we could see the same thing so much more easily in our neighborhood or at home and at such a sharply reduced cost? Surely this overwhelming electronic competition would lead to a sharp diminution of theatre attendance. Oddly enough, however, the falling off of live

theatre has not happened; in fact, theatre attendance has noticeably increased. Live theatre today takes place at varying levels of professionalism in more locations across the United States (and the globe, for that matter) than at any time in its history. In the chapter "Background and Expectations of the Audience," we will discuss in detail the breadth and depth of live theatre across the United States and, later

7

in the text, our global theatre. In the meantime, we should examine why live theatre can thrive in the midst of what appears to be unbeatable competition. The answer lies in the nature of a dramatic performance by actors in the presence of a live audience.

The essence of live theatre is that it is immediate and spontaneous; it happens at a given moment before our very eyes. We are there watching it; more important, we are actually participants in the event. The twentieth-century critic Walter Kerr (1913–1996), for whom a Broadway theatre is named, explained what it means for audience and actors to be together:

> It doesn't just mean that we are in the personal presence of performers. It means that they are in *our* presence, conscious of us, speaking to us, working for and with us until a circuit that is not mechanical becomes established between us, a circuit that is fluid, unpredictable, ever-changing in its impulses, crackling, intimate. *Our* presence, the way we respond, flows back to the performer and alters what he does, to some degree and sometimes astonishingly so, every single night. We are contenders, making the play and the evening and the emotion together. We are playmates, building a structure. This never happens at a film because the film is already built, finished, sealed, incapable of responding to us in any way. The actors can't hear us or feel our presence; nothing we do, in our liveness, counts. We could be dead and the film would purr out its appointed course, flawlessly, indifferently.[1]

## THE CONTRAST BETWEEN THEATRE AND FILM

As Walter Kerr suggests, one way to explain the special nature of live theatre is to contrast a drama seen in a theatre with one shown on film or television. Both present a story told in dramatic form—an enactment of scenes by performers who speak and act as if they were the people they represent. The same actress can play Juliet in *Romeo and Juliet* by William Shakespeare (1564–1616) on both stage and screen. Not only the dramatization and the acting but also other elements, such as scenery and costumes, are often similar on stage and screen. In fact,

many films and television specials have been based on stage productions: *A Chorus Line, The Phantom of the Opera, The Importance of Being Earnest, Les Misérables*, and numerous plays by Shakespeare. Also, one can learn a great deal about theatre from watching a play on film or television, which can also give us many of the same feelings and experiences that we have when watching a theatre performance. Moreover, the accessibility of film and television means that they play a crucial role in our overall exposure to the depiction of dramatic events and dramatic characters.

As important as the similarities are, however, there is a crucial difference between experiencing live theatre or watching it on television or on film. We are not speaking here of the technical capabilities of film or television, the ability to show outdoor shots taken from helicopters, cut instantaneously from one scene to another, or create special effects such as those in science fiction films like the popular *Star Wars* films. No, the most significant—in fact, the overriding— difference between films and theatre is the *performer–audience relationship*. The experience of being in the presence of the performer is more important to theatre

8

---

than anything else. With a film or with television, we are always in the presence of an *image*, never a person.

The American playwright Jean-Claude van Itallie (b. 1936) has explained the importance of the performer–audience relationship in theatre, and how theatre differs from films and television:

> Theater is not electronic. Unlike movies and unlike television, it does require the live presence of both audience and actors in a single space. This is the theater's uniquely important advantage and function, its original religious function of bringing people together in a community ceremony where the actors are in some sense priests or celebrants, and the audience is drawn to participate with the actors in a kind of eucharist.[2]

The Irish playwright Conor McPherson (b. 1971), who has had great success in theatre and film, also points out how the two art forms are distinct by comparing the difference between a rock band playing a live performance and its recorded music:

> Ultimately the difference between making films and putting plays on is analogous to the band of musicians who go into the studio to record an album and the completely different world of performing the music live to an audience. If you want to play live, you'd better be able to play well. . . . It's a great feeling to see a talented person perform live in front of you. Curiously, the live experience both

> demystifies the performer and at the same time creates a whole other set of mysteries: "How do they do that?"[3]

## THEATRE IS TRANSITORY AND IMMEDIATE

As noted earlier, theatre performance changes from moment to moment as the audience encounters a series of shifting impressions and stimuli. Each instant is a direct, immediate experience.

The essence of literature and the visual arts is to catch something at a moment in time and freeze it. With the performing arts, however, that is impossible because the performing arts are not objects but events. Specific objects—costumes, props, scenery, a script—are a part of theatre, but none of these constitute the art. Bernard Beckerman (1921–1985), Shakespeare scholar and director, explained the difference:

> Theater is nothing if not spontaneous. It occurs. It happens. The novel can be put away, taken up, reread. Not theater. It keeps slipping between one's fingers. Stopping, it stops being theater. Its permanent features, facets of activity, such as scenery, script, stage, people, are no more theater than the two poles of a generator are electricity. Theater is what goes on between the parts.[4]

Plays are often printed in book form, like literature, and many novels and short stories contain extensive passages of dialogue that could easily be scenes in a play. But there is an important difference between the two forms. Unlike a novel, a play is written to be performed. In some respects a script is to a stage production as a



musical score is to a concert, or an architectural blueprint is to a building: it is an outline for a performance.

Drama can be studied in a classroom in terms of imagery, character, and theme, but with drama, study of this sort takes place *before* or *after* the event. It is a form of preparation for or follow-up to the experience; the experience is the performance itself. Obviously, we have more opportunities to read plays in book form than to see them produced; but when we read a play, we should always attempt to visualize the other aspects of a production in our mind's eye.

## HUMAN BEINGS—THE FOCUS OF THEATRE

Books often focus on people, but they can also focus on science or nature; music focuses on sound; abstract painting and sculpture focus

on shapes, colors, and forms. Uniquely among the arts, theatre focuses on one thing and one thing only—human beings. This is true even though different plays emphasize different human concerns, from profound problems in tragedy to pure entertainment in light comedy. And even when the performers play animals, inanimate objects, or abstract ideas, theatre concentrates on the human concerns involved.

In the modern world, human beings have lost the central place they were once believed to occupy in the universe. In the Ptolemaic view of the universe, which prevailed until the sixteenth century—when Copernicus theorized that Earth revolved around the sun—it was assumed that Earth was the center of everything. In science, we have long since given up that notion, particularly in light of explorations in outer space and other transformative discoveries regarding our universe. The human being has become seemingly less and less significant, and less and less at the center of things. But not in theatre, where the preoccupations of men and women are still the core, the center around which other elements orbit.

## THE CHEMISTRY OF THE PERFORMER–AUDIENCE CONTACT

The fascination of being in the presence of a famous person or observing firsthand a special occasion is difficult to explain but not difficult to verify. No matter how often we have seen a favorite star in the movies or have seen a singer on television or listened to his or her songs on a handheld device, we will often go to any lengths to see the performer in person. Probably, at one time or another, each of us has braved bad weather and shoving crowds to see celebrities at a parade, a political rally, or a concert. Even a severe rainstorm will not deter many of us from seeing our favorite star at an outdoor concert. The same pull of personal contact draws us to the theatre. At the heart of the theatre experience, therefore, is the performer–audience relationship: the immediate, personal encounter whose chemistry and magic give theatre its special quality.

10

As suggested earlier, during a stage performance the actors and actresses can hear our laughter, can sense our silence, and can feel our tension as audience members. In short, we, as audience, can affect, and in subtle ways change, the performance. At the same time, as members of the audience, we watch the performers closely, consciously or unconsciously asking ourselves questions: Are the

performers convincing in their roles? Will they do something surprising? Will they make a mistake? At each moment, in every stage performance, we, as fully participating audience members, should be looking for answers to questions like these. Actually two experiences are occurring almost simultaneously: our individual experience, which is highly personal; and the group experience, which we will discuss below.

## THEATRE AS A GROUP EXPERIENCE

Certain arts—such as painting, sculpture, and literature—provide solitary experiences. The viewer or reader contemplates the work alone, at her or his own pace. This is true even in a museum: although many people may flock to look at a single painting and are with each other, they respond as individuals, one by one. In the performing arts, however, including theatre, the group experience is indispensable.

The performing arts share this trait with other communal events such as religious services, spectator sports, and celebrations. Before the event can take place, a group must assemble, at one time and in one place. When people are gathered together in this way, something mysterious happens to them. Though still individuals, with their own personalities and backgrounds, they take on other qualities as well, qualities that often overshadow their independent responses.

### Psychology of Groups

Not all crowds are alike. Some are aggressive, such as an angry mob that decides to riot or a gang that terrorizes a neighborhood. Others are docile—a group of spectators on a sidewalk observing a juggler, for example. A crowd at a football game is different from a congregation at a religious observance; and a theatre crowd is distinct from any of these. In spite of being different, however, the theatre audience shares with all such groups the special characteristics of the *collective mind*. Becoming part of a group is a crucial element of the theatre experience. For a time, we share a common undertaking, focused on one activity—the performance of a play. Not only do we laugh or cry in a way we might not otherwise; we also sense an intangible communion with those around us. When a collection of individuals respond more or less in unison to what is occurring onstage, their relationship to one another is reaffirmed. If there is a display of cruelty at which we shudder, or sorrow by which we are moved, or pomposity at which we laugh, it is reassuring to have others respond as we do. For a moment we are part

of a group sharing an experience; and our sorrow or joy, which we thought might be ours alone, is found to be part of a broad human response.

11

**THEATRE AS A GROUP EXPERIENCE**

In theatre, the size, attitude, and makeup of the audience affect the overall experience. The theatre can be large or small, indoors or outdoors, and the audience can be people of similar tastes and background or a collection of quite varied individuals. Shown here is a production of *Pride and Prejudice*, a play being performed to a large audience at the Regents Park Open Air Theatre in London. (©VisitBritain/Eric Nathan/Getty Images)

## How Audience Composition Affects the Theatre Experience

Although being part of a group is an essential element of theatre, groups vary, and the makeup of a group will alter a theatrical event. Some audiences are general—for instance, the thousands who attend outdoor productions such as the Shakespeare festival in Ashland, Oregon, and *Unto These Hills*, which is a play about the Cherokee Indians presented each summer on a Cherokee reservation in western North Carolina. General audiences include people of all ages, from all parts of the country, and from all socioeconomic levels. Other audiences are more homogeneous, such as spectators at a high school

play, a children's theatre production, a Broadway opening night, a political play, or a performance in a prison.

Another factor affecting our experience in the theatre is our relationship to the other members of the audience. If we are among friends or people of like mind, we feel comfortable and relaxed, and we readily become part of the group experience. On the other hand, if we feel alien—for example, a young person with an older group or a liberal with conservatives—we will be estranged from the group as a whole. The people with whom we attend theatre—their relative homogeneity and our relation to them—strongly influence our response to the total event.

12

## IN FOCUS: GLOBAL CONNECTIONS

### Augusto Boal: The Theatre of the Oppressed

If ever there were an international theatre figure in recent times, it was Augusto Boal (1931–2009). Born in Brazil, Boal (pronounced "Bo-AHL") attended Columbia University in the United States. Returning to Brazil, he began working in the Arena Theatre in São Paulo. At first he directed conventional dramatic works, but Boal was a man with a powerful social conscience. During his early years he began to develop his philosophy of theatre. He concluded, for example, that mainstream theatre was used by the ruling class as a soporific, a means of sedating the audience and inoculating it against any impulse to act or revolt. In other words, conventional theatre oppressed ordinary citizens, especially the underprivileged.

Augusto Boal (©Sucheta Das/AP Images)

Boal also became fascinated with the relationship of actors to audience members. He established a partnership between them, and he felt strongly that spectators should participate in any theatre event, that a way must be found for them to become performers, and a part of the action. In putting these theories into practice, he began to present *agitprop* plays, that is, plays with a strong political and social message. He experimented with several versions of such plays. One was the Invisible Theatre, in which actors, seemingly spontaneously, presented a prepared scene in a public space such as a town square or a restaurant. Another was his Forum Theatre, in which a play about a social problem became the basis of a discussion with audience members about solutions to the problem.

Considered an enemy of the authoritarian government in Brazil for his work in the 1960s, he was jailed in 1971 and tortured. Released after a few months, he was exiled from his native land. Following that he lived in various countries: Argentina, Portugal, and France. He decided along the way that his approach should be less didactic than it had been, that he would be more effective if he engaged audiences in the theatrical process rather than confronting them. This was the basis of his Theatre of the Oppressed, which became the cornerstone of his lifework from then on. He wrote a book by that title, which appeared in 1974.

In 1985 Boal returned to Brazil. From that point until his death, for the next quarter century, he traveled all over the world directing, lecturing, and establishing centers furthering the Theatre of the Oppressed. He also wrote other books, which were widely read. His approach to theatre found adherents in more than forty countries. Wherever the Theatre of the Oppressed was established, its productions challenged injustice, especially in poor and disenfranchised communities where citizens are often without a voice or an advocate. In his later years he was looked upon by many as the most inspirational person of his time in propagating socially oriented theatre.

13

## THE SEPARATE ROLES OF PERFORMERS AND SPECTATORS

It is important to note the difference between *observed* theatre and *participatory* theatre. In observed theatre, as audience members we participate vicariously or empathetically with what is happening onstage. Empathy is the experience of mentally or emotionally entering into the feelings or spirit of another person—in this case, a character onstage. Sometimes we will not be in tune with the characters onstage but will react vehemently against them. In either situation, though, we are participating empathetically. We might shed tears, laugh, pass judgment, sit frozen, or tremble with fear. But we participate through our imagination while separated from the action.

There are also times when observers and audience members participate in a theatre event. In rituals and ceremonies in parts of Africa and among certain tribes of Native Americans, those attending have become, in effect, participants, joining in the singing and dancing, for instance. At a number of contemporary theatre events spectators have also been urged to take part. For example, one of the chief aims of the Theatre of the Oppressed created by Augusto Boal was to eliminate the distinction between audience members and performers. In Boal's philosophy, every spectator could be and should be an actor, and he developed a number of strategies to bring this about.

### How Should the Audience Be Involved?

The attempt to involve audience members directly springs from a desire to make theatre more immediate and intense, and such work can be innovative and exciting. It remains, however, an exception to the kinds of theatre most of us are likely to encounter. The theatre most of us will experience requires a degree of distancing, in the same way that all art requires a certain perspective. Imagine trying to get the full effect of a large landscape painting when standing a few inches from the canvas: one would see only the brushstrokes of a single tree or a small patch of blue sky. To perceive and appreciate a work of art, we need distance. This separation, which is called ***aesthetic distance***, is as necessary in theatre as in any other art.

> **aesthetic distance** Physical or psychological separation or detachment of audience from dramatic action, usually considered necessary for artistic illusion.

In the same way that we must stand back from a painting to get its full effect, so too, as theatre spectators we must be separated from the performance in order to see and hear what is happening onstage and absorb the experience. If an audience member becomes involved in the proceedings or goes onstage and takes part in the action, as often occurred in a Boal production, he or she reverses roles and becomes a performer, not a spectator. The separation between performers and spectators remains.

## Audience Participation through Direct Action

Today a range of educational or therapeutic activities employ theatrical techniques. The aim is not a performance viewed by an audience, as such. Those who take part in such activities are not performers in the usual sense, and there is no attempt to follow a written script. Rather, the emphasis is on education, personal development, or therapy—fields in which theatre techniques have opened up new possibilities. In schools, for example, creative dramatics, theatre games, and group improvisations have proved invaluable for self-discovery and the development of healthy group attitudes. By acting out hypothetical situations or giving free rein to their imagination, children can build self-confidence, discover their creative potential, and overcome their inhibitions.

14

In some situations, creative dramatics can teach lessons that are difficult to teach by conventional means. Playwriting, too, has often proved to be an invaluable educational tool. Students who write scenes, whether autobiographical or fictional, find the experience not

only fulfilling but also enlightening. In addition to creative dramatics, a wide range of other activities—*sociodrama, psychodrama*, and *drama therapy*—incorporate theatrical techniques. For adults as well as children, these activities have come to the forefront as educational and therapeutic methods. In sociodrama, the members of participating groups—such as parents and children, students and teachers, or legal authorities and ordinary citizens—explore their own attitudes and prejudices. One successful approach is *role reversal*. A group of young people, for instance, may take the part of their parents while the adults assume the roles of the children; or members of a street gang will take the roles of the police, and the police will take the roles of the street gang. In such role playing, both groups become aware of deep-seated feelings and arrive at a better understanding of one another.

### DRAMA THERAPY

Theatre techniques can be used for educational and therapeutic purposes. Shown here is a moment from the play *Circle Mirror Transformation*, by Annie Baker and directed by Sam Gold, at Playwrights Horizons in New York in 2009 that depicts the use of theatre for therapeutic purposes. The actors in this scene (from left to right) are: Tracee Chimo, Deirdre O'Connell, Heidi Schreck, Reed Birney, and Peter Friedman
(©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

Psychodrama uses some of the same techniques as sociodrama but is more private and interpersonal; in fact, it can become so intense that it should be carried out only under the supervision of a trained therapist. In psychodrama, individual fears, anxieties, and frustrations

are explored. A person might reenact a particularly traumatic scene from childhood, for example. In participatory drama, theatre is a means to another end: education, therapy, group development, or the like. Its aim is not public performance, and there is little emphasis on a carefully prepared, expertly performed presentation before an audience; in fact, just the opposite is true. In observed drama, on the other hand, the aim is a professional performance for spectators, and this requires a separation between the performers and the audience—the "aesthetic distance" described earlier.

**Participatory and Immersive Theatre** There are some times, however, when observers and audience members are invited, even urged, to participate actively together in a theatre event. In the 1960s, for example, many politically and socially engaged theatre groups created productions in which spectators were encouraged to ignore the traditional boundaries between audience members and performers. In other words, instead of viewing the stage action as taking place in a separate space, audience members were asked to see the stage and the viewing area as a single entity.

In recent years a new phenomenon, ***immersive theatre***, has become popular internationally. In immersive theatre, audience members play an active role in some way,

15

---

often moving through a performance space, sometimes even choosing where they should go within that space and what they should see and do. Many immersive productions use transformed, redesigned spaces as well as requiring audience members to engage in a complete sensory experience (touch, smell, even taste of foods and drink). The goal is to personalize the experience for each audience member while still emphasizing the social interaction between small groups in the audience as well as with the performers.

> **immersive theatre** In immersive theatre, audience members play an active role in some way, often moving through a performance space, sometimes even choosing where they should go within that space and what they should see and do. Many such productions use transformed, redesigned spaces as well as requiring audience members to engage in a complete sensory experience (touch, smell, even taste of foods and drink).

An example of such a work is *Sleep No More* (2003), an adaptation of Shakespeare's *Macbeth*, which the British company Punchdrunk staged successfully in New York and London. Another group, the Australian theatre company One Step at a Time Like This, also focuses

on immersive theatrical experiences. Its production *En Route*, for example, takes individual audience members through city spaces while connecting those spaces to theatrical interactions with individual performers along the way.

Although there has been a long history of participatory theatre where audience members are asked to take an active role, the most traditional role of audience members in the contemporary theatre is as observers.

## THE IMAGINATION OF THE AUDIENCE

For those who create it, theatre is a direct experience: an actress walks onstage and impersonates a character; a carpenter builds scenery; a scene designer paints it. For these people the experience is like cutting a finger or being held in an embrace: the pain or the warmth is felt directly and physically. Members of a theatre audience experience a different kind of pain or warmth. As spectators in a theatre, we sense the presence of other audience members; we observe the movements and gestures of performers and hear the words they speak; and we see costumes, scenery, and lighting. From these we form mental images or make imaginative connections that provoke joy, laughter, anger, sorrow, or pain. All this occurs, however, without moving from our seats.

We naturally assume that those who create theatre are highly imaginative people and that their minds are full of vivid, exciting ideas that might not occur to the rest of us. If we conclude, however, that we in the audience have only a limited theatrical imagination, we do ourselves a great injustice. As we saw earlier, theatre is a two-way street—an exchange between performers and audience—and this is nowhere more evident than in the creation of *illusion*. Illusion may be initiated by the creators of theatre, but it is completed by the audience.

## THE IMAGINATION OF THE AUDIENCE

The audience and the performers are the two essential elements of theatre: both are required for theatre to occur. One aspect of the audience's participation is the use of its imagination. For the Broadway musical *Avenue Q*, audience members were expected to focus on the puppets as well as the clearly visible performers/operators. Shown here is a scene presented at the 2004 Tony Awards. Left to right are: Jennifer Barnhart, Rick Lyon, and John Tartaglia. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

16

## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. Watch a scene from the film *Les Misérables*. Now try to imagine why it would be different as a live theatrical experience.
2. Read aloud the balcony scene from Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet*. What is realistic about the scene? What are some nonrealistic elements?
3. Discuss your favorite current nonrealistic film or television show. What fantastic elements are most appealing? Why?
4. Discuss a recent film or television show that you felt was realistic. What was real about it? What wasn't real?
5. Read a speech from a play (or a paragraph from a novel) aloud in class. How did your classmates affect your reading? How would you describe your class as an audience? Homogeneous? Heterogeneous? Explain.

In the eerie world of William Shakespeare's *Macbeth*, when three witches appear out of the mist or when Banquo's ghost interrupts the banquet, we know it is fantasy; witches and ghosts like those in *Macbeth* do not appear in everyday life. In the theatre, however, we take such fantasy at face value. In Shakespeare's own day, for instance, a convention readily accepted by audiences was that women's parts were played by boy actors. Shakespeare's heroines—Juliet, Desdemona, Lady Macbeth—were not acted by women, as they are today, but played by boys. Everyone in the audience at an

Elizabethan theatre knew that the boys were not actually women but accepted without question the notion that a boy actor was presenting an impression or an imitation of a woman. The film *Shakespeare in Love* (1998) afforded a fascinating glimpse of this: the actress Gwyneth Paltrow plays a young woman portraying a boy actor (in secret), while her acting partner is a young man playing a young woman portrayed by a boy (in the open).

Along with fantasy, we, as audience members, accept drastic shifts in time and space. Someone onstage dressed in a Revolutionary uniform says, "It is the winter of 1778, at Valley Forge," and we do not question it. What is more, we accept rapid movements back and forth in time. ***Flashbacks***—abrupt movements from the present to the past and back again—are a familiar technique in films and television shows such as *Looper* and *Dexter;* but they are also commonplace in modern drama. A similar device often used in drama is *anachronism*. An anachronism involves placing some character or event outside its proper time sequence: for example, having people from the past speak and act as if they were living today. Medieval mystery and morality plays frequently contained anachronisms.

> **flashback** In a narrative or story, movement back to a time in the past to show a scene or an event before the narrative resumes at the point at which it was interrupted.

The medieval play *Abraham and Isaac*, for instance, is set in the time of the Old Testament, but it makes several references to the Christian trinity—a religious concept that was not developed until centuries later. The medieval audience accepted this shift in time as a matter of course, just as we do in theatre today.

In his frequently revived play *Angels in America* (1993), Tony Kushner includes a number of bizarre and fantastic characters or events. For example, a character in the play called Mr. Lies is an imaginary person created in the mind of Harper, a housewife who is addicted to pills. Near the end of part 1, Mr. Lies takes Harper on a fantasy trip to the Antarctic. At the very end of part 1, an angel crashes through the ceiling and speaks to Prior, a man ill with AIDS. In the



theatre, then, our imagination allows us to conceive of people and events we have never seen or experienced and to transcend our physical circumstances to the point where we forget who we are, where we are, or what time it is. How is this possible? It happens because in the theatre our imagination works for us just as it does in everyday life.

## Tools of the Imagination: Symbol and Metaphor

We can understand this process better if we look closely at two tools of our imagination: symbol and metaphor.

**Functions of Symbols** In general terms, a ***symbol*** is a sign, token, or emblem that signifies something else. A simple form of symbol is a sign. Some signs stand for a single, uncomplicated idea or action. In everyday life we are surrounded by them: road signs, such as an S-shaped curve; audible signals, like sirens and foghorns; and a host of mathematical and typographical symbols: $, 1/4, @, &. We sometimes forget that language itself is symbolic; the letters of the alphabet are only lines and curves on a page. Words are arrangements of letters that by common agreement represent something else. The same four letters mean different things depending on the order in which they are placed: *pear, reap, rape*. These three words set different imaginative wheels in motion and signal responses that vary greatly from word to word.

> **symbol** A sign, a visual image, an object, or an action that signifies something else; a visual embodiment of something invisible. A single image or sign stands for an entire idea or larger concept—a flag is a symbol for a nation; a logo is a symbol for a corporation.

At times, symbols exert incredible emotional power; a good example is a flag, embodying a nation's passions, fears, and ambitions. Flags are symbols: lines, shapes, and colors that in certain combinations become immediately recognizable. Like flags, some symbols signify ideas or emotions that are far more complex and profound than the symbol itself. The cross, for example, is a symbol of Christ and, beyond that, of Christianity as a whole. Whatever form a symbol takes—language, a flag, or a religious emblem—it can embody the total meaning of a religion, a nation, or an idea.

### THE POWER OF SYMBOLS

Symbols and metaphors, though not real in a literal sense, have enormous power to influence our lives; in that respect, they become "realer than real." A forceful symbol of the bravery, tragedy, and losses of the Vietnam War is the wall designed by Maya Lin in Washington, D.C., where the names of those who died are etched into the side of the memorial. (©Win McNamee/Getty Images)

**Functions of Metaphors** A similar transformation takes place with metaphor, another form of imaginative substitution. With metaphor we announce that one thing is another, in order to describe it or point up its meaning more clearly. (In poetry, you will remember, a simile says that one thing is *like* another; metaphor simply states directly that one thing *is* another.) The Bible is filled with metaphors. The psalmist who says, "The Lord is my shepherd," or who says of God, "Thou art my rock and my fortress," is speaking metaphorically. He does not mean literally that God is a shepherd, a rock, or a fortress; he is saying that



God is similar to and has qualities like these things. Just as with symbols, metaphors are part of the fabric of life, as the following common expressions suggest:



## IN FOCUS: THE CONTRAST BETWEEN REALISM AND NONREALISM

The distinction between realistic and nonrealistic techniques in theatre becomes clearer when the two approaches are examined side by side. This distinction is present in all aspects of theatre.

| Realistic Techniques | Nonrealistic Techniques |
|---|---|
| **STORY** | |
| Events that the audience knows have happened or might happen in everyday life: Blanche DuBois in Tennessee Williams's *A Streetcar Named Desire* goes to New Orleans to visit her sister and brother-in-law. | Events that do not take place in real life but occur only in the imagination: in Kushner's *Angels in America,* a character in a housewife's mind takes her on an imaginary trip to the Antarctic. |
| **STRUCTURE** | |
| Action is confined to real places; time passes normally, as it does in everyday life: the hospital room setting in Margaret Edson's *Wit* is an example. | Arbitrary use of time and place: in August Strindberg's *The Dream Play,* walls dissolve and characters are transformed, as in a dream. |
| **CHARACTERS** | |
| Recognizable human beings, such as the priest and the nun in John Patrick Shanley's *Doubt*. | Unreal figures like the ghost of Hamlet's father in William Shakespeare's *Hamlet* or the three witches in *Macbeth*. |
| **ACTING** | |
| Performers portray people as they behave in daily life: the men on a summer holiday in the country house in Terrence McNally's *Love! Valor! Compassion!* | Performers portray animals in the musical *The Lion King;* they also engage in singing, dancing, and acrobatics in musical comedy or performance art. |
| **LANGUAGE** | |
| Ordinary dialogue or conversation: the two brothers trying to get ahead in Suzan-Lori Parks's *Topdog/Underdog*. | Poetry such as Romeo speaks to Juliet in Shakespeare's play; or the song "Tonight" in the musical *West Side Story*. |
| **SCENERY** | |
| Rooms of a real house, as in | Abstract forms and shapes on |

| | |
|---|---|
| Edward Albee's *Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?* | a bare stage—for example, for a Greek play such as Sophocles's *Electra*. |
| **LIGHTING** | |
| Light onstage appears to come from natural sources—a lamp in a room, or sunlight, as in Ibsen's *Ghosts,* where the sunrise comes through a window in the final scene. | Shafts of light fall at odd angles; also, colors in light are used arbitrarily. Example: a single blue spotlight on a singer in a musical comedy. |
| **COSTUMES** | |
| Ordinary street clothes, like those worn by the characters in August Wilson's *The Piano Lesson*. | The bright costumes of a chorus in a musical comedy; the strange outfit worn by Caliban, the half-man, half-beast in Shakespeare's *The Tempest*. |
| **MAKEUP** | |
| The natural look of characters in a domestic play such as Lorraine Hansberry's *A Raisin in the Sun*. | Masks worn by characters in a Greek tragedy or in a modern play like the musical *Beauty and the Beast*. |

"How gross."
"He's off the wall."
"It's a slam dunk."
"Give me the bottom line."
"That's cool."

We are saying one thing but describing another. When someone describes a person or event as "cool," the reference is not to a low temperature but to an admirable quality. The term *slam dunk* comes from basketball, but in everyday parlance is applied to a wide range of activities that have nothing to do with sports. We can see from these examples that metaphors, like symbols, are part of daily life.

### The "Reality" of the Imagination

Our use of symbol and metaphor shows how large a part imagination plays in our lives. Millions of automobiles in the United States can be brought to a halt, not by a concrete wall, but by a small colored light changing from green to red. Imagine attempting to control traffic, or virtually any type of human activity, without symbols. Beyond being a matter of convenience, symbols are necessary to our survival.

The same holds true for metaphor. Frequently we find that we cannot express fear, anxiety, hope, or joy—any of the deep human feelings—in descriptive language. That is why we sometimes scream. It is also why we have poetry and use metaphors. Even scientists, the men and women we are most likely to consider realists, turn to metaphor at crucial times. They discuss the "big bang" theory of the origin of the universe and talk of "black holes" in outer space. Neither term is "scientific," but both terms communicate what scientists have in mind in a way that an equation or a more logical phrase could not.

Dreams provide another example of the power of the imagination. We dream that we are falling off a cliff; then, suddenly, we wake up and find that we are not flying through the air but lying in bed. Significantly, however, the dream of falling means more to us than the objective fact of lying in bed. Theatre functions in somewhat the same way. Though not real in a literal sense, it can be completely—even painfully—real in an emotional or intellectual sense. The critic and director Harold Clurman (1901–1980) gave one of his books on theatre the title *Lies Like Truth*. Theatre—like dreams or fantasies—can sometimes be more truthful about life than a mundane, objective description. This is a paradox of dreams, fantasies, and art, including theatre: by probing deep into the psyche to reveal inner truths, they can be more real than outward reality.

## THE IMAGINARY WORLDS OF THEATRE

As theatre audience members, we are asked to accept many kinds of imaginary worlds. One way to classify these imaginary realms is as ***realism*** and ***nonrealism (or departures from realism)***. At the outset, it is essential to know that in theatre the term *realistic* denotes a special application of what we consider "genuine" or "real." A realistic element is not necessarily more truthful than a nonrealistic element. Rather, in theatre, realistic and nonrealistic denote different ways of presenting reality.

**realism** Broadly, an attempt to present onstage people, places, and events corresponding to those in everyday life.

**nonrealism (or departures from realism)** Means all types of theatre that depart from observable reality.

20

**REALISTIC AND NONREALISTIC THEATRE CONTRASTED**

These scenes illustrate some of the differences between two approaches to the make-believe of theatre. At the left we see Gabriel Brown as George Murchison, Edena Hines as Beneatha Younger, and Susan Kelechi Watson as Ruth Younger in the Westport Country Playhouse production of Lorraine Hansberry's *A Raisin in the Sun*. In contrast, the scene at the right is from a revival of an avant-garde production presented at the Brooklyn Academy of Music of *Einstein on the Beach*, directed and designed by Robert Wilson. Note the abstract setting, the eerie lighting, the symbolic characters. This kind of theatre contrasts sharply with realism. (left: ©T Charles Erickson; right: ©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

## Realistic Elements of Theatre

In theatre, a realistic element is one that resembles *observable* reality. It is a kind of photographic truth. We apply the term *realistic* to those elements of theatre that conform to our own observations of people, places, and events. Realistic theatre follows the predictable logic of everyday life: the law of gravity, the time it takes a person to travel from one place to another, the way a room in a house looks, the way a person dresses. With a realistic approach, these conform to our normal expectations. In realistic theatre, we are called upon in our imaginations to accept the notion that what we see onstage is not fantastic but real, even though we always know we are in the theatre and not watching an actual event.

We are quite familiar with realism in films and television. Part of the reason is mechanical. The camera records what the lens "sees." Whether it is a bedroom in a house, a crowded city street, or the Grand Canyon, film captures the scene as the eye sees it. Theatre too has always had realistic elements. Every type of theatre that is not pure fantasy has realistic aspects. For example, characters who are supposed to represent real people must be rooted in a human truth that audiences can recognize. When we are so readily able to verify what we see before us from our own experience, it is easy to identify with it and to accept its authenticity. For this reason, realistic theatre has become firmly established in modern times, and it seems likely to remain so.



## Nonrealistic Elements of Theatre

Nonrealistic elements of theatre include everything that does not conform to our observations of surface reality: poetry instead of prose, ghosts rather than flesh-and-blood people, abstract forms for scenery, and so forth. Again, we find a counterpart in films and television. The extremely popular vampire and zombie films and television shows present us with fantastic characters and situations. All of the *Star Wars* films have intriguing computer-generated characters and effects, which is one of the reasons audiences look forward to each of the new additions to the series.

In theatre, the argument for nonrealism (or *departures from realism*) is that the surface of life—a real conversation, for instance, or a real room in a house—can never convey the whole truth, because so much of life occurs in our minds and imagination. If we are depressed and tell a friend that we feel "lousy" or "awful," we do not even begin to communicate the depth of our feelings. It is because of the inadequacy of ordinary words that people turn to poetry, and because of the inadequacy of other forms of daily communication that they turn to music, dance, art, sculpture, and the entire range of symbols and metaphors discussed earlier.

A wide range of theatrical techniques and devices fall into the category of nonrealism. One example is the ***soliloquy***, in which a solitary character speaks to the audience, expressing in words a hidden thought. Another example is ***pantomime***, in which performers pretend to be using objects that are not actually present, such as drinking from a cup or opening an umbrella. Many aspects of musical comedy are nonrealistic. People in various human circumstances do not break into song or dance as they do in musicals like *Guys and Dolls, West Side*

*Story, Wicked, The Book of Mormon*, or *Hamilton*. One could say that any activity or scenic device that transcends or symbolizes reality tends to be nonrealistic.

**soliloquy** Speech in which a character who is alone onstage speaks inner thoughts aloud.

**pantomime** A form of theatrical presentation that relies on dance, gesture, and physical movement without speech.

### NONREALISTIC ELEMENTS

Realism has been a major approach to theatre since the late nineteenth century, but for hundreds of years before that, theatre incorporated many unrealistic elements. One example is Shakespeare's use of ghosts and various otherworldly creatures. Shown here in a Royal Shakespeare Company production of *Hamlet* is Vaneshran Arumugam in the title role (right background) encountering the ghost of his dead father, played by John Kani (left foreground). (©Geraint Lewis)

## Combining the Realistic and the Nonrealistic

In discussing realistic and nonrealistic elements of theatre, we must not assume that these two approaches are mutually exclusive. The terms

*realistic* and *nonrealistic* are simply a convenient way of separating those parts of theatre that correspond to our observations and experiences of everyday life from those that do not. Most performances and theatre events contain a mixture of realistic and nonrealistic elements. In acting, for example, a Shakespearean play calls for a number of nonrealistic qualities or techniques. At the same time, any performer playing a Shakespearean character must convince the audience that he or she represents a real human being.

22

## FACT-BASED THEATRE

A popular form that has emerged in the past half century is theatre based on facts. This includes documentary theatre taken from court trials, congressional hearings, and interviews. Shown here is Lynn Japjit Kaur, center, as Jyoti Singh Pandey, a woman who died in 2012 after she was gang-raped and tortured in New Delhi, in the play *Nirbhaya*. The testimony of five Indian women describing their experiences of sexual abuse is used by South African playwright and director Yael Farber to create a harrowing documentary drama that was performed internationally, including at the Lynn Redgrave Theater in New York in 2015. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

To take a more modern example, in *The Glass Menagerie* by Tennessee Williams (1911–1983), and in *Our Town* by Thornton Wilder (1897–1975), one of the performers serves as a narrator and also participates in the action. When the performer playing this part is speaking directly to the audience, his actions are nonrealistic; when he is taking part in a scene with other characters, they are realistic.

## PLAYING YOUR PART: THINKING ABOUT THEATRE

1. Think of an event you have recently attended in person: a rock concert, a circus, a dance or musical presentation, a religious or memorial service. Explain what it meant to you to be present, in the same space at the same time as those performing or officiating. What was the feeling, the emotion, the stimulation you experienced that would not have been the same if you had watched the event on television?
2. During a performance you may observe a puppet or group of puppets who appear as real as people we deal with every day. Or you may see on a bare stage two or three props (a tree, for example, or a throne) and you assume you are in a forest or a royal palace. Why do you think during a performance we are able to let our imaginations take over? Is this something we also do in everyday life?
3. While watching a performance you may dissolve into laughter or cry real tears. The whole time, on some level, you know what you are observing is not “real.” But does this matter? In some sense is the experience real? What is the relationship between a theatre experience such as this and an experience in daily life?

### Distinguishing Stage Reality from Fact

Whether theatre is realistic or nonrealistic, it is different from the physical reality of everyday life. In recent years there have been attempts to make theatre less remote from our daily lives. For example, plays have been presented that were largely transcripts of court trials or congressional hearings. This was part of a movement called *theatre of fact*, which involved reenactments of material gathered from actual events. Partly as a result of this trend, theatre and life have become

intertwined. Television has added to this with *docudramas*, dramatizing the lives, for example, of ordinary, often actual people who become heroic. There has also been a vogue for what is called “reality television,” in which real people are put in stressful situations with a presumably unplanned outcome.

This kind of interaction—and sometimes confusion—between life and art has been heightened, of course, by the emergence of television and film documentaries that cover real events but are also edited. In addition, today we have “staged” political demonstrations and hear of “staged news.” In politics staged events have become commonplace: a presidential or senatorial candidate visits a flag factory, an aircraft carrier, or an elementary school for what is called a “photo opportunity.” When news becomes “staged” and theatre becomes “fact,” it is difficult to separate the two.

These developments point up the close relationship between theatre and life; nevertheless, when we see a performance, even a re-creation of events that have actually occurred, on some level we are always aware of being in a theatre. Most of us have seen plays with a stage setting so real we marvel at its authenticity: a kitchen, for instance, in which the appliances actually work, with running water in the faucets, ice in the refrigerator, and a stove on which an actor or actress can cook. What we stand in awe of, though, is that the room *appears* so real when we know, in truth, that it is not. We admire the fact that, not being a real kitchen, it looks as if it were. We are abruptly reminded of the distinction between stage reality and physical reality when the two lines cross. If an actor unintentionally trips and falls onstage, we suddenly shift our attention from the character to the person playing the part. Has he hurt himself? Will he be able to continue? A similar reaction occurs when a performer forgets lines, or a sword falls accidentally during a duel, or a dancer slips during a musical number.

24

---

We remember the distinction, also, at the moment when someone else *fails* to remember it. Children frequently mistake actions onstage for the real thing, warning the heroine of the villain’s plan or assuming that blows on the head of a puppet actually hurt. There is a famous story about a production of *Othello* in which a spectator ran onstage to prevent the actor playing Othello from strangling Desdemona. Most people, however, are always aware of the difference; our minds manage two seemingly contradictory feats simultaneously: on the one hand, we know that an imagined event is not objectively real, but at the same time we accept it completely as fantasy. This is possible because of what the poet and critic Samuel Taylor Coleridge (1772–1834) called the “willing suspension of disbelief.” Having separated the reality of art

from the reality of everyday life, the mind is prepared to go along unreservedly with the reality of art.

## SUMMARY

1. During the past 100 years, theatre has been challenged by a succession of technological developments: silent movies, radio, talking movies, television, and electronic handheld devices. It has survived these challenges partly because of the special nature of the performer–audience relationship.
2. The relationship between performer and audience is “live”: each is in the other’s presence, in the same place at the same time. It is the exchange between the two that gives theatre its unique quality.
3. Theatre—like the other performing arts—is a group experience. The composition of the audience has a direct bearing on the effect of the experience.
4. Participants and spectators play different roles in the theatre experience; the role of spectators is to observe and respond.
5. There is a difference between participating in theatre by direct action and by observation. In the former situation, nonactors take part, usually for the purpose of personal growth and self-development. In the latter, a presentation is made by one group to another, and the spectators do not participate physically in the experience.
6. For the observer, theatre is an experience of the imagination and the mind. The mind seems capable of accepting almost any illusion as to what is taking place, who the characters are, and when and where the action occurs.
7. Our minds are capable of leaps of the imagination, not just in the theatre but in our everyday lives, where we use symbol and metaphor to communicate with one another and to explain the world around us.
8. The world of the imagination—symbols, metaphors, dreams, fantasies, and various expressions of art—is “real,” even though it is intangible and has no objective

reality. Frequently it tells us more than any form of logical discourse about our true feelings.

**9**. Theatre makes frequent use of symbols and metaphors—in writing, acting, and design—and theatre itself can be looked upon as a metaphor.

**10**. Theatre calls upon audiences to imagine two kinds of worlds: realistic and nonrealistic. Realistic theatre depicts things onstage that conform to observable reality; nonrealistic

25

---

theatre includes the realm of dreams, fantasy, symbol, and metaphor. In theatre, realism and nonrealism are frequently mixed.

**11**. In order to take part in theatre as an observer, it is important to keep the "reality" of fantasies and dreams separate from the real world. By making this separation, we open our imagination to the full range of possibilities in theatre.

**Design Elements:** In Focus box (spotlight): ©Exactostock/SuperStock; Playing Your Part box (theatre seats): ©Ron Chapple/Getty Images

## THE AFRICAN AMERICAN EXPERIENCE

Members of a theatre audience come to a performance with individual, personal backgrounds, which can make the experience more meaningful. An example would be an African American audience member seeing *A Raisin in the Sun*, which depicts an African American family trying to move into a home in an all-white neighborhood in mid-twentieth century,

originally opening on Broadway in 1959. Shown here is a 2014 revival at the Barrymore Theatre in New York, directed by Kenny Leon. From left to right are: LaTanya Richardson Jackson and Sophie Okonedo. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

27

2

# Background and Expectations of the Audience

We are soon going to attend a theatre performance, either for personal enjoyment or as a class assignment. As a soon-to-be audience member is there a way we can prepare so that the production will be more entertaining or more meaningful? Are there steps we can take beforehand that will enhance the experience, make it more rewarding, and make us a more engaged audience member? The answer to these questions is "yes."

In a sense, this entire book is a preparation for going to the theatre. Chapter by chapter it explains the various elements of a production—the acting and directing, the script, the scenic and costume design—and how all these fit together in the final stage presentation. But initially, before getting to these specifics, there is information and preparation that will make attending a specific production more exciting and pleasurable, as well as make us a more informed, engaged, and knowledgeable audience member.

For one thing, when we attend a theatre event, we bring more than our mere presence; we bring a background of personal knowledge and a set of expectations that shape the experience. Several important factors are involved:

1. Our knowledge and personal memories.
2. Our awareness of the social, political, and philosophical world in which the play was written or produced—the link between theatre and society.
3. Our knowledge about the play and playwright.
4. Our personal expectations concerning the event: what we anticipate will happen at a performance. As we will see, misconceptions about what the theatre experience is or should be can lead to confusion and disappointment.

28

## BACKGROUND OF INDIVIDUAL SPECTATORS

A background element that each of us brings to a theatre performance as an audience member is our own individual memories and experiences. Each of us has a personal catalog of childhood memories,

emotional scars, and private fantasies. Anything we see onstage that reminds us of this personal world will have a strong impact on us. When we see a play that has been written in our own day, we bring with us also a deep awareness of the world from which the play comes, because we come from the same world. Through the books we have read, through newspapers and television, through our discussions with friends, we have a background of common information, values, and beliefs. Our shared knowledge and experience are much larger than most of us realize, and they form a crucial ingredient in our theatre experience.

The play *A Raisin in the Sun* by Lorraine Hansberry (1930–1965) tells the story of an African American family in Chicago in the late 1950s whose members want to improve their lives by finding better jobs and moving to a new neighborhood. But they face a number of obstacles put in their way by society. Any African American—or, for that matter, any person who belongs to a minority or to any group that has lacked opportunities—can readily identify with this situation. Such a person will know from personal experience what the characters are going through.

## BACKGROUND INFORMATION ON THE PLAY OR PLAYWRIGHT

Often to enhance our experience of attending a theatre production we need additional information about a play or a playwright. For instance, a play may contain difficult passages or obscure references, which it is helpful to know about before we see a performance. As an example, we can take a segment from Shakespeare's *King Lear:* the scene in the third act when Lear appears on the heath in the midst of a terrible storm. Earlier in the play, Lear divided his kingdom between two of his daughters, Goneril and Regan, who he thought loved him but who, he discovers, have actually deceived him. Gradually, they have stripped him of everything: his possessions, his soldiers, his dignity. Finally, they send him out from their homes to face the wind and rain in open country. As the storm begins, Lear speaks the following lines:

> Blow, winds, and crack your cheeks! Rage! Blow!
> You cataracts and hurricanoes, spout
> Till you have drenched our steeples, drowned the cocks!

In the first line, the expression "crack your cheeks" refers to pictures in the corners of old maps showing a face puffed out at the cheeks,

blowing the wind. Shakespeare is saying that the face of the wind should blow so hard that its cheeks will crack. In the second line, “cataracts and hurricanoes” refers to water from both the heavens and the seas. In the third line, “cocks” refers to weathercocks on the tops of church steeples; Lear wants so much rain to fall that even the weathercocks on the steepletops will be submerged. If we are aware of these meanings, we can join them with the sounds of the words—and with the rage the actor expresses in his voice and gestures—to get the full impact of the scene.

In contemporary theatre, playwrights frequently use special techniques that will confuse us if we do not understand them. The German playwright Bertolt Brecht



(1898–1956), who lived and wrote in the United States during the 1940s, wanted to provoke his audiences into thinking about what they were seeing. To do this, he would interrupt a story with a song or a speech by a narrator. His theory was that when a story is stopped in this manner, audience members have an opportunity to consider more carefully what they are seeing and to relate the drama onstage to other aspects of life.

If we are not aware that this is Brecht’s purpose in interrupting the action, we might conclude that he was simply a careless or inferior playwright. Here, as in similar cases, knowledge of the play or playwright is indispensable to a complete theatre experience.

## BACKGROUND OF THE PERIOD

Even when we identify closely with the characters or situation in a play and we have knowledge about the play and the playwright, often in drama from the past there are elements we cannot understand unless we are familiar with the history, culture, and philosophy of the period when it was created. This is because there is a close connection between any art form and the society in which it is produced.

## AUDIENCE MEMBER'S PERSONAL BACKGROUND

The personal background of individual audience members will affect their experience in attending a theatre production. Young people from diverse ethnic and cultural backgrounds who have worked together on a project or other undertaking will have a better understanding than others of a theatre piece such as *Emotional Creature* by Eve Ensler, shown here. In the play, six young actors from different countries around the globe develop an involvement in their mutual social problems that inspires them to express their feelings in song and dance. (©Carol Rosegg)

### THEATRE REFLECTS SOCIAL ISSUES

Theatre can be a powerful tool in calling attention to social and political injustices. A good example is Lynn Nottage's Pulitzer Prize–winning play *Sweat*, directed by Kate Whoriskey. The play is set in Reading, Pennsylvania, and dramatizes the impact of global economic changes on blue-collar steelworkers as they lose their livelihoods and their humanity and camaraderie are eroded. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

30

## Theatre and Society

Art does not occur in a vacuum. All art, including theatre, is related to the society in which it is produced. Artists are sometimes charged with being "antisocial," "subversive," or "enemies of the state," and such accusations carry the strong suggestion that artists are outsiders or invaders rather than true members of a culture. To be sure, art frequently challenges society and is sometimes on the leading edge of history, appearing to forecast the future. More often than not, however, such art simply recognizes what is already present in society but has not yet surfaced. A good example is the abstract painting that developed in Europe in the early twentieth century. At first it was considered a freakish aberration, an unattractive jumble of jagged lines and patches of color with no relation to nature, truth, or anything human. In time, however, abstract art came to be recognized as a genuine movement, and the disjointed and fragmentary lines of abstract art seemed to reflect the quality of much of modern life.

Art grows in the soil of a specific society. With very few exceptions—and those are soon forgotten—art is a mirror of its age, revealing the prevailing attitudes, underlying assumptions, and deep-seated beliefs of a particular group of people. Art may question society's views or reaffirm them, but it cannot escape them; the two are as indissolubly linked as a person and his or her shadow. When we speak of art as "universal," we mean that the art of one age has so defined the characteristics of human beings that it can speak eloquently to another age; but we should never forget that every work of art first emerges at a given time and place and can never be adequately understood unless the conditions surrounding its birth are also understood.

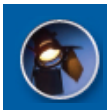
Two societies that produced an astonishing output of dramatic works were Athens, Greece, in the fifth century bce and the Elizabethan period (named for Queen Elizabeth I) in England. The former gave us

the tragedies of Aeschylus, Sophocles, and Euripides as well as the comedies of Aristophanes. It was during the Elizabethan era that William Shakespeare, Christopher Marlowe, and Ben Jonson emerged. In each instance the advances in politics, science, philosophy, and the arts in general provided the environment in which theatrical masterpieces could emerge. In understanding the dramatic works of each period, it is helpful to understand what was occurring in society generally. The same is true of any period or culture in which outstanding or landmark theatrical works appear, whether in the past or present, or where it occurs—in Asia, western Europe, or around the globe.

### Modern Theatre and Culture

Moving to the contemporary period, we find once again a link between theatre and society. Modern society, especially in the United States, is heterogeneous. We have people of different races, religions, sexual orientations, and national backgrounds living side by side. Moreover, the twentieth century was marked by increasingly swift global communication. By means of television, computers, and the Internet, an event occurring in one place can be flashed instantaneously to the rest of the world. Text messaging and social media, such as Facebook and Twitter, now make us aware of events instantaneously. By these means, too, people are continually made aware of cultures other than their own.





## IN FOCUS: HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES

### Women in Greek and Elizabethan Theatres

Did women attend theatre in ancient Greece? In Elizabethan England, why were women forbidden to appear onstage? These are only two of many significant and intriguing questions that arise when one examines the role of women at various times in theatre history. And of course, they are inextricably linked to larger questions about the treatment of women in society in every age.

In Athenian society of ancient Greece, only male citizens had the right to participate in politics. Although women counted as citizens, they were generally excluded from the institutions of

government. They were thus also excluded from appearing onstage in the annual spring theatre festival called the City Dionysia. The plays were written and acted by men, even though many feature important female characters. A broader social question is whether women were allowed to attend the dramatic festivals as spectators. There appears to be no conclusive answer, and the question continues to perplex classical scholars. Even if a select number of women were at performances—after all, men brought their male slaves to the theatre—the plays primarily address a large male audience. Contemporary sources supporting the view that women attended theatre are fragmentary and inconclusive; for instance, a character in *The Frogs* by Aristophanes (c. 447–388 bce) remarks ironically that all decent women committed suicide after seeing one of Euripides's plays. Later commentaries, such as an often-repeated story that a few women who saw the chorus of Furies in *The Eumenides* by Aeschylus (525–456 bce) had miscarriages, are discounted because women did attend theatre after the classical period.

One argument for the attendance of women is the important role women often played in other aspects of the cultural life of the city-state. They contributed to civic life, for example, by playing leading roles in religious ceremonies, celebrations, and other ritual activities. In fact, they were creatively involved in theatre at other festivals. Because the public activities of women were regulated in order to protect their reputation, female entertainers came to be associated with indecent behavior. Even so, popular entertainments included female performers as singers, dancers, acrobats, and musicians.

In the sixteenth century, actresses appeared onstage in continental Europe. Also, women had appeared in medieval theatre productions in England, but in the English public theatres in the time of Elizabeth I (r. 1558–1603), women were forbidden by law to appear onstage. Although some actors rose to become celebrities, actresses were often associated with "public women" or prostitutes—particularly by Puritans who viewed theatre as an immoral profession. Female roles therefore were played by boys, notable for their ability to imitate feminine beauty and grace. An exception to the prohibition of actresses was the appearance of Italian singers and French actresses who performed in England for both the nobility and commoners. Outside the public theatres, historians identify a vast, hidden tradition of female performance gleaned from private documents, such as letters and diaries. At court and in manor houses aristocratic women took part in

extravagant spectacles called masques; parish dramas and pageants included female members of the community; other women worked as traveling entertainers. The disapproval of women performing in public changed with the restoration of the monarchy in 1660, when actresses were finally permitted to appear in licensed theatres.

Prepared by Susan Tenneriello, Baruch College, CUNY.

When cultures and societies are brought together, we are reminded of the many things people have in common but also of the differences among us. At the same



time that we are brought together by immediate global communications, other aspects of life have become increasingly fragmented. A number of institutions that had held fairly constant through many centuries—organized religion, the family, marriage—have been seriously challenged in the century and a half preceding our own day. Discoveries by Charles Darwin (1809–1882) about evolution, by Karl Marx (1818–1883) on economics, by Sigmund Freud (1856–1939) about the importance of the unconscious, and by Albert Einstein (1879–1955) on relativity questioned and threatened long-established views of the universe, of religion, economics, psychology, and science.

Similar changes in viewpoint and discoveries about nature have continued to the present, the cumulative effect of which has been to make human beings much less certain of their place in the cosmos and of their mastery of events. Today, in the early twenty-first century, life appears much less unified and less ordered than it once did. We must add to these developments the effect of the horrific events that have occurred over the past 100 years: the two World Wars, the second of which saw the Holocaust, the extermination of millions of Jews and others by the Nazi regime; the highly controversial Vietnam War; terrorism and the effects on our society of the events of 9/11; more recently, the Iraq and Afghanistan wars; and natural disasters such as the deadly typhoon in the Philippines on November 8, 2013, in which thousands of people were killed, and the 2017 and 2018 hurricanes in Texas, Florida, and Puerto Rico. All of these global and historical developments are reflected in our theatre today, which is an inclusive theatre, fragmented and *eclectic*, and embracing different styles and traditions. The theatre productions we attend today come from around the world, and range from the darkest of tragedies to the lightest of

comedies to the highly experimental, created by dramatists who write on many subjects and in many diverse styles.

A typical theatre company today performs a wide range of plays. In a single season, the same company may present a tragedy by Shakespeare, a farce by the French dramatist Molière (1622–1673), a modern drama by the Spanish writer Federico García Lorca (1898–1936), a play like *Eurydice*, by Sarah Ruhl (b. 1974), a young American playwright, as well as a one-person show by a performance artist.

The three periods we have discussed—the Greek, the Elizabethan, and the modern—are examples of the close relationship between a society and the art and theatre it produces. One could find comparable links in every culture and period. It is important to remember, therefore, that whatever the period or culture in which it was first produced, drama is woven into the fabric of its place and time.

To sum up, for our purposes it is important to realize that when we go to the theatre, it is extremely helpful to be aware of the period and circumstances in which a play of whatever sort was created. These are things our professors and instructors can teach us, but things we can also learn ourselves by going online or checking reference books.

## EXPECTATIONS: THE VARIETY OF EXPERIENCES IN MODERN THEATRE

If we have not often been to the theatre, we might expect that all theatre experiences will be much alike. In fact, most of us go to the theatre for entirely different reasons. Some of us enjoy the escape offered by movies and television and are interested primarily in light entertainment. If we attend a dinner theatre or a Broadway musical, we do not want to be faced with troublesome problems or serious moral issues. Instead, we are looking for something that will be amusing and perhaps include music, dancing, and beautiful scenery and costumes.

On the other hand, some of us want to be stimulated and challenged, both intellectually and emotionally. It must be remembered, too, that many of us like both of these kinds of theatre. At times we may seek light entertainment and at other times, meaningful drama. Not only do performances vary in the type of theatre they offer, they also take place in a variety of settings, and this too has an effect on the nature of the experience. In the mid-twentieth century in the United States “the theatre” was largely synonymous with one kind of experience: Broadway. In the last several decades this has changed radically—further evidence of how diversity in theatre reflects the overall diversity

in contemporary life. In the opening chapter we mentioned different places where the great variety of theatre events might be experienced today. In the pages that follow we examine these opportunities in more detail.

33

## Broadway and Touring Theatre

*Broadway* is the name of the oldest professional theatre in New York City: it refers specifically to plays performed in the large theatres in the district near Times Square in New York City. From 1920 until the early 1950s, most new plays written in the United States originated there, and productions in other areas were usually copies of Broadway productions. Productions sent on tour from Broadway to the rest of the country are exact replicas of the original. Scenery is duplicated down to the last detail, and performers from New York often play roles they had played on Broadway.

**BROADWAY THEATRE**

Productions in the major theatres in New York City—collectively known as Broadway—are usually characterized by elaborate scenic elements, first-rate acting, and scripts with wide appeal: either new works or revivals. Shown here is a scene from the award-winning *Hamilton*, which has become a theatrical phenomenon. It depicts the founding fathers of the United States in a postmodernist fashion, employing nontraditional casting and rap music. *Hamilton* is written and composed by Lin-Manuel Miranda. The actors are (left to right) Rema Webb, Andrew Rannelis, and Josh Gad, in a production directed by Thomas Kall. (©Joan Marcus)

Because our society is diverse and complex, however, and because theatre reflects society, no one form of theatre today can speak equally to all of us. As if in response to the complexity of the modern world, in the second half of the twentieth century people began searching for new forms in theatre, and for alternative locations in which to present theatre.

34

## Resident Professional Theatre

One significant development, which began in a few cities in the 1950s and has since spread across the country, is resident professional theatre, sometimes known as *regional theatre*. Theatre companies have been formed, and theatre facilities built, for the continuing presentation of high-quality professional productions to local residents. The performers, directors, and designers are generally high-caliber artists who make theatre their full-time profession.

Most cities have developed theatres that present a series of plays over a given span of time, with each play being performed for about four to twelve weeks. Among the best-known of these theatres are the Arena Stage in Washington, D.C., the Long Wharf in New Haven, the American Repertory Theater in Boston, the Actors Theatre of Louisville, the Alley Theatre in Houston, the Goodman Theatre in Chicago, the Milwaukee Repertory Theater, the Guthrie Theater in Minneapolis, the Seattle Repertory Theatre, and the Mark Taper Forum in Los Angeles. Among African American theatres, examples are Towne Street Theatre of Los Angeles, the North Carolina Black Repertory, and the Black Repertory Company of St. Louis. A season of plays in these theatres will usually include both new plays and classics, and theatregoers are encouraged to buy a season subscription.

Along with resident companies, there are now a number of permanent summer theatre festivals and Shakespeare festivals throughout the United States and Canada. Among the best known are the Shakespeare festivals at Stratford, Ontario; San Diego, California; Cedar City, Utah; and Ashland, Oregon.

### THEATRE AWAY FROM THE MAINSTREAM

In addition to traditional mainstream theatre, there are important active alternatives, such as off-Broadway, off-off-Broadway, and avant-garde theatre artists, not only in major cities but in many other places around the world. One example is the work of playwright-director Richard Maxwell, whom the *New York Times's* theatre critic Ben Brantley refers to as the most significant experimental playwright in current U.S. theatre. Maxwell's works are presented at small off-off-Broadway spaces and internationally. Shown here are Janet Coleman and Alex Delinois in a scene from Maxwell's *Neutral Hero*, staged in 2012 at the Kitchen, an avant-garde performance space in New York. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

## Alternative Theatre: Off-Broadway and Elsewhere

In New York City *off-Broadway theatre* began in the 1950s as an alternative to Broadway, which was becoming increasingly costly. Off-Broadway theatres were smaller than Broadway theatres—most of them had fewer than 200 seats—and were located outside the Times Square area. Because off-Broadway was less expensive than Broadway, it offered more opportunity for producing serious classics and experimental works. Off-Broadway itself, however, became

institutionalized in the 1960s and 1970s, and small independent groups developed *off-off-Broadway*, which produced a wide variety of offerings wherever inexpensive space was available—churches, lofts, warehouses, large basements.

An important development in American theatre is that counterparts to off-off-Broadway have been established in other major cities across the United States—Washington, Atlanta, Chicago,



Minneapolis, Los Angeles, San Francisco, Seattle—where small theatre groups perform as alternatives to large organizations. It is in these smaller theatres, in New York and across the country, that most experimental and new works are performed.

In addition, all across the country there are cabaret and dinner theatres in which the atmosphere of a nightclub or restaurant is combined with that of a theatre. In these informal settings, guests eat and drink before watching a performance.

### Young People's and Children's Theatre

A branch of theatre that has earned an important place in the overall picture is children's theatre, sometimes called *theatre for youth*. These theatres include a wide spectrum from the most sophisticated professional organizations to semiprofessionals to improvisational groups to undertakings that are predominately amateur or educational. The aim in all cases, however, is to provide a theatrical experience for young people. In some cases it is to offer school-age children an opportunity to see first-class productions of plays dealing with people and subjects in which they might be personally interested. In other cases, the emphasis is on dramatizing the lives of significant figures in history—Abraham Lincoln, Martin Luther King Jr., Eleanor Roosevelt—or giving dramatic life to literary classics such as *Tom Sawyer* or *Huckleberry Finn*.

A number of young people's or children's theatre organizations across North America have a long history and feature first-class theatre spaces and production facilities. Moreover, the caliber of those responsible for their productions—performers, designers, directors, and so on—is excellent and the equal of any professional regional or not-for-profit theatre. Among those in this category are the Children's Theatre Company of Minneapolis, the Children's Theatre of Charlotte, the Orange County Children's Theater, the Nashville Children's Theatre, and TheatreworksUSA in New York City.

## COLLEGE AND UNIVERSITY THEATRE

A vital segment of theatre in the United States is the many productions mounted by theatre departments in colleges and universities, which often achieve a high degree of professionalism. They also provide excellent training for theatre practitioners, as well as affording audiences first-rate productions. Seen here are (left to right) Danny Pancratz, Nathan Grant, and T. J. Nichols in a production of Molière's *The Miser* at Western Illinois University, directed by Professor Jeannie M. Woods. (Courtesy of Western Illinois University Visual Production Center/Larry Dean, photographer)

### College and University Theatre

In the last few decades, *college* and *university theatre* departments have also become increasingly important, not only in teaching theatre arts but also in presenting plays. In some localities, college productions are virtually the only form of theatre offered. In other areas, they are a significant supplement to professional theatre.

The theatre facilities in many colleges are excellent. Most large colleges and universities have two or three theatre spaces—a full-size theatre, a medium-size theatre, and a smaller space for experimental drama—as well as extensive scene shops, costume rooms, dressing rooms, and rehearsal halls. Productions are usually scheduled throughout the school year.



## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. Imagine that you are required to attend a production of a play by Shakespeare. What knowledge do you have about the playwright and the period? What other information would help you better prepare for the presentation?
2. Search the Internet for a website of a regional theatre closest to your community. What types of plays is the theatre doing? Would you be interested in attending the whole season or just one or two productions? Why? What does that say about the types of plays you like?
3. Tour the theatre(s) and backstage areas of your university theatre. What surprised you about these spaces?
4. Read a review online by a *New York Times* or *Chicago Tribune* theatre critic. Which of the criteria discussed in this chapter does he or she address? How did the critic help you decide whether you might want to see the production?

The quality and complexity of these productions vary. In some places, productions are extremely elaborate, with full-scale scenery, costumes, lighting, and sound. Colleges vary, too, in the level of professionalism in acting. Many colleges use only performers from the undergraduate theatre program. If a college has a master's degree program, it will use both graduate and undergraduate performers. Colleges or universities may also bring in outside professionals to perform along with students. Most college and university theatres offer a variety of plays, including classics and experimental plays rarely done by professional theatres.

### Community and Amateur Theatre

In addition to the many forms of professional theatre, and to college and university theatre, another area in which theatre activity thrives is community and amateur theatre. In hundreds of locations throughout the United States and Canada, and in many parts of the world, one finds semiprofessional or nonprofessional theatres serving local communities. In some cases, those involved—actors, directors, designers, crew members—have had professional training and experience but have chosen not to pursue a full-time career, for a number of reasons. Along with the part-time professionals, community theatres often include amateurs who also love the theatre. Many of these theatres approach their productions—the selection of plays,

rehearsals, the building of scenery, advertising, and ticket sales—in much the same way as their professional counterparts and in many cases, the level of work is surprisingly good. In many parts of the country, community and amateur theatres afford the only live theatre available to audiences.

## THE CRITIC, THE REVIEWER, AND THE BLOGGER

Most of us who go to the theatre or the movies, or who watch a television show, are amateur critics. When we say about a performance, “It started off great, but it fizzled,” or “The star was terrific, just like someone in real life,” or “The woman was OK, but the man overacted,” or “The acting was good, but the story was too downbeat for me,” we are making a critical judgment. The difference between a critic/reviewer and those of us in the audience is that the former presumably is better informed about the event and has developed a set of critical standards by which to judge it.

37

### The Critic/Reviewer

A *critic*, loosely defined, is someone who observes theatre and then analyzes and comments on it. Ideally, the critic serves as a knowledgeable and highly sensitive audience member. Audiences can learn from critics not only because critics impart information and judgments but also because critics share with an audience the point of view of the spectator. Unlike those who create theatre—writers, performers, designers—critics sit out front and watch a performance just as other members of the audience do. Critics generally write serious articles that appear in newspapers, magazines, and books.

A familiar type of critic is the reviewer. A *reviewer*, who usually works for a newspaper, a magazine, or a television station, reports on what has occurred at the theatre. He or she will tell briefly what a theatre event is about, explaining that it is a musical, a comedy, or a serious play, and perhaps describing its plot. The reviewer might also offer an opinion about whether or not the event is worth seeing. The reviewer is usually restricted by time, space, or both.

Today, in addition to critics and reviewers, whose opinions appear in print or on television, we have a new source of theatre criticism: blogs, YouTube, and popular websites like Theatermania.com. Many of these sites have their own theatre reviewers; other sites may have amateur

critics who send in their unsolicited opinions. In addition, opinions about theatre productions are frequently found on social media such as Facebook and Twitter. At times these assessments of a production can be helpful and informative, but a word of caution is in order here. A number of these self-appointed reviewers may have little or no background in theatre criticism, or, in fact, in theatre itself. They enjoy being part of the wider world of theatre criticism, but they may not have the credentials to do so. In other words, these amateur critics may not have the preparation for criticism described in the pages that follow.

## Fact and Opinion in Criticism

In reading the commentary of the critic/reviewer or the blogger, it is important to distinguish between *fact* and *opinion*. The opinions they express should be carefully weighed. On the other hand, the facts or insights they provide can be extremely helpful. In addition to our professors and instructors, a critic/reviewer or a blogger can often make us aware of information we might not otherwise have known—for example, by explaining a point that was confusing to the audience or noting how a particular scene in a play relates to an earlier scene. They might also offer background material about the playwright, the subject matter of the play, or the style of the production. Such information can broaden our understanding and appreciation of a production we are about to see. The more we know about what a playwright is attempting to do and why a playwright arranges scenes in a certain way, the better we will be able to judge the value of a theatre event we attend.

A good example would be an explanation by a critic of the intentions and techniques of the playwright Maria Irene Fornés (1930–2018) in her play *Fefu and Her Friends*. The first act takes place in the living room of Fefu's New England home. The audience sits in one location watching the action in the living room. The second act, however, is presented in four different locations, spaces in the theatre such as backstage, offstage, in the lobby, or in a rehearsal hall. One represents a lawn outside the house, a second a bedroom, a third the study, and the fourth the kitchen. The characters in the play split up and perform separate scenes in each of the four locations. The scenes are supposed to be occurring all at the same time. The audience is divided into four groups as well and members move from one location to the next; the scenes in the separate locations are repeated four times so that each group of audience members can see them. For the third act of the play, the audience reassembles in the main auditorium to watch a scene again in the living room, onstage.

## CRITICS PROVIDE BACKGROUND

Certain plays, both past and present, can prove difficult for an audience to understand fully, especially when first seen. Included in this group are avant-garde or experimental plays. A good example of the latter is *Fefu and Her Friends* by Maria Irene Fornés, which focuses on eight women. During the course of the action, the audience is divided into four groups and taken to four separate locations to see different scenes. Without the proper orientation, this unusual arrangement might at first prove confusing. Shown here are Julianna Margulies as Emma and Joyce Lynn O'Connor as Fefu in a production at the Yale Repertory Theatre. (©Gerry Goodstein/Yale Repertory Theatre)

Among other things, Fornés uses the second act to break out of the usual theatre setting. She also wants to show the fragmentation of life as well as its simultaneity. She wants the audience to get a sense of life overlapping and continuing in different places in addition to those on which we usually focus. If the construction of the play, as well as Fornés's purpose and techniques, have been explained to us prior to our seeing the play, then we, as audience members, will be better prepared to understand the experience when we attend a performance.

### Critical Criteria

It has often been said that in commenting on a theatre production, a critic/reviewer should ask three questions to guide her or him in arriving at a judgment. These same criteria will aid the rest of us, ordinary theatregoers, as well, to be better informed in expressing our own feelings about a production we have seen.

39

**What Is Being Attempted?** The first question is: *What is the play, and the production, attempting to do?* This question must be raised both about the script and about the production. A critic/reviewer should make clear what the playwright is trying to accomplish. Is the play a tragedy meant to raise significant questions and stir deep emotions? Is it a light comedy intended to entertain and provide escape? Is it a political drama arguing for a point of view?

**Have the Intentions Been Achieved?** A second question is: *How well have the intentions of the playwright been carried out?* If a theatre piece originates with an acting ensemble, or with a director, the question is, *How well have the intentions of the original creator been realized?* A theatre company may be producing an acknowledged masterpiece such as *Hamlet* or *Macbeth*, in which case the question becomes how well the play has been acted, directed, and designed. Have the performers brought Shakespeare's characters to life convincingly and excitingly? Or has the director—perhaps by striving to be too original or by updating the play and putting the characters into modern dress—distorted Shakespeare's intentions beyond recognition?

In the case of a new script, one must also ask how well the playwright has realized his or her own intentions. If the play is intended to probe deeply into family relationships—between parents and children, or husbands and wives—how convincingly and how insightfully has the dramatist accomplished this? If the intention is to entertain, to make the audience laugh, the question to be asked is: Just how funny is the play? Did it succeed in providing entertainment? Was it clever, witty, and full of amusing situations, or did it fall flat?

**Was the Attempt Worthwhile?** A third question to ask when judging a production falls more into the realm of personal taste and evaluation: *Was the play or production worth doing in the first place?* Many critics think that anything that succeeds at giving pleasure and providing entertainment is as worthwhile in its own way as anything else, perhaps a more serious undertaking. Others, however, do not agree. Theatregoers like us must make up their own minds.

If audience members are aware of these three criteria, they not only can note whether critics—in print, on television, or online—address these questions, but also can ask the questions for themselves

## THE DRAMATURG OR LITERARY MANAGER

Sometimes when we enter a theatre, we see in the theatre program an article or note written by the theatre's dramaturg. The term ***dramaturg (or literary manager)*** comes from a German word for "dramatic adviser." In Europe, the practice of having a dramaturg attached to a theatre goes back well over a century. In the United States, the role of the dramaturg is relatively new; in recent years, however, many regional professional groups and other not-for-profit theatres have engaged full-time dramaturges. Among the duties frequently undertaken by dramaturges are discovering and reading promising new plays, working with playwrights on the development of new scripts, identifying significant plays from the past that may have been overlooked, conducting research on previous productions of classic plays, preparing



reports on the history of plays, researching criticism and interpretations of plays from the past, and writing articles for the programs that are distributed when plays are produced.

**dramaturg (or literary manager)** On the staff of a theatre, a person who consults with and advises authors and directors, writes program notes, and edits scripts.

## THE AUDIENCE'S JUDGMENT

Critics and reviewers can be enormously helpful to theatre audiences in providing background material, critical criteria, and other information. In the end, though, audience members should make up their own minds. A good example is the Broadway musical *Spider-Man: Turn Off the Dark*, which opened to negative reviews from critics, but was somewhat of a commercial success with audiences. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

Just as a good critic/reviewer can be helpful to audience members, so, too, can a perceptive dramaturg. He or she is usually the person who prepares educational material for students and teachers who attend performances. And if there is a discussion with audiences and members of the artistic team before or after a performance, the dramaturg often leads such a discussion.

## THE AUDIENCE'S RELATION TO CRITICISM

As suggested earlier, when we, as audience members, combine awareness of criticism with the theatre event itself, the experience can be greatly enhanced: background information and critical appraisals are added to our own firsthand reactions. There are cautionary notes, however, of which we should be aware.

### The Audience's Independent Judgment

Quite often critic/reviewers state unequivocally that a certain play is extremely well written or badly written, beautifully performed or atrociously performed, and so on. Because these so-called authorities often speak so confidently and because their opinions appear in print or on the Internet, their words have the ring of authority. But as theatregoers, we should reserve our own judgment and should certainly not be intimidated by this.

In certain large cities—New York, Chicago, Los Angeles, London, Paris—where a number of critics and reviewers in various media comment on each production, there is a wide range of opinion. It is not unusual for some critic/reviewers to find a certain play admirable, while others find the same play quite inferior, and still others find a mixture of good and bad. This implies that there is no absolute authority among such people, and that we should make up our own minds. If a

41

critic/reviewer, for example, dislikes a certain play because he or she finds it too sentimental and you happen to like that kind of sentiment, you should not be dissuaded from your own preferences. Attending the theatre is a unique, individual experience—it is *your* experience—and you must trust and be guided by your own judgment.

42

## PLAYING YOUR PART: THINKING ABOUT THEATRE

1. Think of a contemporary play or musical you have seen in which the characters and the story remind you of something you are familiar with in your own life. How did the knowledge of the real event help you appreciate and understand what you saw onstage?

2. Imagine two friends viewing the same theatre production. One friend is captivated, feeling that what he or she saw was genuine and moving, a deeply affecting experience. The other friend was not moved and felt that the performance was artificial and inauthentic. Why do you think the same performance can elicit two such different reactions?
3. Make a list of all the places near your hometown or near your college where live theatre is presented. Have you ever attended a performance at one of these theatres? Describe the kind of physical theatre it is. Describe the experience; what was it like?

## SUMMARY

**1**. Each individual attending a theatre event brings to it a personal background of experience that becomes a vital ingredient in his or her response.

**2**. Theatre—like other arts—is closely linked to the society in which it is produced; it mirrors and reflects the attitudes, philosophy, and basic assumptions of its time.

**3**. Spectators attending a play written in their own day bring to it an awareness of their society's values and beliefs, and this background information forms an important part of the overall experience.

**4**. A play from the past can be better understood if the spectator is aware of the culture from which it came.

**5**. For any play that presents difficulties in language, style, or meaning, familiarity with the work itself can add immeasurably to a spectator's understanding and appreciation of a performance.

**6**. With an unfamiliar work, it is also helpful to learn about the playwright and his or her approach to theatre.

**7**. Expectations about the nature of the theatre experience affect our reaction to it. The various experiences in theatre today in the United States include Broadway and touring theatre; resident professional theatre; alternative theatre; young people's and children's theatre; college and university theatre; community and amateur theatre; and multiethnic, multicultural, global, and gender theatre.

**8**. Most people who attend theatre events are amateur critics, making judgments and drawing conclusions about what they see.

**9**. The professional critic has several tasks: to understand exactly what is being presented, including the intentions of the playwright and the director; to analyze the play, the acting, and the direction, as well as other elements such as scenery and lighting; to evaluate the presentation—was this worth doing? Does it serve a purpose?

**10**. People commenting on theatre can be divided into *reviewers*, who report briefly on a theatre event in newspapers, in magazines, or on television, and *critics*, who write longer articles analyzing in depth a performance or the work of a playwright.

43

---

**11**. The dramaturg or literary manager is a position that originated in Europe and is now found in many theatres in the United States, particularly not-for-profit theatres. The dramaturg analyzes scripts, advises directors, and works with playwrights on new dramas.

**12**. Audience members must realize that critics, too, have their limitations and prejudices and that ultimately each individual spectator must arrive at his or her own judgment regarding a theatre event.

Design Elements: In Focus box (spotlight): ©Exactostock/SuperStock; Playing Your Part box (theatre seats): ©Ron Chapple/Getty Images

## STAGE SPACES: AN OUTDOOR THRUST STAGE

The Allen Pavilion at the Oregon Shakespeare Festival is a 1,200-seat theatre with an Elizabethan thrust stage. With the audience on three sides, this is one of the oldest and most popular configurations for a theatre performance space. The production shown here is Shakespeare's *Love's Labour's Lost*, directed by Kenneth Albers. (©T Charles Erickson)

3

# Theatre Spaces

When we attend the theatre, our experience begins in advance. Sometimes we read or hear reports of the play online or in print; we anticipate seeing a particular actress or actor or a specific type of production; we buy tickets and make plans with friends to attend; and before the performance, we gather outside the theatre space with other members of the audience.

## CREATING THE ENVIRONMENT

When we arrive inside a theatre building or other space for a performance, we immediately take in the environment in which the event will occur. The atmosphere inside the space for a production has a great deal to do with our mood in approaching a performance, not only creating expectations about the event but conditioning the experience once it gets under way. As spectators, we have one feeling if we come into a formal setting, such as a picture-frame stage surrounded by carved gilt figures, with crystal chandeliers and red plush seats in the auditorium. We have quite a different feeling if we come into an old warehouse converted for a performance, with bare brick walls, and a stage in the middle of the floor surrounded by folding chairs.

For many years people took the physical arrangement of theatres for granted. This was particularly true in the period when all houses were facsimiles of the Broadway theatre, with its proscenium, or picture-frame, stage. Since the 1950s, however, not only have people been exposed to other types of theatres; they have also become more aware of the importance of environment. Many experimental groups have deliberately made awareness of the environment a part of the experience. And even in the commercial Broadway theatre there have been experiments with transforming the environment.

An example of such a production is *Natasha, Pierre & the Great Comet of 1812*. This musical, based on a section of Leo Tolstoy's novel *War and Peace*, was first produced in a 99-seat off-Broadway house and then to accommodate even larger audiences in a tent in Manhattan's Meatpacking district. (The use of a tent reflects how theatre spaces can be created anywhere.) In 2016, the play opened at

the Imperial Theatre, a Broadway playhouse that can seat over 1,400 audience members.

46

In order to transform this traditional proscenium-arch theatre into an immersive space that feels like a nineteenth-century Russian supper club, set designer Mimi Lien added red velvet curtains surrounding the entire audience area. In addition, portraits line all the walls of the theatre; a wooden curving road goes through the middle of the orchestra bringing actors into the midst of audience members, and brilliant chandeliers come down from the ceiling engulfing the audience. Staircases lead from the traditional orchestra level to the upper seating area for audience members; tables and chairs replace five rows of seats usually used for spectators (the only physical change in the theatre), with ramps and the curving road being built on existing seats. In the center of the Imperial Theatre there is a constructed oval that again thrusts the performance into the audience.

What was the goal of transforming this traditional Broadway theatre for *Natasha, Pierre & the Great Comet of 1812*? Director Rachel Chavkin indicates that the goal is to immerse audience members to integrate them into the world of the production to become part of the action, blurring the distinction between performance and spectator space. The director explained: “A woman walked in the theatre one day . . . and she was like, ‘Where’s the stage?’ The answer is: There isn’t one. Or it’s everywhere, which is the joy of it.”[1] Designer Lien says the Imperial was transformed so that the experience begins from the moment the audience enters: “Then you come inside, and I really wanted that moment of stepping inside to be impactful,” she says. “This feeling of a warm, lush, opulent cocoon-like space was really important to us, and so we have hung onto that every step of the way.”[2]

The feeling we have about the atmosphere of a theatre building as we enter the space has always been an important element in the experience. In the past, spectators may not have been conscious of it, but they were affected by it nevertheless. Today, with the many varieties of theatre experience available to us, the first thing we should become aware of is the environment in which an event takes place: whether it is large or small, indoors or outdoors, formal or informal, familiar or unfamiliar.

At times scenic designers are able to alter the architecture of a theatre space to create a new arrangement or configuration, as we explained was done for *Natasha, Pierre & the Great Comet of 1812*. If the auditorium space is too large for a specific production, balconies might be blocked off, or the rear of the orchestra might be closed in

some manner. Also, the decor can be altered: bright colors, banners, and bright lighting could create a festive atmosphere in a space that is ordinarily formal and subdued. The first thing for us, as audience members, is to note the general characteristics of the space: Is it formal or informal? Is it large or small? Next, is the question of the configuration of stage and audience seating.

## THEATRE SPACES

A consideration of environment leads directly to an examination of the various forms and styles of theatre buildings, including the arrangements of audience seating. Throughout theatre history, there have been five basic stage arrangements, each with its own advantages and disadvantages, each suited to certain types of plays and



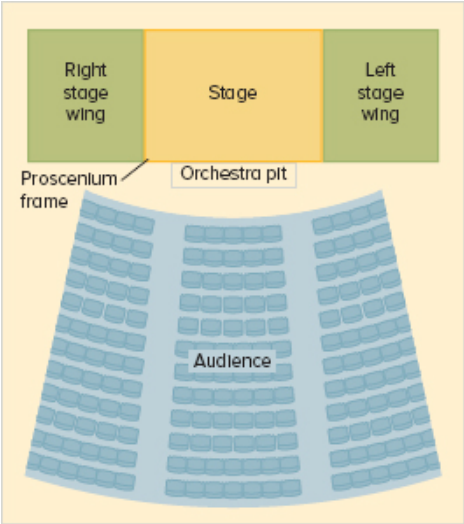
certain types of productions, and each providing the audience with a somewhat different experience. The five are (1) the ***proscenium***, or picture-frame, stage; (2) the ***arena***, or circle, stage; (3) the ***thrust stage*** with three-quarters seating;[3] (4) *created* and *found* stage spaces; and (5) all-purpose, multipurpose, or ***"black box"*** theatre spaces, out of which a version of any one of the other four can be created.

**proscenium** ("pro-SEEN-ee-um") Arch or frame surrounding the stage opening in a box or picture stage.

**arena** Stage entirely surrounded by the audience; also known as *circle theatre* or *theatre-in-the-round*.

**thrust stage** Stage space that thrusts into the audience space; a stage surrounded on three sides by audience seating.

**black box** A theatre space that is open, flexible, and adaptable, usually without fixed seating. The stage–audience configuration can be rearranged to suit the individual requirements of a given production, making it both economical and particularly well suited to experimental work.




**PROSCENIUM THEATRE**

The audience faces in one direction, toward an enclosed stage encased by a picture-frame opening. Scene changes and performers' entrances and exits are made behind the proscenium opening, out of sight of the audience.

## Proscenium or Picture-Frame Stage: History and Characteristics

Perhaps the most familiar type of stage is the proscenium ("pro-SEEN-ee-um"), or picture-frame, stage. Broadway-style theatres, which for many years were models for theatres throughout the country, have proscenium stages.

The term *proscenium* comes from *proscenium arch*, the frame that separates the stage from the auditorium and that was first introduced in Italy during the Renaissance in the seventeenth century. Today this frame is not an arch but a rectangle. As the term *picture-frame stage* suggests, it resembles a large frame through which the audience looks at the stage. Another term for this type of stage is ***fourth wall***, from the idea of the proscenium opening as a transparent glass wall through which the audience looks at the other three walls of a room.

**fourth wall** Convention, in a proscenium-arch theatre, that the audience is looking into a room through an invisible fourth wall.

Because the action takes place largely behind the proscenium opening, or frame, the seats in the auditorium all face in the same direction, toward the stage, just as seats in a movie theatre face the screen. The auditorium itself—the ***front of the house***, or *house*, as it is called—is slanted downward from the back to the stage. (In theatre

usage, the slant of an auditorium or stage floor is called a ***rake***.) The stage is raised several feet above the auditorium floor, to aid visibility. There is usually a balcony (sometimes two balconies) protruding about halfway over the main floor. The main floor, incidentally, is called (in American usage) the ***orchestra***. (In ancient Greek theatre, the orchestra was the circular acting area at the base of the hillside amphitheatre, but in modern usage it is the main floor of the theatre, where the audience sits.) In certain theatres, as well as concert halls and opera houses that have the proscenium arrangement, there are horseshoe-shaped tiers, or ***boxes***, that ring the auditorium for several floors above the orchestra.

**front of the house** Portion of a theatre reserved for the audience; sometimes called simply the *house*.

**rake** (1) To position scenery on a slant or at an angle other than parallel or perpendicular to the curtain line. (2) An upward slope of the stage floor away from the audience.

**orchestra** A circular playing space in ancient Greek theatres; in modern times, the ground-floor seating in a theatre auditorium.

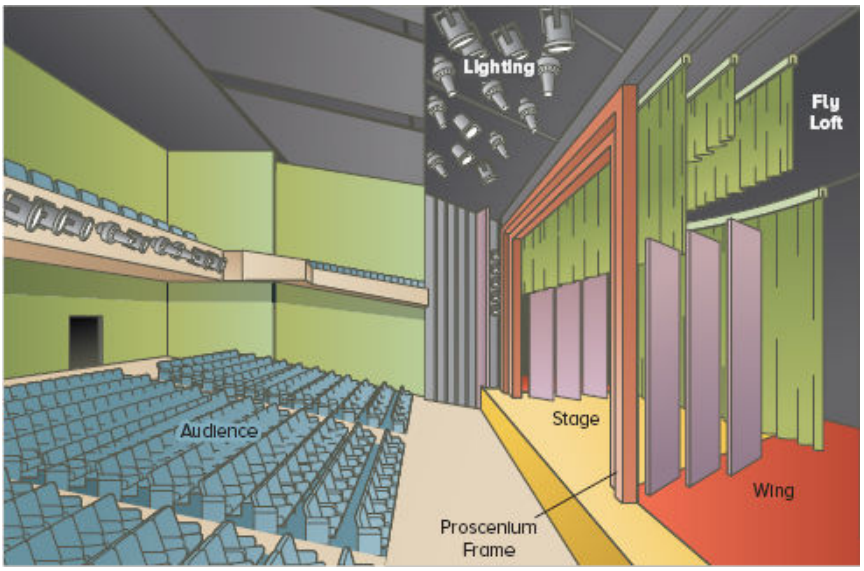
**box** Small private compartment for a group of spectators built into the walls of traditional proscenium-arch and other theatres.

The popularity of the proscenium stage on Broadway and throughout the United States in the nineteenth century and the early twentieth century was partly due to its wide acceptance throughout Europe. Beginning in the late seventeenth century, the proscenium theatre was adopted in every European country. For the next two centuries in Europe both the mechanics of stage machinery and the artistry of scene painting improved steadily allowing designers to create extraordinary stage pictures.

An Italian, Giacomo Torelli (1608–1678), developed methods of moving scenery on- and offstage felicitously, and throughout the eighteenth century, members of one family, the Bibiena family, dominated the art of scene painting. The Bibiena sets usually consisted of vast halls, palaces, or gardens with towering columns and arches that framed spacious corridors or hallways, which disappeared into an endless series of vistas as far as the eye could see. At times during this period, audiences, as well as scene designers and technicians, became so carried away with spectacle that the visual aspects were emphasized to the exclusion of everything else, including the script and the acting.

## THE PROSCENIUM THEATRE

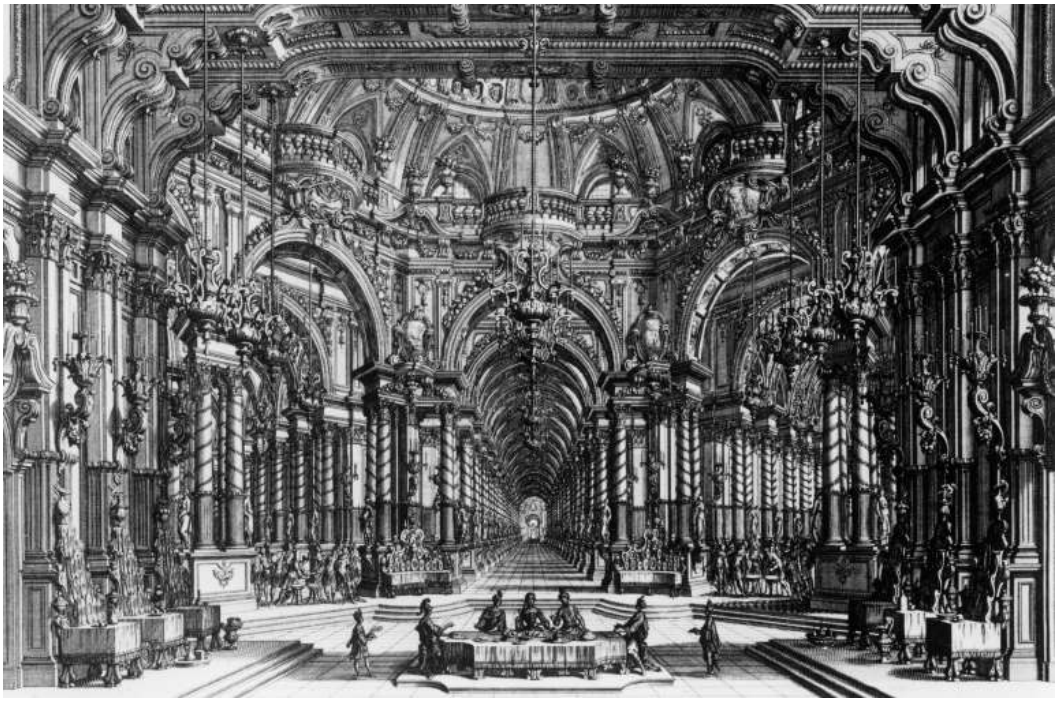
The traditional proscenium theatre resembles a movie theatre in terms of audience seating: All the seats face in one direction, toward the stage. The frame of the stage is like a picture frame, and behind the frame are all the elements of the visual production such as scenery, painted drops, pieces that move across the stage, platforms, steps, perhaps the interior of a room or several rooms. The theatre shown here, the Bolton Theatre at the Cleveland Play House, is an excellent example of a proscenium theatre. It was redesigned by the architect Philip Johnson and renovated in 1983. (©Paul Tepley/Courtesy of Cleveland Play House)




## A MODERN PROSCENIUM-STAGE THEATRE

In this cutaway drawing we see the audience seating at the left, all facing in the one direction, toward the stage. Behind the orchestra pit in the center is the apron on the stage; and then the proscenium frame, behind which are the flats and other scenic elements. Overhead, scenery can be raised into the fly loft above the stage area.





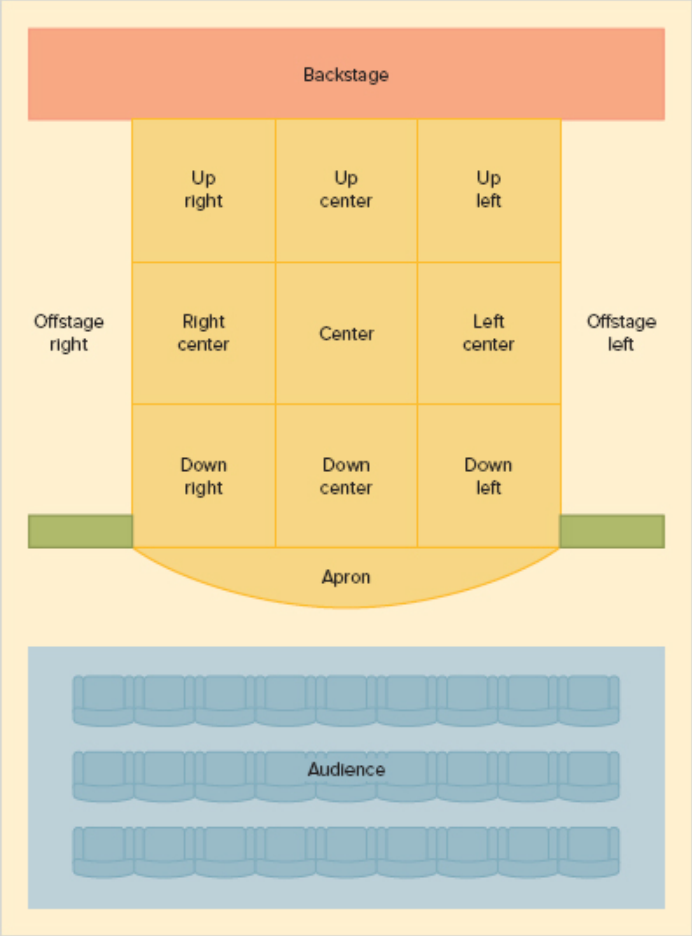
## A BIBIENA SET FOR A FORMAL PROSCENIUM THEATRE

The standard theatre throughout Europe and the United States from the eighteenth century to the early twentieth century was a formal proscenium space. The audience sat in a downstairs orchestra, in balconies, and in side boxes facing an ornate picture-frame stage. Impressive scenery and other visual effects were created and changed behind the curtain that covers the proscenium opening. In the eighteenth century, the Bibiena family from Italy created scene designs on a grand scale for such theatres throughout Europe. They painted backdrops with vistas that seemed to disappear into the far distance. This scene is by Giuseppe di Bibiena (1696–1757). (©akg-images/Newscom)

Although there have been many changes in theatre production, and today we have a wide variety of production approaches, we are still attracted to ingenious displays of visual effects in proscenium theatres. This is especially true of large musicals such as *The Phantom of the Opera, The Lion King, Wicked, Aladdin*, and *Charlie and the Chocolate Factory*. Because the machinery and the workings of scene changes can be concealed behind a proscenium opening, this type of stage offers a perfect arrangement for spectacle.

There are other advantages to the proscenium stage. Realistic scenery—a living room, an office, a kitchen—looks good behind a proscenium frame; the scene designer can create the illusion of a genuine, complete room more easily with a proscenium stage than with any other. Also, the strong central focus provided by the frame rivets the attention of the audience. There are times, too, when we want the detachment, the distancing, that a proscenium provides.

50




### STAGE AREAS

Various parts of the stage are given specific designations. Near the audience is *downstage:* away from the audience is *upstage*. *Right* and *left* are from the performers' point of view, not the audience's. Everything out of sight of the audience is *offstage*. Using this scheme, everyone working in the theatre can carefully pinpoint stage areas.

There are disadvantages as well, however. As we have seen, the proscenium stage creates a temptation to get carried away with visual pyrotechnics. In addition, a proscenium stage tends to be remote and formal. Some of us, as spectators, prefer the intimacy and informality—the experience of being close to the action—found in the arena and thrust theatres.

**Physical Layout: The Proscenium Arch** To designate areas of the stage, usually in a proscenium theatre, scene designers, directors, performers, and technicians use terminology peculiar to theatre. ***Stage***

***right*** and ***stage left*** mean the right side and the left side of the stage, respectively, as seen from the position of a performer facing the audience. (In other words, when we, as spectators, in the auditorium look at the stage, the area to their left is known as right stage and the area to their right as left stage.)

**stage right** Right side of the stage from the point of view of a performer facing the audience.

**stage left** Left side of the stage from the point of view of a performer facing the audience.

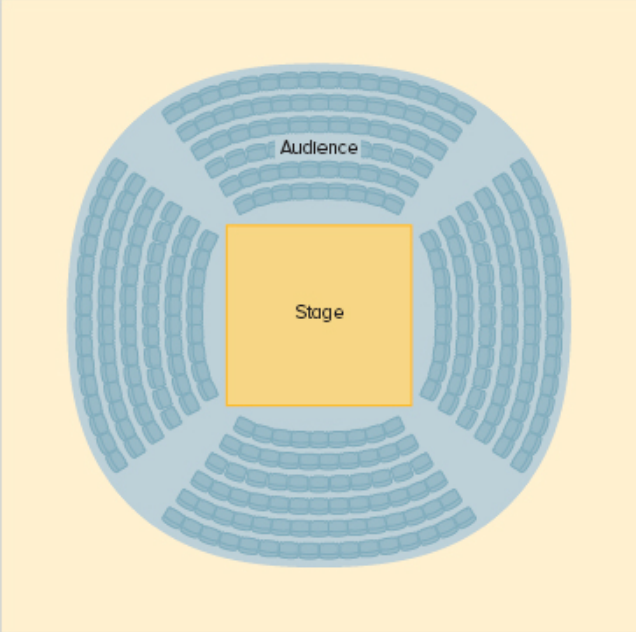
The area nearest to us, the audience, is known as ***downstage***; farthest away from us is ***upstage***. The designations *downstage* and *upstage* come from the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, when the stage was raked, that is, sloped downward from front to back. As a result of this downward slope, the performer farthest away from the audience was higher, or "up," and could be seen better. Also, performers downstage from, or below, an upstage performer would be forced to turn their backs on the audience when addressing her or him. This is the origin of the expression "to upstage" someone. Today, the term is used whenever one performer grabs the spotlight from everyone else or calls attention to himself or herself by any means whatever. At first, however, it meant simply that one performer was in a better position than the others because she or he was standing farther back on the raked stage and, therefore, was higher.

**downstage** Front of the stage, toward the audience.

**upstage** At or toward the back of the stage, away from the front edge of the stage.

51

For large-scale productions the proscenium theatre is ideal. The scenery and other elements can be hidden above, behind, and around the stage, and then moved into the main stage area, as if by magic. Costumes can be displayed at their finest. In addition, the scale of the scenic effects can be extensive and sometimes electrifying. The scene shown here is from the hip-hop influenced *Aladdin* by Joel Horwood in a production at the Lyric Hammersmith theatre in London. (©Elliott Franks/eyevine/Redux)




**PLAN OF AN ARENA STAGE**

The audience sits on four sides or in a circle surrounding the stage. Entrances and exits are made through the aisles or through tunnels underneath the aisles. A feeling of intimacy is achieved because the audience is close to the action and encloses it.

## Arena Stage: History and Characteristics

To some of us, proscenium theatres, decorated in gold and red plush, look more like temples of art than theatres. We prefer a more informal, intimate theatre environment. A movement in this direction began in the United States just after World War II, when a number of theatre practitioners decided to break away from the formality of proscenium theatres. This was part of an overall desire to bring many aspects of theatre closer to everyday life: acting styles, the subject matter of plays,

the manner of presentation, and the shape of the theatre space. One form this reaction took was the *arena stage*— a return to one of the most ancient stage arrangements.

From as far back as we have records, we know that tribal ceremonies and rituals, in all parts of the world, have been held in some form of circle space. For example, many scholars believe that the ancient Greek theatre evolved from an arena form. In an arena theatre



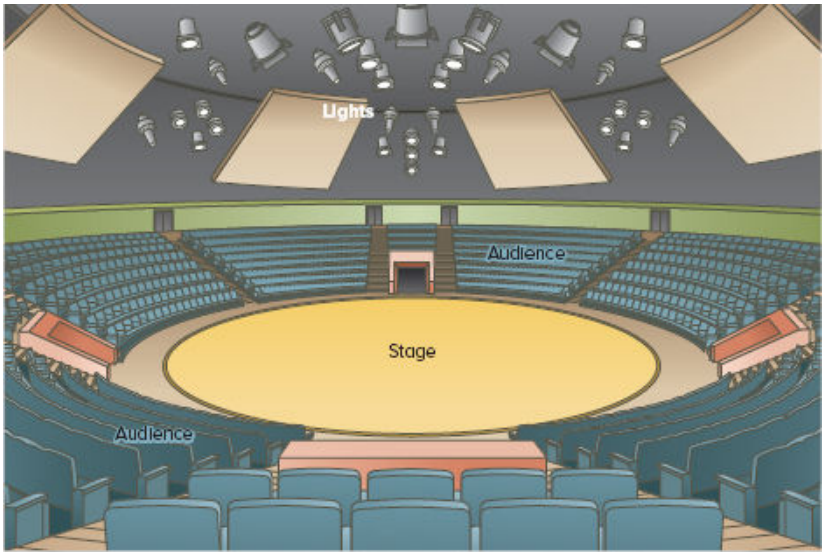
(also called *circle theatre* or *theatre-in-the-round*) there is a playing space in the center of a square or circle, with seats for spectators all around it. The arrangement is similar to that in sports arenas featuring boxing or basketball. The stage may be a raised area a few feet off the main floor, with seats rising from the floor level; or it may be on the floor itself, with seats raised on levels around it. When seating is close to the stage, there is usually some kind of demarcation indicating the boundaries of the playing area.

One advantage of the arena theatre is that it offers more intimacy than the ordinary proscenium. With the performers in the center, even in a larger theatre, we can be closer to them. If the same number of people attends an arena event and a proscenium event, at least half of those at the arena will be nearer the action: Someone who would have been in the twelfth row in a proscenium theatre will be in the sixth row in an arena theatre. Besides, with this proximity to the stage, the arena theatre has another advantage: There is no frame or barrier to separate the performers from us.

Beyond these considerations, in the arena arrangement there is an unconscious communion, basic to human behavior, that comes when people form a circle—from the embrace of two of us to a circle for children's games to a larger gathering where we form an enclosure around a fire or an altar. It is no coincidence that virtually all of the earliest forms of theatre were "in the round."

A practical advantage of the arena theatre is economy. All you need for this kind of theatre is a large room: You designate a playing space, arrange rows of seats around the sides, and hang lights on pipes above, and you have a theatre. Elaborate scenery is impossible because it would block the view of large parts of the audience. A few pieces of furniture, with perhaps a lamp or sign hung from the ceiling, are all you need to indicate where a scene takes place. Many low-budget groups have found that they can build a workable and even attractive theatre-in-the-round when a proscenium theatre would be out of the question. These two factors—intimacy and economy—no doubt

explain why arena theatre is one of the oldest stage forms, as well as one still very much in use today.




## THE STAGE AND SEATING IN AN ARENA THEATRE

The arena theatre attempts to capture the immediacy of primitive theatre. It uses the barest essentials of stage scenery but the full resources of contemporary stage lighting.

53

### ARENA STAGE

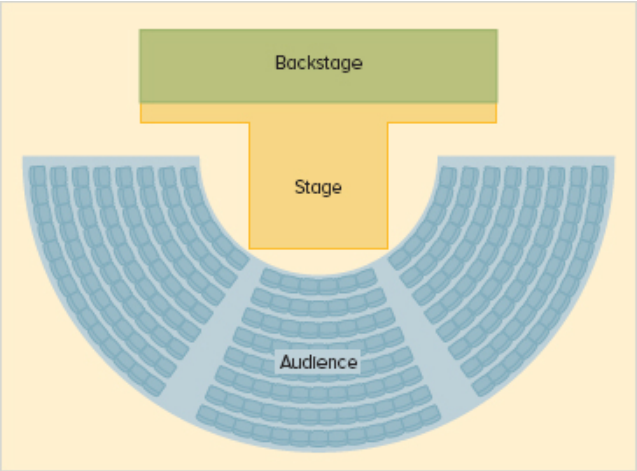
With an arena stage, also referred to as a circle stage or theatre-in-the-round, the audience surrounds the stage area on all sides. In addition to aisles for audience members to enter, there are passages that the performers use to enter and leave the stage. One effect of the arena stage is to create a close rapport between actors and audience. Seen here is the renovated Fichandler Stage at the Arena Stage in Washington, D.C. (©Photo by Nic Lehoux/Courtesy of Revery Architecture)

In spite of its long history, however, and its resurgence in recent years, the arena stage has often been eclipsed by other forms. One reason is that its design, while allowing for intimacy, also dictates a certain austerity. As we noted before, it is impossible to have elaborate scenery because that would block the view of many spectators. Also, the performers must make all their entrances and exits along aisles that run through the audience, and they can sometimes be seen before and after they are supposed to appear onstage. The arena's lack of adaptability in this respect may explain why some of the circle theatres that opened twenty or thirty years ago have since closed. A number survive, however, and continue to do well. Among the best known are the Arena Stage in Washington, D.C., and Circle in the Square in New York City. In addition, throughout this country there are a number of *tent theatres* in arena form where musical revivals and concerts are given.

## Thrust Stage: History and Characteristics

Falling between the proscenium and the arena is a third type of theatre: the *thrust stage* with three-quarters seating. In one form or another, this U-shape arrangement has been the most widely used of all stage spaces. In the basic arrangement for this type of theatre, we sit on three sides, or in a semicircle, enclosing a stage, which protrudes into the center. At the back of the playing area is some form of ***stage house*** providing for the entrances and exits of the performers as well as for scene changes. The thrust stage combines some of the best features of the other two stage types: the sense of intimacy and the "wraparound" feeling of the arena, and the focused stage placed against a single background found in the proscenium.

**stage house** Stage floor and the space around it to the side walls, as well as the space above it up to the grid.




**THRUST STAGE WITH THREE-QUARTERS SEATING**

The stage is surrounded on three sides by the audience. Sometimes seating is in a semicircle. Entrances and exits are made from the sides and backstage. Spectators surround the action, but scene changes and other stage effects are still possible.

The thrust stage was developed by the classical Greeks for their tragedies and comedies. They adapted the circle used for tribal rituals and other ceremonies—the circle called the *orchestra*—by locating it at the base of a curving hillside. The slope of



the hill formed a natural amphitheatre for the spectators. At the rear of the orchestra circle, opposite the hillside, was placed a stage house, which had formal doors through which characters made their entrances and exits and served as a background for the action. The stage house also provided a place for the actors to change their costumes. The largest Greek theatres seated 15,000 or more spectators. While they were originally wooden structures in the classical Greek era, their design was duplicated in stone structures all over Greece in the following two centuries. Remnants of these stone theatres remain today throughout that part of the world, in such places as Epidaurus, Priene, Ephesus, Delphi, and Corinth, to name a few.

**THE ORIGINAL THRUST STAGE: THE GREEK AMPHITHEATRE**

An original prototype of the thrust stage was the amphitheatre in ancient Greece. Shown here is the theatre at Epidaurus, Greece. The seating surrounds the playing area on three sides. Acting took place on the raised platform at the back, but also in the circular area that is thrust into the audience. Among many other remarkable traits of these theatres are the incredible view of the mountains in the distance and the amazing acoustics of the theatre. A person in the back, top row can hear an actor speaking without any artificial amplification. (©Jose Fuste Raga/Getty Images)

The Romans, who took the Greek form and built it as a complete freestanding structure, had a theatre that was not strictly a thrust stage but a forerunner of the proscenium. Instead of using the natural amphitheatre of a hillside, they constructed a stone building, joining the stage house to the seating area and making the orchestra a semicircle. In front of the stage house, decorated with arches and statues, they erected a long platform stage where most of the action occurred.

Another example of the thrust stage is found in the medieval period, when short religious plays began to be presented in churches and cathedrals in England and parts of continental Europe. Around 1200 ce, performances of these religious plays were moved outdoors. One popular arrangement for these outdoor performances was the ***platform stage***. A simple platform was set on trestles (it was sometimes called a *trestle stage*), with a curtain at the back, which the performers used for entrances and costume changes. The area underneath the stage was closed off and provided, among other things, a space from which devils

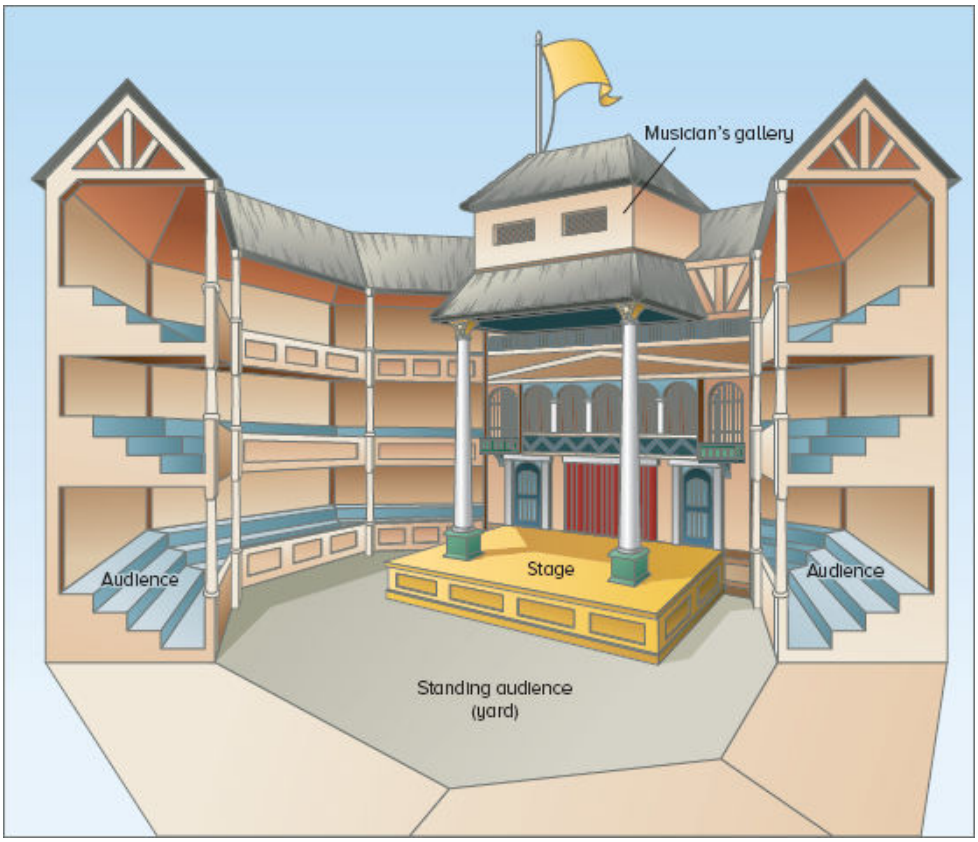
and other characters could appear, sometimes in a cloud of smoke. In some places the platform was on wheels (a ***wagon stage***) and was moved from place to place through a town. The audience stood on three sides of the platform, making it an improvised thrust stage. This type of stage was widely used from the thirteenth to the fifteenth centuries in England and various parts of Europe.

**platform stage** Elevated stage with no proscenium.

**wagon stage** Low platform mounted on wheels or casters by means of which scenery is moved on- and offstage.

## THE CLASSIC SPANISH STAGE

A variation on the thrust stage used in Elizabethan England is the Spanish *corral*. A version of this stage, uncovered by accident in 1953, is shown here in Almagro, Spain, where a theatre festival is held each year. Not strictly speaking a thrust stage, it has all the other components of a Renaissance outdoor theatre, with the platform stage and audience seating in boxes or a balcony around three sides. (©Guillermo Casas/Courtesy Festival de Almagro)



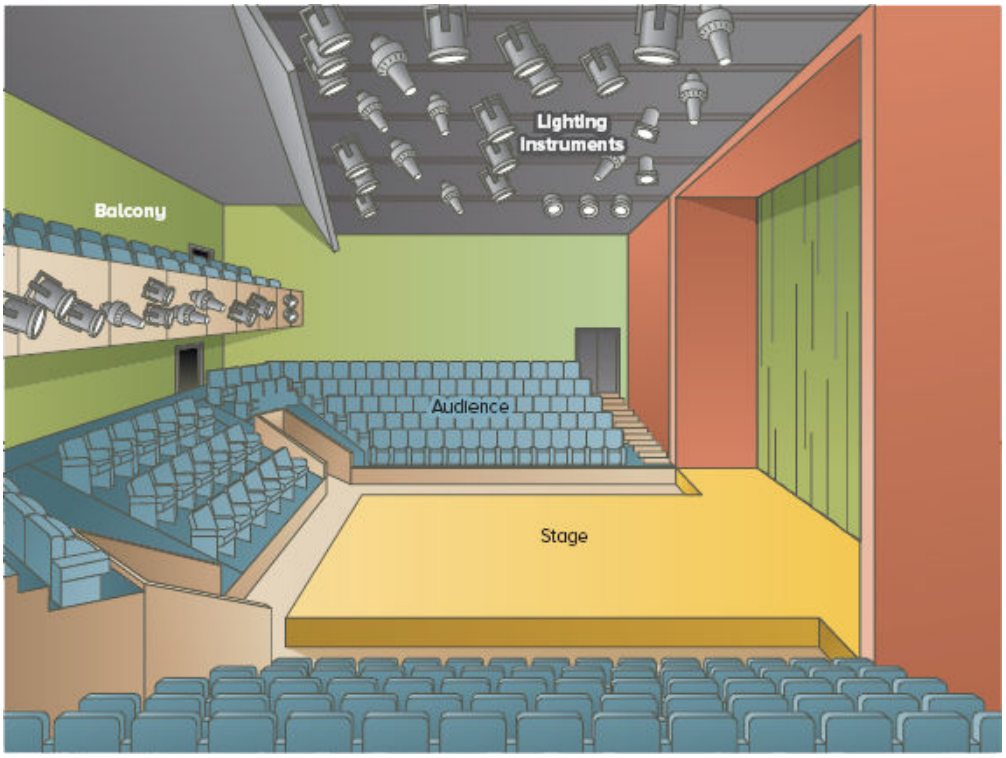

**AN ELIZABETHAN PLAYHOUSE**

This drawing shows the kind of stage on which the plays of Shakespeare and his contemporaries were first presented. A platform stage juts into an open courtyard, with spectators standing on three sides. Three levels of enclosed seats rise above the courtyard. There are doors at the rear of the stage for entrances and exits and an upper level for balcony scenes.

The next step following the wagon stage was a thrust stage that appeared in England in the sixteenth century, just before Shakespeare began writing for the theatre. A platform stage would be set up at one end of the open courtyard of an inn. The inns of this period were three or four stories high, and the rooms facing the inner courtyard served as boxes from which spectators could watch the performance. On the ground level, spectators stood on three sides of the stage. The fourth side of the courtyard, behind the platform, served as the stage house. An interesting coincidence is that an almost identical theatre took shape in Spain at the same time. The inns in Spain were called ***corrales***, and this name was given to the theatres that developed there.

**corral** Theatre building of the Spanish golden age, usually located in the courtyard of a series of adjoining buildings.






**THE STAGE AND SEATING AREA OF A THRUST-STAGE THEATRE**

This cutaway drawing of a thrust stage shows how the playing area juts into the audience, which surrounds the stage on three sides. This configuration affords intimacy, but at the back (shown here at the right) is an area that furnishes a natural backdrop for the action.

The formal English theatres of Shakespeare's day, such as the Globe and the Fortune, were similar to the inn theatres: The audience stood in an open area around a platform stage, and three levels of spectators sat in closed galleries at the back and sides. A roof covered part of the stage; at the back of the stage, some form of raised area served for balcony scenes (as in *Romeo and Juliet*). At the rear of the stage, also, scenes could be concealed and then "discovered." On each side at the rear was a door used for entrances and exits.

These theatres were fascinating combinations of diverse elements: They were both indoors and outdoors; some spectators stood while others sat; and the audience was composed of almost all levels of

society. The physical environment must have been stimulating: Performers standing at the front of the thrust stage were in the center of a hemisphere of spectators, on three sides around them as well as above and below. These theatres held 2,000 to 3,000 spectators, but no one in the audience was more than 60 feet or so from the stage, and most people were much closer. Being in the midst of so many people, enclosed on all sides but with the open sky above, must have instilled a feeling of great communion among audiences and performers. Something of the same feeling can be recaptured when one visits the recently reconstructed Globe Theatre in London.

Shortly after Shakespeare's day, in the latter part of the seventeenth century, there were two significant theatrical developments in England, in Spain, and throughout Europe: (1) the theatre moved almost completely indoors; and (2) the stage



began a slow but steady retreat behind the proscenium opening, partly because performances were indoors, but more because the style of theatres changed. For more than two centuries the thrust stage was in eclipse, not to reappear until about 1900, when a few theatres in England began using a version of the thrust stage to produce Shakespeare. The return of the thrust stage resulted from a growing realization that Elizabethan plays could be done best on a stage similar to the one for which they had been written.

In the United States and Canada, though, it was not until the mid-twentieth century that the thrust stage came to the fore again. Since then a number of fine theatres of this type have been built, including the Guthrie in Minneapolis; the Mark Taper Forum in Los Angeles; and the Long Wharf in New Haven.

We should also note that the basic stage of traditional Chinese and Japanese drama (including nō theatre in Japan) is a form of thrust stage: a raised, open platform stage frequently covered by a roof, with the audience sitting on two or three sides around the platform. Entrances and exits are made from doors or ramps at the rear of the stage.

The obvious advantages of the thrust stage—the intimacy of three-quarters seating and the close performer–audience relationship, together with the fact that so many of the world's great dramatic works were written for it—give it a significant place alongside the other major forms.

### Created and Found Spaces

After World War II a number of avant-garde theatre artists, such as the Polish director Jerzy Grotowski (1933–1999), undertook to reform theatre at every level. Since the various elements of theatre are inextricably bound together, their search for a more basic kind of theatre included a close look at the physical arrangement of the playing area and its relationship to the audience.

The Performance Group, which, for example, led spectators one at a time into its adaptation of the Greek tragedy *The Bacchae, Dionysus in 69*, is typical in this regard. It presented its productions in a large garage converted into an open theatre space. At various places in the garage, scaffolding and ledges were built for audience seating. The Performance Group, like other modern avant-garde companies, owed a great debt to a Frenchman, Antonin Artaud (1896–1948), one of the first theatre people to examine in depth the questions raised by the avant-garde. An actor and director who wrote a series of articles and essays about theatre, Artaud was brilliant but inconsistent (he spent several periods of his life in mental institutions). Many of Artaud's ideas, however, were to prove prophetic: Notions he put forward in the 1920s and 1930s, considered impossible or impractical at the time, have since become common practice among experimental theatre groups. Among his proposals was one on the physical theatre:

> We abolish the stage and auditorium and replace them by a single site, without partition or barrier of any kind, which will become the theater of the action. A direct communication will be reestablished between the spectator and the spectacle, between the actor and the spectator, from the fact that the spectator, placed in the middle of the action, is engulfed and physically affected by it. This envelopment results, in part, from the very configuration of the room itself. Thus, abandoning the architecture of present-day theaters, we shall take some hangar or barn which we shall have reconstructed according to processes which have culminated in the architecture of certain churches or holy places, and of certain temples in Tibet.[4]

## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. Rearrange your classroom seating into proscenium, arena, and thrust configurations. Read a speech aloud from a play or a paragraph from a novel to the class in each of these configurations. How is your presentation affected by the arrangement of the space?

2. Visit a gym or sports arena on your campus. What is the configuration of the space? How does it relate to a theatre environment? What type of popular entertainment might be staged there?
3. Find an outdoor space on your campus that might be used for theatre. What type of presentation would you stage there? Why?

A MODERN THRUST STAGE

The thrust stage, with a stage area extending into audience seating that surrounds it on three sides, is one of the oldest arrangements, having been used by the Greeks and by the Elizabethans in the time of Shakespeare. It has been revived successfully in the modern period and is widely used in Europe and the United States. A good example is the recently renovated Mark Taper Forum in Los Angeles. (©Craig Schwartz)

Some of Artaud's ideas were put into practice when the movement to explore new concepts became widespread. In the generation after Artaud, Jerzy Grotowski included the physical arrangements of stage space in his experiments. Not only Grotowski but others in the avant-garde movement developed theatre space in a variety of ways.

## SITE-SPECIFIC THEATRE: CREATED AND FOUND SPACE

Shown here are two examples of site-specific theatre. In the top photo, a formal garden in the Aberglasney Gardens in Wales is the site of a performance by young actors dressed in black and white using the garden space as their stage. The second example (at bottom) shows the Polish theatre company Biuro Podrozy in a production of *Macbeth*, using its trademark stilts on a street, at the Edinburgh Fringe Festival in

Edinburgh, Scotland. (top: ©Keith Morris/Alamy Stock Photo; bottom: ©Jeff J Mitchell/Getty Images)



**Nontheatre Buildings** Artaud mentioned a barn or hangar for performances. In recent years virtually all kinds of structures have been used: lofts, warehouses, fire stations, basements, churches, breweries, and gymnasiums. This practice should not be confused with the conversion of unusual spaces to full-scale theatres, which has numerous precedents in the past; historically, indoor tennis courts, palace ballrooms, and monastery dining halls have been converted into theatres. We are, instead, describing here the use of nontheatre structures as they are, with their original architectural elements intact, and carving out special areas for acting and viewing—as with the garage used by the Performance Group. In our contemporary theatre, ***site-specific companies*** are theatre groups that create productions for specific nontheatre locations. For example, the English company Punchdrunk staged *Sleep No More*, an adaptation of Shakespeare's *Macbeth*, in three abandoned warehouses in Manhattan with the audiences moving through various spaces, supposedly in a 1930s hotel, created in them.

**site-specific companies** Theatre groups that create productions for specific nontheatre locations.

**Adapted Spaces** One frequent practice was using or creating a space to fit a play, rather than (as is normally the case) making the play fit the space. Grotowski, in particular, pursued the notion of finding a different, appropriate configuration for each production. In Grotowski's production of the Doctor Faustus story, for example, the theatre was filled with two long tables at which spectators sat as if they were guests at a banquet hosted by Faustus. The action took place at the heads of the tables and even on the tabletops. For his production of *The Constant Prince*, a fence was built around the playing area, and the audience sat behind the fence, looking over it like spectators at a bullfight. In recent decades there have been similar attempts to deal with theatre spaces in many parts of Europe and the United States.

**Street Theatre** One development—which was actually a return to practices in medieval Europe—is theatre held outdoors in nontraditional settings. A good example is *street theatre*. Generally, street theatre is of three types: (1) plays from the standard repertoire presented in the

streets; (2) *neighborhood theatre*, in which an original play deals with problems and aspirations of a specific population of a city, such as Puerto Ricans, African Americans, or Italians; and (3) *guerrilla theatre*, aggressive, politically oriented theatre produced by an activist group in the streets in an attempt to persuade us to become more politically involved, such as street presentations during the Occupy Wall Street movement in 2012.

Whatever the form, the important point for our purposes is that these productions take place not in theatre buildings but in places like streets, parks, hospitals, jails, and bus stations.

In these productions, theatre is brought to those of us who might not otherwise see it. Also, audiences in such unusual settings are challenged to rethink what theatre is all about. On the other hand, there are inherent disadvantages to impromptu productions in the streets or other "found spaces": The audience must be caught on the run, and there is rarely time for more than a sketch or vignette. Nor are there facilities for presenting a fully developed work—but often that is not the purpose of these undertakings in the first place.

62

## SITE-SPECIFIC THEATRE

Site specific works, which immerse audience members in the world of the theatrical piece, have become quite popular across the globe. Shown here are Leah Lane and Amara Wilson performing at The Drama League And Peculiar Works

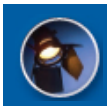
Project presentation of *Metamorphosis: A Site Specific Promenade Performance* at The Drama League Theater Center on June 28, 2015, in New York City. (©Eugene Gologursky/Stringer/Getty Images)

**Multifocus Environments** An approach that sometimes accompanies these unusual arrangements is ***multifocus theatre***. In simple terms, this means not only that there is more than one playing area, such as the four corners of the room (as Artaud suggested in one article), but also that something is going on in several of them simultaneously. This is somewhat like a three-ring circus, where we see an activity in each ring and must either concentrate on one or divide our attention among two or three.

**multifocus theatre** An environment in which there is more than one playing area.

There are several theories behind the idea of multifocus theatre. One is that a multifocus event is more like everyday life; if you stand on a street corner, there is activity all around you—in the four directions of the streets, in the buildings above—not just in one spot. You select which area you will observe, or perhaps you watch several areas at one time. The argument is that in theatre, you should have the same choice. In multifocus productions no single space or activity is supposed to be more important than any other. We either take in several impressions at once and synthesize them in our own mind or select one item as most arresting and concentrate on that. There is no such thing as the "best seat in the house"; all seats are equally good, because the activity in all parts of the theatre is equally important. Sometimes multifocus theatre is joined with *multimedia theatre*—presentations that offer some combination of acting, films, video, dance, music, slides, and light show.

63



## IN FOCUS: POPULAR PERFORMANCE SPACES

Many spaces used for live popular entertainments are reminiscent of theatre environments. Arenas used for sports, circuses, and rock concerts are configured much like theatrical spaces discussed in this chapter. Madison Square Garden in New York,

Soldier Field in Chicago, the Rose Bowl in Pasadena, California, and university sports arenas are all large spaces that primarily house sporting events but are also used for rock concerts and other popular spectacles. Madison Square Garden, for example, has housed circuses, elaborate rock concerts, and music award ceremonies. This means that an arena like the Garden is often equipped with the most innovative technology for lighting, stage, and sound effects.

Spectacular performance spaces for magicians, circuses, concerts, and stage extravaganzas are found in all of the major hotels in Las Vegas. There is live entertainment also presented in fairgrounds and amusement parks across our country.

These spaces for popular performances are most often configured in the round, with spectators surrounding the events. Some are configured three-quarters round. The reason is to maximize the number of audience members as well as to create an electrifying interactive entertainment. With these configurations, we, as spectators, are also able to watch and possibly influence each other's reactions.

Such popular performance spaces are usually extremely large, much larger than environments created exclusively for theatre. For example, the Rose Bowl accommodates over 90,000 fans for football games. Even a comparatively small collegiate athletic facility, Western Hall on the Western Illinois University campus, can accommodate approximately 5,000 spectators.

The relationship between spaces for popular entertainments and theatrical environments is complex. Throughout theatre history, the same spaces were used for popular arts and for theatrical performances. Modern theatre artists have experimented with staging dramatic performances within spaces created for concerts and circuses.

For that matter, the performance qualities of sports, the circus, and rock concerts underscore their shared heritage with the theatrical arts. It is not surprising, then, that their spaces are also similar and often multipurpose.

### All-Purpose Theatre Spaces: The Black Box

Because of the interest in a variety of spaces in modern theatre production, and the requirements of many different kinds of productions, a number of theatre complexes, including many college theatre departments and regional theatres, have built spaces that can

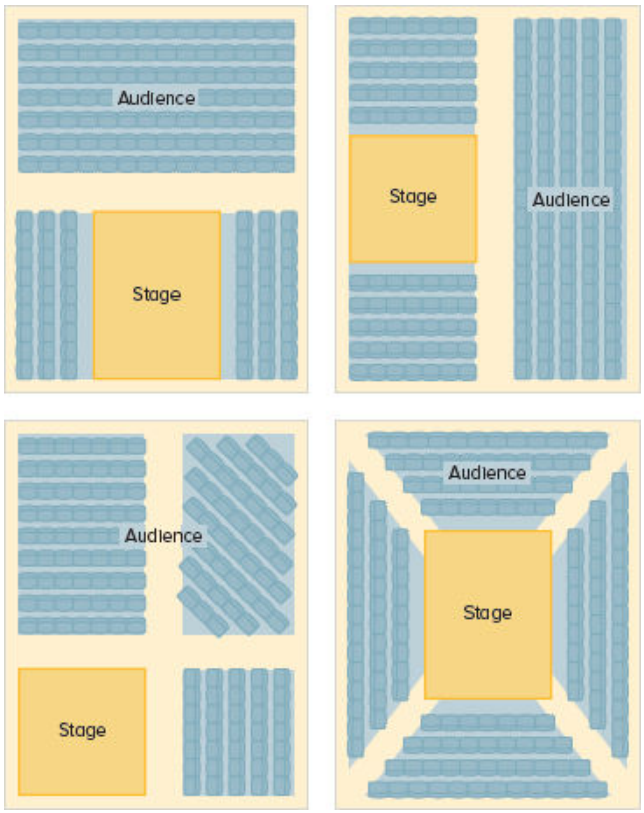
be adapted to an almost infinite variety of configurations. Seats, lights, platforms, levels—every aspect of such a theatre is flexible and movable.

In this kind of space the designers can create a proscenium, a thrust, an arena, or some combination of these, but the designers can also create corner stages, island stages, and multifocus arrangements with playing areas in several parts of the studio. This space is sometimes referred to as a *black box* because it is often an empty rectangular space into which various audience seating and stage arrangements can be introduced.

64

## PLAYING YOUR PART: THINKING ABOUT THEATRE

1. As discussed in this chapter, there are five major types of stage spaces: proscenium, arena, thrust, found space, and black box. What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of each? On which type of stage space would you prefer to watch a performance?
2. Using information from this chapter, explain which type of stage space you feel is best suited for the following productions: a large-scale musical, an intimate personal drama, a Shakespearean drama, and a play of political protest.
3. The size of theatre spaces can range from fewer than 100 spectators to more than 3,000. What do you consider an ideal-size theatre for the following types of productions: a musical, a Shakespearean play, a modern family drama? Suggest the ideal number of audience seats and the shape and size of the ideal stage space for each.




### THE ALL-PURPOSE OR "BLACK BOX" THEATRE

A popular type of modern theatre is the multipurpose space, sometimes called a "black box." It consists of an open space with perhaps a pipe grid on the ceiling from which lighting and sound instruments can be suspended. A stage platform can be positioned at any place in the space, and movable chairs for spectators can be placed around the playing area. The diagrams suggest some of the possibilities of stage arrangements in a multipurpose theatre.

65

## SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS OF THEATRE ENVIRONMENTS

Simply assigning a theatre to a category does not adequately describe the environment; we must also take into account a number of other variables. Two theatres may be of the same type and still be quite different in size, atmosphere, and setting. The experience in a small off-off-Broadway-type thrust theatre will be far different from that in a thrust

theatre several times larger, such as the Guthrie in Minneapolis. The experience in a 99-seat arena theatre at a university would be quite different than in the 886-seat arena playhouse used for musicals at the suburban Chicago Marriott Lincolnshire. Also, one theatre may be indoors and another of the same type outdoors.

There are other factors that architects, producers, and designers must take into account, one of which is the human scale. No matter what the configuration, the performer is the basic scale by which everything is measured in theatre. Theatre architects as well as scenic and lighting designers must always keep this in mind, and we should be aware of it as well. When the theatre environment and the stage space violate this human scale in some way, problems are created for performers and us.

There is also the question of appropriateness. By *appropriateness* we mean the relationship of a stage space to a play or production. A large-scale musical requires a full stage—usually a proscenium stage—and a large auditorium from which we can get the full effect of the spectacle. However, an intimate, small-cast family drama with its intense personal confrontations might require a small playing area so that we are close enough to the action to make a connection with the characters onstage.

Rather than being limited to one type of building and one type of stage, we are fortunate today in having a full range of environments in which to experience theatre. Taken all in all, whether single-focus or multifocus, indoors or outdoors, the recent innovations in theatre milieus have added new alternatives, rich in possibilities, to the traditional settings for theatrical productions. They have also called attention to the importance of environment in our total theatre experience.

## EVALUATING THE THEATRE SPACE

While we do not often think about evaluating the use of theatre space for a production, it is an element that can impact audience engagement and the work of the theatre artists. When we attend a theatre production, there are key questions we should ask ourselves as we interact with the environment used for staging:

1. What type of theater was it? How large or small? How opulent or elaborate? How simple or modern? What type of stage did it have: proscenium, thrust, arena, or some other type? Was it a found

space? How did the area for the actors relate to the audience seating?

2. What was the size and shape of the playing space? Were any modifications made to a preexisting space?
3. What sort of atmosphere did the space suggest? How was that atmosphere created?

66

4. Did the space seem to meet the needs of the play (such as special performance requirements or technical requirements)? Did it affect the production, and if so, how?
5. Did the space seem appropriate for the type of play you were seeing (an intimate family drama, a spectacular musical, a classical tragedy, a work by Shakespeare, etc.)?

## SUMMARY

**1**. The atmosphere and environment of the theatre space play a large part in setting the tone of an event.

**2**. Experimental theatre groups in recent years have deliberately made spectators aware of the environment.

**3**. Throughout theatre history there have been five basic stage and auditorium arrangements: proscenium, arena, thrust, created or found space, and all-purpose or "black box" spaces.

**4**. The proscenium theatre features a picture-frame stage, in which the audience faces directly toward the stage and looks through the proscenium opening at the "picture." The proscenium stage aids illusion: Placing a room of a house behind the proscenium, for example, allows the scene designer to create an extremely realistic set. This type of stage also allows elaborate scene shifts and visual displays because it generally has a large backstage area and a fly loft. It also creates a distancing effect, which works to the advantage of certain types of drama. At the same time, however, the proscenium frame sets up a barrier between the performers and the audience.

**5**. The arena or circle stage places the playing area in the center with the audience seated in a circle or square around it. This offers an economical way to produce

theatre and an opportunity for great intimacy between performers and spectators, but it cannot offer full visual displays in terms of scenery and scene changes.

6. The thrust stage with three-quarters seating is a platform stage with seating on three sides. Entrances and exits are made at the rear, and there is an opportunity for a certain amount of scenery. This form combines some of the scenic features of the proscenium theatre with the intimacy of the arena stage.
7. Created or found space takes several forms: use of nontheatre buildings, adaptation of a given space to fit individual productions, use of outdoor settings, street theatre, multifocus environments, and all-purpose spaces.
8. The theatre space referred to as a *black box* is an open, adaptable space that can be configured into a variety of stage–audience arrangements, providing for maximum flexibility and economy.
9. Size and location (indoors or outdoors, etc.), along with the shape and character of a theatre building, affect the environment.

**Design Elements:** In Focus box (spotlight): ©Exactostock/SuperStock; Playing Your Part box (theatre seats): ©Ron Chapple/Getty Images

# Part Two

# The Performers and the Director

**4 Acting for the Stage**

**5 The Director and the Producer**

## THE PERFORMERS TAKE THE STAGE

Actors and actresses are at the heart of theatre. They embody the characters as well as project the story and language of the play. Seen here is the cast in a scene from the comedy *Charley's Aunt*, by Brandon Thomas, directed by John Miller-Stephany at the Guthrie Theater. (©Carol Rosegg)

Performers, by their presence, set theatre apart from films, television, and the visual arts; they serve as the direct, immediate contact that we, as members of the audience, have with theatre. More than that, performers embody the heart and soul of theatre. The words of a script, the characters created by a dramatist, and the scenery and costumes come to life only when an actor or actress steps onto a stage.

Acting, however, is not confined to theatre. Of course, there is acting on film and television. But there are also many forms of “acting” in our daily lives. Most of us might be surprised to learn that acting is almost as old as the human race. From the earliest days of civilization, people have mimicked other people and have told stories, imitating the voices and gestures of the characters in those stories. There have also been rituals and ceremonies in which the celebrants wore costumes and performed assigned roles—one example is the person officiating in a religious service.

Another familiar type of “acting” in daily life is imitation. A good example is the attempt by individuals to copy the lifestyle of a hero—a singer, a film actor, or some other well-known personality. The imitator adopts the same wardrobe, the same stance, the same physical movements, and the same hairstyle as the hero or heroine. Another form of imitation is mimicry. Someone who tells a story or recounts an event copies the voices and gestures of the persons being described. A second type of “acting” prevalent in our daily lives is role playing. Much has been written about role playing in recent years, and a currently popular term is *role model*,

Virtually all types of ceremonies and performance worldwide—ancient and modern, religious and secular—have theatrical elements. Here, in Mali, west Africa, teetering on stilts high above village audience

members, masked Dogon dancers imitate a long-legged waterbird. (©Alan Tobey/iStock/Getty Images)

Religious celebrations, such as the Jewish bar mitzvah—shown here at the Western Wall in Jerusalem—have many things in common with theatre. (©Richard T. Nowitz/Corbis Documentary/Getty Images)

69

referring to people whose lives, or "roles," serve as models or guides for others.

On the less admirable side, how often have we had a behind-the-scenes revelation of the behavior of a politician, a movie star, or a corporate executive just before the person is to appear at a press conference? Sometimes the person is scowling, peppering his or her language with profanity and invective, speaking sharply to assistants. Then, suddenly, when the person moves before the television cameras, he or she breaks into a smile and takes on the persona of someone who is affable, pleasant, and charming. In a public appearance, the person is playing a "role." Looked at from a different perspective, in the age of the Internet, of Facebook, Twitter, and YouTube, a certain kind of acting in everyday life has become commonplace. As George Vecsey, a columnist for the *New York Times*, has written, "In the YouTube era, everybody under a certain age is a performer."

We have been speaking of "acting" in everyday life. When we turn to acting for the stage, we will observe that for all the similarities, there are significant, even crucial, differences between imitation or role playing in daily life and the acting that takes place onstage. For one thing, everyone concerned—audiences as well as those onstage—will recognize that it is a performance. It is a conscious act that requires not only talent but a tremendous amount of training and discipline. In Part Two, we will look at the art and craft of theatrical performance. We will

also look at the role of a person who works most closely with actors: the director.

**PERFORMING IN EVERYDAY LIFE**

Many activities not usually thought of as theatre are theatrical in nature. Here, drum major Bill Pierpont, in costume, leads a Memorial Day parade at Shelton, Connecticut. (©Peter Hvizdak/The Image Works)

## STAGE ACTING

To play a character convincingly, an actor must develop both outer techniques and inner emotional resources. This is true whether performing in a classical play or a modern, realistic play. Shown here are Allison Janney and Corey Hawkins in the play *Six Degrees of Separation* by John Guare at the Barrymore Theatre in New York. In their performances, the

actors must convey not only the feelings and emotions of their characters, but also their unique movements, gestures, and vocal qualities. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

71

# 4

# Acting for the Stage

At the heart of the theatre experience is the exchange between actors and the audience. We in the audience observe the performers onstage: their gestures, their movements. And we listen to their words. Actors, in turn, are acutely aware of us in the audience: our presence, our reactions and responses. Previously we have focused on the role of the audience at a performance; in this chapter we examine the art and craft of acting for the stage. Before we turn to the stage actor, however, we should take note of another type of performance in which we are all participants: acting in everyday life, that is, the various roles in our daily lives.

## ACTING IN EVERYDAY LIFE

Two examples of acting in daily life are imitation and role playing. The first of these, ***imitation***, is found on all levels of society and at all ages. Children, for example, are among the best imitators in the world, and we are often amused by a child who imitates a parent or some other grown-up: a four-year-old, for instance, who puts on a long dress, makeup, and high heels. As we grow older, imitation continues to be a part of our experience: in every class in school, from elementary school through college, there is usually one person—a clever mimic—who imitates the teacher or the principal with great humor, and sometimes with cruelty.

**imitation** To simulate or copy behavior observed in real life.

The second type of acting in everyday life we mentioned is ***role playing***, which can generally be divided into two categories: social and personal.

**role playing** In everyday life, the acting out of a particular role by copying the expected social behavior of that position.

### Social Roles

Social roles are general roles recognized by society: parent, child, police officer, store clerk, teacher, student, business executive,

physician, and so on. Every culture expects certain types of behavior from people who are assigned specific social roles, sometimes resulting in stereotyping or oppressing those individuals. For many years in Western culture, for example, the roles of women as secretaries, teachers, or housewives were

72

considered subordinate to the roles of men and the only ones deemed appropriate for them. Even today when women hold positions similar to those of men in business and the professions, they frequently receive a lower salary for the same job. The women's movement challenged the notion of subservient roles for women. So entrenched was the idea, however, that it took an entire movement to call it into question. (One aspect of this movement was *consciousness raising:* making people aware of sexist social attitudes toward women.) Before changes could begin to be made in the subordinate roles women were forced to play, everyone had to understand that these *were* social roles imposed upon them by the male-dominated society and were clearly unacceptable.

As noted, there continues to be active women's movements across the globe. Recently, the #MeToo movement has focused on the issues of sexual harassment and sexual assault in the workplace. Equal pay for equal work is an ongoing political battle in the United States and there have been large-scale women's protest marches in 2017 and 2018.

### Personal Roles

Aside from social roles, we develop personal roles with our family and friends. For example, some people become braggarts, boasting of their (sometimes imaginary) feats and accomplishments and embellishing the truth to appear more impressive than they are. Others become martyrs, constantly sacrificing for others and letting the world know about it. Still others are conspirators, people who pull aside their friends to establish an air of secrecy whenever they talk. Frequently, two people fall into complementary roles: one dominant and the other submissive, one active and the other passive.

## ACTING IN LIFE VERSUS ACTING ONSTAGE

Some of the differences between stage acting and acting in daily life are obvious. For one thing, actors and actresses onstage are always

being observed. In real life there may be observers, but their presence is not essential to an event. Bystanders on a street corner where an accident has occurred form a kind of audience, but their presence is incidental and unrelated to the accident itself. Onstage, however, the performer is always on display and often in the spotlight.

Acting onstage, too, requires a performer to play roles he or she does not play in life. A scene between a parent and child arguing about money, or between spouses or partners discussing whether or not to have children, is one thing when it is actually occurring in our lives, but something quite different onstage. Generally, the roles we play in life are genuine. A parent who accepts responsibilities toward her or his children does not just play a parent; she or he *is* a parent. A woman who writes novels does not just play a novelist; she *is* one.

In real life, a lawyer knows the law; but onstage, an actor playing the role of a lawyer may not know the difference between jurisprudence and habeas corpus, and probably has never been inside a law school. Playing widely divergent parts or parts outside their personal experience requires actors and actresses to stretch their imagination and ability. For example, a young performer at one time or another might be called on to play parts as dissimilar as the fiery, independent Antigone in the play by Sophocles; the vulnerable, love-struck Juliet in Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet;* and the neurotic, obsessed leading character in Strindberg's *Miss Julie*. Beyond playing different roles at different times, performers are even called on at times to *double*, that is, perform several parts in one play.

Another significant difference between acting for the stage and "acting" in life is that dramatic characters are not real people. Any stage character—Joan of Arc, Antigone, Oedipus, Hamlet, Willy Loman—is a symbol or an image of a person. Stage characters are fictions created by dramatists and performers to represent people. They remind us of people—in many cases they seem to *be* these people, but they are not. The task of the performer in attempting to make the characters onstage *appear* to be real requires not only talent but training and discipline as well.

### REAL-LIFE ROLES SEEN ONSTAGE

Roles onstage are often similar to roles people are called on to play in real life. Cheerleaders at athletic events are a good example. Here we see a scene from *Bring It On: The Musical*, about rival high school cheerleading squads. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

## THREE CHALLENGES OF ACTING

Theatre actors and actresses face three major challenges:

1. To make characters believable—inner truth.
2. Physical acting—the use of the voice and body.
3. Synthesis and integration—combining inner and outer skills.

74

To understand the first two challenges of acting, we will examine them separately. We begin with making characters believable and then turn to the craft of acting—specific physical and vocal techniques required in performance.

### Making Characters Believable

One major aspect of the craft of acting is credibility: the ability to make those of us in the audience believe in the characters that appear onstage, to make the characters convincing.

**The Development of Realistic Acting** From the mid-seventeenth century on, serious attempts were made to define the craft or technique of credible, natural acting. Such an approach became more important than ever at the end of the nineteenth century, when drama began to depict characters and situations close to everyday life. Three playwrights—Henrik Ibsen of Norway, August Strindberg of Sweden, and Anton Chekhov of Russia—perfected a type of drama that came to be known as ***realism***. This drama was called realistic because it closely resembled what people could identify with and verify from their own experience. In performing plays by these dramatists, not only the spirit of the individual dramatic characters but also the details of their behavior had to conform to what people saw of life around them.

> **realism** Broadly, an attempt to present onstage people, places, and events corresponding to those in everyday life.

**The Stanislavski System: A Technique for Realistic Acting** Before the realistic drama of the late 1800s, individual actresses and actors, through their own talent and genius, had achieved believability onstage, but no one had developed a system whereby it could be taught to others and passed on to future generations. The person who eventually did this most successfully was the Russian actor and director Konstantin Stanislavski. A cofounder of the Moscow Art Theatre in Russia and the director of Anton Chekhov's most important plays, Stanislavski was also an actor. By closely observing the work of great performers of his day, and by drawing on his own acting experience, Stanislavski identified and described what these gifted performers did naturally and intuitively. From his observations he compiled and then codified a series of principles and techniques.

We might assume that believable acting is simply a matter of being natural; but Stanislavski discovered first of all that acting realistically onstage is extremely artificial and difficult. He wrote:

> All of our acts, even the simplest, which are so familiar to us in everyday life, become strained when we appear behind the footlights before a public of a thousand people. That is why it is necessary to correct ourselves and learn again how to walk, sit, or lie down. It is essential to reeducate ourselves to look and see, on the stage, to listen and to hear.[1]

To achieve this “reeducation,” Stanislavski said, “the actor must first of all believe in everything that takes place onstage, and most of all, he must believe what he himself is doing. And one can only believe in the truth.” To give substance to his ideas, Stanislavski developed a series of exercises and techniques for the performer, among them the following.[2]

75

### TECHNIQUES OF ACTING: THE IMPORTANCE OF SPECIFICS

Konstantin Stanislavski believed that performers should concentrate on specifics. In *The Glass Menagerie*, the playwright Tennessee Williams has provided the character Laura with a collection of glass animals with which she is preoccupied. Shown here are Rachel Caywood as Laura Wingfield and Michael Mitchell as Jim O’Connor, the gentleman caller, staged at the Davis Performing Arts Center in Washington, D.C. (©The Washington Post/Getty Images)

***Relaxation***. When he observed the great actors and actresses of his day, Stanislavski noticed how fluid and lifelike their movements were. They seemed to be in a state of complete freedom and relaxation, letting the behavior of the character come through effortlessly. He concluded that unwanted tension has to be eliminated and that the performer must at all times attain a state of physical and vocal relaxation.

***Concentration and observation***. Stanislavski also discovered that gifted performers always appeared fully concentrated on some object, person, or event while onstage. Stanislavski referred to the extent or

range of concentration as a *circle of attention*. This circle of attention can be compared to a circle of light on a darkened stage. The performer should begin with the idea that it is a small, tight circle including only himself or herself and perhaps one other person or one piece of furniture. When the performer has established a strong circle of attention, he or she can enlarge the circle outward to include the entire stage area. In this way performers will stop worrying about the audience and lose their self-consciousness.

***Importance of specifics***. One of Stanislavski's techniques was an emphasis on concrete details. A performer should never try to act in general, he said, and should never try to convey a feeling such as fear or love in some vague, amorphous way. In life, Stanislavski said, we express emotions in terms of specifics: an anxious woman twists a handkerchief, an angry boy throws a rock at a trash can, a nervous businessman jangles his keys. Performers must find similar concrete activities. Stanislavski points out how Shakespeare has Lady Macbeth in her sleepwalking scene—at the height of her guilt and emotional upheaval—try to rub blood off her hands.

The performer must also conceive of the situation in which a character exists—what Stanislavski referred to as the *given circumstances*—in terms of specifics. In what kind of space does an event take place: formal, informal, public, domestic? How does it feel? What is the temperature? The lighting? What has gone on just before? What is expected in the moments ahead? Again, these questions must be answered in concrete terms.

76

## IN FOCUS: DEMANDS OF CLASSICAL ACTING

Before the twentieth century, the challenges facing performers were dictated by the very specific demands of the type of theatre in which performers appeared. Both classic Greek theatre and traditional Asian theatre stressed formal movement and stylized gestures similar to classical ballet. The chorus in Greek drama both sang and danced its odes, and Asian theatre has always had a significant component of singing and dancing. In addition, Greek performers wore masks and Asian performers often wore richly textured makeup.

In Western theatre, from the time of the Renaissance through the nineteenth century, actions onstage were not intended to replicate the movements or gestures of everyday life. For example, performers would often speak not to the character they were addressing but directly to the audience. In England during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, acting alternated between exaggerated and more natural styles. Throughout this period, every generation or so an actor or actress would emerge who was praised for performing in a less grandiose, more down-to-earth way. But exaggerated or not, performance before the twentieth century was more formal and stylized than the acting we are accustomed to today, especially in films and on television.

In Western theatre, from the fifth century bce in Greece to the middle of the nineteenth century, vocal demands on actors and actresses were greater than they are today. The language of plays was most often poetry; and poetry—with its demanding rhythms, sustained phrases, and exacting meters—required intensive training in order for the performer to speak the lines intelligently and distinctly. There were problems of projection, too. A Greek amphitheatre was an acoustical marvel, but it seated as many as 15,000 spectators in the open air, and throwing the voice to every part of the theatre was no small task.

In Elizabethan England, Christopher Marlowe, a contemporary of Shakespeare, wrote superb blank verse that made severe demands on performers' vocal abilities. One example is found in Marlowe's *The Tragical History of D. Faustus*. Here is a speech by Faustus to Helen of Troy, who has been called back from the dead to be with him:

> O' thou art fairer than the evening's air
> Clad in the beauty of a thousand stars;
> Brighter art thou than flaming Jupiter
> When he appear'd to hapless Semele;
> More lovely than the monarch of the sky
> In wanton Arethusa's azured arms;
> And none but thou shalt be my paramour![3]

These seven lines of verse are a single sentence and, spoken properly, will be delivered as one overall unit, with the meaning carried from one line to the next. How many of us could manage that? A fine classical actor can speak the entire passage as a whole, giving it the necessary resonance and inflection as well. Beyond that, he can stand onstage for two or three hours delivering such lines.

No one would expect an actress or actor today to perform a classical play in the manner in which it was originally presented; such a performance would no doubt seem ludicrous. Besides, we do not know exactly how classical acting looked or sounded. At the same time, it should be clear that any performer today who is appearing in a play from the past must develop a special set of skills and be able to respond successfully to a number of challenges. Not only should an actor have the necessary psychological and emotional tools—a Hamlet, for instance, who must express a wide range of emotions as well as contradictory impulses, or an Ophelia who must play a "mad scene" in which she has lost her mind—but the same actor must also master the necessary physical and vocal techniques. Physically, an actor playing Hamlet would have to move with confidence as well as with the precision of a dancer, even while conveying his indecision and uncertainty. He would also be required to climb steps and levels with ease, and since he must engage in sword fighting, he must have mastered fencing techniques.

**The Social Status of the Performer**

On the subject of historical acting styles, we should also note that through the centuries there has been a



wide fluctuation in the social and political position of performers. First, it is important to be aware that in several key periods of theatre history, women were prohibited from performing at all. Two prime examples are the theatre of ancient Greece—the era of the playwrights Aeschylus, Sophocles, and Euripides—and the Elizabethan age, during which Shakespeare and his contemporaries wrote. In both periods women could not even appear onstage. In Roman theatre, women were allowed to perform, but only in a lower form of theatre known as *mime*. In Europe, during the Renaissance, acting became more professional, but the social position of actors was still problematic. Women began to appear with acting troupes in Italy and Spain; but in Spain it was required that any actress in a company be a relative (wife, mother, sister) of one of the leaders of the troupe.

## ACTING IN THE PAST

Acting requirements in the past were often different from those of today. Forceful, sometimes exaggerated movements and a powerful voice were two essentials for successful performers. Actors were expected to declaim their lines and strike impressive poses, while wearing elaborate costumes. An example from the late eighteenth century is an actress in the costume for a character in *Athalie* by Jean Racine. (©Historical Picture Archive/Getty Images)

The next point to be noted is that frequently in the history of acting, performers were regarded as quite low on the social scale. An early exception was the classical period in Greece. Because theatre presentations were part of a religious festival, actors were treated with dignity. Through most of theatre history, however, this was not the case. An example of the problems faced by actors is the fate of the Frenchman Molière. Though he was one of the most renowned actors and playwrights of his day, France at that time had laws preventing actors from receiving a Christian burial, and thus Molière was buried secretly at night. When women began to appear on the English stage in the Restoration period, after 1660, they were regarded by some as on a par with courtesans or prostitutes. Other people, however, accepted them into high society, and one actress, Nell Gwynn, was a mistress of

the king. During the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries there were a number of famous and celebrated actors and actresses on the European continent, in England, and in the United States. In England, when the actor Henry Irving was knighted in 1895, it was felt that actors had finally arrived socially.

In Asian theatre, performers for many centuries were primarily men, though a curious phenomenon occurred at the beginning of kabuki in Japan. Kabuki began in the early seventeenth century with all-women troupes. Social disruptions arose, however, because of feuds over the sexual services of the women, and in 1629 the shogun forbade performances of women's kabuki. From that point on, kabuki was all-male, as were nō theatre and puppet theatre, bunraku.

78

***Inner truth***. An innovative aspect of Stanislavski's work has to do with inner truth, which deals with the internal or subjective world of characters—that is, their thoughts and emotions. The early phases of Stanislavski's research took place while he was also directing the major dramas of Anton Chekhov. Plays like *The Sea-Gull* and *The Cherry Orchard* have less to do with external action or what the characters say than with what the characters are feeling and thinking but often do not verbalize. It becomes apparent that Stanislavski's approach would be very beneficial in realizing the inner life of such characters. Stanislavski had several ideas about how to achieve a sense of inner truth, one being the ***magic if***. *If* is a word that can transform our thoughts; through it we can imagine ourselves in virtually any situation. "*If* I suddenly became wealthy . . . ," "*If* I were vacationing on a Caribbean island . . . ," "*If* I had great talent . . . ," "*If* that person who insulted me comes near me again. . . ." The word *if* becomes a powerful lever for the mind; it can lift us out of ourselves and give us a sense of absolute certainty about imaginary circumstances.

**magic if** Stanislavski's acting exercise that requires the performer to ask, "How would I react *if* I were in this character's position?"

***Action onstage: What? Why? How?*** Another important principle of Stanislavski's system is that all action onstage must have a purpose. This means that the performer's attention must always be focused on a series of physical actions (also called *psychophysical actions*), linked together by the circumstances of the play. Stanislavski determined these actions by asking three essential questions: What? Why? How?

An action is performed, such as opening a letter (the *what*). The letter is opened because someone has said that it contains extremely damaging information about the character (the *why*). The letter is opened anxiously, fearfully (the *how*) because of the calamitous effect it might have on the character.

***Through line of a role***. According to Stanislavski, in order to develop continuity in a part, the actor or actress should find the ***superobjective*** of a character. What is it, above all else, that the character wants during the course of the play? What is the character's driving force? If a goal can be established toward which the character strives, it will give the performer an overall objective. From this objective can be developed a *through line* that can be grasped, as a skier on a ski lift grabs a towline and is carried to the top. Another term for through line is *spine*. To help develop the through line, Stanislavski urged performers to divide scenes into units (sometimes called *beats*). In each unit there is an objective, and the intermediate objectives running through a play lead ultimately to the overall objective.

> **superobjective** What the character wants above all else during the course of the play.

***Ensemble playing***. Except in one-person shows, performers do not act alone; they interact with other people. Stanislavski was aware that many performers tend to "stop acting," or lose their concentration, when they are not the main characters in a scene or when someone else is talking. This tendency destroys the through line and causes the performer to move into and out of a role. That, in turn, weakens ***ensemble playing***—the playing together of all the performers.

> **ensemble playing** Acting that stresses the total artistic unity of a group performance rather than individual performances.

**Stanislavski and Psychophysical Action** Stanislavski began to develop his technique in the early twentieth century, and at first he emphasized the inner aspects of training; for example, various ways of getting in touch with the performer's unconscious. Beginning around 1917, however, he began to look more and more at purposeful action, or what he called *psychophysical action*. A student at one of his lectures that year took note of the change: "Whereas action previously had been taught as the expression of a previously established 'emotional state,' it is now action itself which predominates and

is the key to the psychological."[4] Rather than seeing emotions as leading to action, Stanislavski came to believe that it was the other way around: purposeful action undertaken to fulfill a character's goals was the most direct route to the emotions.

### ENSEMBLE PLAYING

Good actors are aware of the importance of ensemble playing. Performers coordinate their work by listening carefully to each other, sensing each other's actions and moods, and responding alertly. Ensemble playing is especially important in plays where interaction between characters is crucial. Seen here is *The Winter's Tale*, directed by Rebecca Teichman for the McCarter Theatre Center. In this updated version of Shakespeare, the interaction in this scene among all of the cast members is extremely significant. (©T Charles Erickson)

**Modern Approaches to Realistic Acting in the United States** In the second half of the twentieth century, there were several broad approaches to actors' training in the United States. Two of these derived from the methods of Stanislavski. In the 1930s and 1940s a number of performers and directors in the United States became greatly interested in the ideas of Stanislavski. One of these, Lee Strasberg, a founder of the Actors Studio in New York City, focused on the inner aspects of Stanislavskian theory. Strasberg emphasized a technique called ***emotional recall***, a tool intended to help performers achieve a sense of emotional truth onstage. By recalling sensory impressions of an experience in the past (such as what a room looked like, and the temperature and any prevalent odors in the room),

emotions associated with that experience are aroused and can be used as the basis of feelings called for in a role in a play.

> **emotional recall** Stanislavski's exercise that helps the performer present realistic emotions. The performer feels a character's emotion by thinking of the conditions surrounding an event in his or her own life that led to a similar emotion.

Though the teachings of Strasberg and his followers were successful with certain performers, other acting teachers, such as Stella Adler (1902–1992) and Sanford Meisner (1905–1997), felt that Strasberg emphasized the inner aspects of acting to the exclusion of everything else. Following the lead of Stanislavski in his later approach with psychophysical action, they balanced the emphasis on inner resources with the inclusion of given circumstances and purposeful action.

Other well-known acting teachers who emphasize approaches to creating realistic performances are Uta Hagen (1919–2004), Robert Cohen (b. 1938), Robert Benedetti (b. 1939), and playwright David Mamet (b. 1947) working with actor William H. Macy (b. 1950).

Hagen, in her book *Respect for Acting*, places a large emphasis on emotional recall and memory in general. She provides a number of exercises that enable the students to pull from past experiences in their own lives as a means of reaching the emotions required within the context of any given role. Hagen's idea is not to allow the student to become overwhelmed by past emotion, but to use it as a springboard into the action of the play.

80

# photo essay

## The Actor's Range

In theatre, performers are often called on to play a wide range of diverse parts. Frequently, too, actors portray people unlike themselves. Many performers welcome this challenge. An American actor who has demonstrated tremendous versatility is John Douglas Thompson, shown here in five contrasting roles.

(©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

John Douglas Thompson as the lead in Eugene O'Neill's *The Emperor Jones*, Irish Repertory Theatre, 2009.

(©Kevin Sprague/Studio Two)

John Douglas Thompson as *Richard III* in a production at Shakespeare & Company, Lenox, Massachusetts.

(©Liz Lauren/Richard Hein)

Kate Arrington, John Douglas Thompson, and Salvatore Inzerillo in Eugene O'Neill's *The Iceman Cometh* at the Goodman Theatre.

(©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

John Douglas Thompson as Macbeth, directed by Arin Arbus at the Theatre for a New Audience.

(©Kevin Sprague/Studio Two)

John Douglas Thompson as Othello, Merritt Janson as Desdemona, directed by Tony Simotes, Shakespeare & Company, 2008.

82

## THE CRAFT OF ACTING: PHYSICAL DEMANDS

Among the many skills involved in becoming a performer are various vocal and physical skills—speaking clearly and distinctly, “projecting” the voice into the auditorium, moving gracefully, and meeting a variety of physical challenges, including sword fights, such as the one shown here. The

scene is from a production of Tony Kushner's adaptation of Pierre Corneille's *The Illusion*, at A Noise Within theatre in Pasadena, California. (©Craig Schwartz)

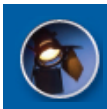
In *Acting One*, Robert Cohen encourages students to use text as an instrument of action. In an exercise that he calls the "Contentless Scene," he has students memorize the same text. He then asks them to perform the scene but changes the given circumstances of the scene each time. The outcome is the obvious realization that the words are not nearly as important as the meaning behind them. And, clearly, without solid given circumstances, actors are simply saying lines instead of using those lines to further the action of the play.

Robert Benedetti in *The Actor at Work* focuses on the actor's body and how performers can use it to help shape character. Using a variety of movement exercises, Benedetti encourages students to explore elements of rhythm, time, weight, intensity, and space through improvisational work. These exercises allow the students to start with the "outside" (physical) aspects of a character's definition. Once the physical form is found, they can then use it to define the character's inner life (emotion).

Playwright David Mamet and actor William H. Macy, in their approach known as "practical aesthetics," employ elements of Stanislavski and Meisner. Actors analyze a scene to discover what is literally happening as well as what his or her character wants from the others in that scene.

There are, of course, many other teachers and professional schools of acting. For example, Chicago's Steppenwolf Theatre Company offers acting training, emphasizing its "Chicago style" of realistic performance. The important thing for students of acting is to explore different methods of and approaches to acting, such as those outlined previously, and to decide which techniques and types of training—or which combination of these—work best for them. Ultimately each individual actor must develop his or her own methodology.





## IN FOCUS: THE PROFESSION OF ACTING AND TECHNOLOGY

The profession of the actor has been impacted in very unique ways by the development of technology. *Backstage*, an online and

print magazine that provides information for those working in theatre, film, and other media, published an article titled “How Has Technology Changed Your Acting Career?”[5] The actors’ responses were intriguing and suggest ongoing changes to the profession of the actor.

Many pointed to the ability to access casting sites online from wherever they are living or performing, on any mobile device, in order to request auditions for theatre productions, films, and television series. The opportunity to audition via Skype or FaceTime without having to change geographical location allows the actor to be engaged with the global theatre and media industries. One multilingual performer noted that she was able to act in a production in France while searching for casting opportunities in Los Angeles.

Resumes and headshots can be photoshopped and digitally manipulated so that an actor can, for example, be seen in different costumes or against various backgrounds. These can now be e-mailed or accessed through a performer’s website. (Many theatre artists maintain websites that contain links to resumes, photos, and videos.) Actors may create YouTube presentations of auditions and past performances that can be accessed electronically. Actors can also communicate with their fans through Facebook and LinkedIn pages as well as Twitter accounts. (Stars, of course, have staff who sometimes oversee those accounts.)

Even preparing for an audition has changed. Actors can “run their lines” for a monologue with online audio programs and applications. Accents and dialects can be Googled and found on the Web. There are digital musical rehearsal apps that allow musical theatre performers to hear and learn their parts via their smartphone, tablet, or computer.

A few theorists and theatre artists have even suggested that actors could be replaced by technology, using 3D images or other digitally created representations. An extreme example is the music theatre production by German composer Heiner Goebbels, *Stifter’s Things* (2008), in which five upside-down, remotely controlled grand pianos that performed and even moved threateningly toward the audience on runners were the only “actors.” The production combined light, sound, and recorded text. The question, of course, remains: Is this a unique concert, an art installation, or is it theatre without actors?

Still, as one of the actors in the *Backstage* article emphasized, once rehearsals and performances begin, the work of the actor, in

most instances, is still “old fashioned” or traditional. Even with all the technology surrounding the actor in the rehearsal room and onstage, the human dynamic between the live actor and the audience is indispensable in any kind of traditional theatre and is why theatre has survived.

## Physical Acting: Voice and Body

We have been looking at training that helps actors make stage characters truthful and believable. We turn now to a second aspect of actor training: the instruments of the performer, specifically the voice and the body.

Physical elements have always been important in the art of acting. Traditional theatre makes strong demands on the performer’s body. In Shakespeare, for instance, performers must frequently run up and down steps or ramps, confront other characters in sword fights, and enact prolonged death scenes. Anyone who has seen an impressive sword fight onstage senses how difficult it must be. A duel, in which the combatants strike quickly at one another—clashing swords continually without hitting each other—resembles a ballet in its precision and grace, and it entails a great deal of physical exertion. Adept physical movement is also required in modern realistic acting. For example, an activity in a modern play analogous to a sword fight would be a headlong fall down a flight of stairs or two people engaged in a knife fight, like the one in Arthur Miller’s *A View from the Bridge*.

84

**PERFORMING IN CLASSICS TODAY**

Contemporary performers in classic plays must have vocal training to be able to speak and project poetry properly; they must have the physical training necessary to engage in sword fights and other activities; and they must be familiar with the historical eras of the playwrights and of the texts they are to perform. Here we see Stephen Fry as Malvolio and Mark Rylance as Olivia in Shakespeare's *Twelfth Night*, in a Shakespeare's Globe production with an all-male cast directed by Tim Carroll. (©Geraint Lewis)

As to the importance of voice training, because of microphones and sound amplifications, today we have increasingly lost our appreciation of the power of the human voice. But in the past, public speakers from Cicero to Abraham Lincoln stirred men and women with their oratory; and throughout its history, the stage has provided a natural platform for stirring speeches. Beginning with the Greeks and continuing through the Elizabethans, the French and Spanish theatres of the seventeenth century, and other European theatres at the close of the nineteenth century, playwrights wrote magnificent lines that performers, having honed their vocal skills to a fine point, delivered with zest. Any performer today who intends to act in a revival of a traditional play must learn to speak and project stage verse, which requires much the same kind of vocal power and breath control as opera.

In order to develop projection and balance it with credibility, a performer must train and rehearse extensively. For example, an actor or actress might use breathing exercises, controlling the breath from the diaphragm rather than the throat so that vocal reproduction will have power and can be sustained. Many of these exercises are similar to those used by singers. Also, head, neck, and shoulder exercises can be used to relax the muscles in those areas, thus freeing the throat for ease of projection. In the nearby chart we see a group of elementary vocal and body exercises. It must be stressed that these are basic exercises that represent only the earliest beginnings of a true regimen of exercises for the voice and body.

**The Actor's Instrument: Voice and Body** Throughout the twentieth century, at the same time that many acting teachers were focusing on the inner life of the actor, another group of teachers and theoreticians were turning to a different aspect, the physical side of performing. This includes the freeing and development of the voice and body and combining these with improvisation to create maximum flexibility, relaxation, and imagination in the actor's instrument—his or her voice and body.

## IN FOCUS: WARM-UP EXERCISES FOR BODY AND VOICE

To give an indication of the types of exercises performers must undertake during their years of training—and during their careers as professionals—it is interesting to look at some samples of warm-up exercises. The exercises here are designed to relax the body and the voice. The following are typical warm-up exercises for *body* movement:

1. Lie on your back; beginning with the feet, tense and relax each part of the body—knees, thighs, abdomen, chest, neck—moving up to the face. Note the difference in the relaxation of various muscles and of the body generally after the exercise is completed.
2. Stand with feet parallel, approximately as far apart as the width of the shoulders. Lift one foot off the ground and loosen all the joints in the foot, ankle, and knee. Repeat with the other foot off the ground. Put the feet down and move to the hip, spine, arms, neck, etc., loosening all joints.
3. Stand with feet parallel. Allow all tension to drain out of the body through the feet. In the process, bend the knees, straighten the pelvis, and release the lower back.
4. Begin walking in a circle; walk on the outside of the feet, then on the inside, then on the toes, and then on the heels. Notice what this does to the rest of the body. Try changing other parts of the body in a similar fashion and observe the effect on feelings and reactions.
5. Imagine the body filled with either helium or lead. Notice the effect of each of these sensations, both while standing in place and while walking. Do the same with one body part at a time—each arm, each leg, the head, etc.

The following *vocal* exercises free the throat and vocal cords:

1. Standing, begin a lazy, unhurried stretch. Reach with your arms to the ceiling, meanwhile lengthening and widening the whole of your back. Yawn as you take in a deep breath and hum on an

exhalation. Release your torso so that it rests down toward your legs. Yawn on another deep breath and hum on an exhalation. On an inhalation, roll up the spine until you are standing with your arms at your sides. Look at something on the ceiling and then at something on the floor; then let your head return to a balance point, so that the neck and shoulder muscles are relaxed.

2. Put your hands on your ribs, take a deep breath, and hum a short tune. Repeat several times. Hum an *m* or *n* up and down the scale. Drop your arms; lift the shoulders an inch and drop them, releasing all tension.
3. Take a deep breath and with the palm of your hand push gently down on your stomach as you exhale. Do this several times. Exhale on sighs and then on vowels.
4. Standing, yawn with your throat and mouth open and be aware of vibrations in the front of your mouth, just behind your front teeth, as you vocalize on the vowels *ee, ei*, and *o*. Take these up and down the scales. Sing a simple song and then say it, and see if you have just as much vibration in your mouth when you are speaking as when you are singing.
5. Using a light, quick tempo, shift to a tongue twister (such as *Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers*). Feel a lively touch of the tongue on the gum ridge on the *t*'s and *d*'s, and a bounce of the back of the tongue on the *k*'s and *g*'s. Feel the bouncing action on the lips on the *p*'s and *b*'s.

Courtesy of Professor John Sipes of University of Tennessee–Knoxville and Emeritus Professor Barbara F. Acker of Arizona State University.

There were a number of key figures who contributed to this movement. For example, in the second and third decades of the twentieth century, the Russian director Vsevolod Meyerhold (1874–1942) developed a program called *biomechanics* that emphasized physical exercises and full control of the body, in the manner of circus performers such as acrobats and trapeze artists. In France in the 1920s, Jacques Copeau (1878–1949) incorporated such disciplines as mime, masks, Italian commedia dell'arte, and Asian acting into his system of training. Beginning in midcentury and continuing for the next fifty years, a Frenchman, Jacques Lecoq (1921–1999), ran an influential school in Paris dedicated to explaining and exploring the

physical side of performance. In addition to emphasizing the elements on which Copeau concentrated, Lecoq also incorporated a clown figure in his work.

86

## THE FORMAL GESTURES OF ASIAN THEATRE

In most Asian theatre, acting requires careful, precise, formal gestures. The first example here is a scene from *Journey to the West*, a piece from Beijing (or Peking) opera in China (top). The second example is an actor in a performance of

traditional kathakali dance-theatre in India (bottom). Note the poses, the physical requirements, and the dexterity that are required, as well as the elaborate costumes, heavy makeup, and striking headpieces. (top: ©TAO Images Limited/Alamy Stock Photo; bottom: ©lakhesis/123RF)

Along with European influences, there has also been a strong global presence in the new approaches to actor training. A good example is Asian theatre. Stylization and symbolism characterize the acting of the classical theatres of India, China, and Japan. To achieve the absolute control, the concentration, and the mastery of the body and nerves necessary to carry out the stylized movements, performers in the various classical Asian theatres train for years under the supervision of master teachers. Every movement of these performers is prescribed and carefully controlled, combining elements of formal ballet, pantomime, and sign language. Each gesture tells a story and means something quite specific—contributing to a true symbolism of physical movement.

87

## ACTING TRAINING FROM OTHER DISCIPLINES

Actors' training today often involves exercises and other activities from related disciplines such as circus routines, juggling, acrobatics, and Asian martial arts. A good example is tai chi, a refined form of martial arts from China, here being practiced in a park. (©Inge King)

One Asian discipline, not from theatre but from martial arts, that modern acting teachers have found helpful is tai chi chuan, commonly called *tai chi*. Unlike some martial arts, tai chi is not aggressive: it is a graceful, gentle exercise regimen performed widely by men, women, and children in China. It has spread to other countries, where it is sometimes practiced in conjunction with meditation or body awareness. The movements of tai chi are stylized and often seem to be carried out

in slow motion. Among other things, tai chi requires concentration and control, both valuable qualities for a performer. The Japanese director Tadashi Suzuki (b. 1939) developed a training technique, again taken from classical Japanese practices, emphasizing the connection between the feet and the ground underneath. Consciousness of this connection is accomplished by exercises involving “stomping.”

An approach to training that originated in the United States and has gained acceptance and wider use in our contemporary theatre is known as *viewpoints theory*. Based on ideas from the avant-garde choreographer Merce Cunningham (1919–2009) and the experimental director Jerzy Grotowski (1933–1999), it combines elements of dance and stage movement with concepts of time and space. The director Anne Bogart (b. 1951), one of its chief proponents, feels that viewpoints theory provides a new vocabulary for certain elements that have always been significant in performance: spatial relationships onstage, movement, and the notion of time, among others.

In the United States in the twenty-first century the emphasis on physical movement—training in the use of the voice and the body—has become more pronounced and widespread than ever. In the words of author David Bridel in an article in *American Theatre* magazine:

> Body awareness and alignment, mask work, clowning and circus skills, physical characterization, spatial relationships, ensemble work, improvisation, games, mime . . . so many forms of movement training exist today, and so many specialists work in these related fields, that the opportunity to connect the craft of acting with the movement of the body has never been richer.[6]

88

## TRAINING FOR MUSICAL THEATRE

Along with the classics and various types of theatre from other nations, the American musical, with its physical and vocal demands, requires extensive training. A prime example is the exuberant dancing by the men in the Broadway musical *Newsies*, choreographed by Christopher Gattelli, directed by Jeff Calhoun, with music by Alan Menken, lyrics by Jack Feldman. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

Today, no one approach, no one master, no one technique appears to have become universally recognized as the single authority in the field. For that matter, the belief that actors need to study many of these approaches was underscored in the July 7, 2015, *Backstage* article, "7 Movement Techniques All Actors Should Study." Rather, teachers, coaches, and directors draw on a wide variety of sources, including those already mentioned as well as others, to develop their individual approaches to training the voice and body. The field also goes by various names: body movement, physical theatre, and a term favored by many, *physical acting*.

As a way of integrating and unifying various approaches to body and voice training, many acting teachers emphasize a process called *centering*. This is a way of pulling everything together and allowing the

performer to eliminate any blocks that impede either the body or the voice. Centering involves locating the place—roughly in the middle of the torso—where all the lines of force in the body come together. When performers are able to "center" themselves, they achieve a balance, a freedom, and a flexibility they could rarely find otherwise.

89

## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. Read a speech from Shakespeare aloud in class or to yourself. Why would this speech be difficult for an actor? What are some of the challenges an actor would face in bringing this speech to life?
2. Remember a situation recently that made you happy. Re-create the circumstances in your mind. Where were you? Whom were you with? Can you once again feel the emotions you felt during that situation? Is this similar to an acting exercise developed by Stanislavski?
3. Make a fist. Now make it tighter and tighter. Does it change how you are feeling emotionally? Does this help you understand how an actor might approach developing an emotional moment in a play physically?
4. Analyze why you felt a recent film performance was successful. Describe how the main performer brought his or her character to life.
5. Attend a rehearsal at your university or community theatre. Then attend the final performance. What changes were made between the rehearsal and the performance by one of the actors in the production? Explain how the change affected the performance.

All this should make it clear that to master the many techniques required to play a variety of roles and to be at ease onstage—moving and speaking with authority, purpose, and conviction—performers must undergo arduous training and be genuinely dedicated to their profession.

**Training for Special Forms of Theatre** Certain types of theatre and theatre events require special discipline or training. For example,

musical theatre obviously requires talent in singing and dancing. Coordination is also important in musical theatre: the members of a chorus must frequently sing and dance in unison. Pantomime is another demanding category of performance: without words or props, a performer must indicate everything by physical suggestion, convincingly lifting an imaginary box or walking against an imaginary wind.

Various forms of modern avant-garde and experimental theatre also require special techniques. A good example is Samuel Beckett's *Happy Days*, in which an actress is buried onstage in a mound of earth up to her waist in the first act, and up to her neck in the second. She must carry on her performance through the entire play while virtually immobile. In some types of avant-garde theatre, the performers become acrobats, make human pyramids, or are used like pieces of furniture. In the theatres of Robert Wilson, Mabou Mines, and similar groups, the elements of story, character, and text are minimized or even eliminated. The stress, rather than being on a narrative or on exploring recognizable characters, is on the visual and ritualistic aspects of theatre, like a series of tableaux or a moving collage.

Stage movement in this approach to theatre is often closely related to dance; thus the performers must have the same discipline, training, and control as dancers. In Wilson's work, performers are frequently called on either to move constantly or to remain perfectly still. In *A Letter to Queen Victoria*, two performers turn continuously in circles like dervishes for long periods of time—perhaps thirty or forty minutes. In other works by Wilson, performers must remain frozen like statues.

90

THE SPECIAL DEMANDS OF ACTING

At times performing makes exceedingly strong demands, requiring performers to convey a range and depth of emotions, or to transform themselves in terms of age, mood, and the like. A good example is Samuel Beckett's *Happy Days*, in which the actress playing Winnie—in this case, Fiona Shaw—must perform while buried in a mound of sand up to her waist, and later up to her neck. This production was directed by Deborah Warner at the National Theatre in London in 2006. (©Robbie Jack/Corbis Entertainment/Getty Images)

## Synthesis and Integration

The demands made on performers by experimental and avant-garde theatres are only the most recent example of the rigorous, intensive training that acting generally requires. The goal of all this training—both internal and external—is to create for the performer an instrument that is flexible, resourceful, and disciplined. Above all, the actor must bring together the inner approach to acting, the work on truthfulness and believability, with the physical aspects discussed above. He or she must combine inner and outer into one indivisible whole. What is important to remember is that whatever the starting point, the end result must be a synthesis of these two aspects. The inner emotions and feelings and the outer physical and vocal characteristics become one.

Only then will the character be forcefully and convincingly portrayed. This process is termed *integration*. When a performer is approaching a role in a play, the first task is to read and analyze the script. The actress or actor must discover the *superobjective* of the character she or he is playing and put together not only the *spine* of the role but the many smaller moments, each with its own objective and given circumstances. The next challenge is to begin specific work on the role. In taking this step, some performers begin with the *outer* aspects of the character—with a walk, a posture, or a peculiar vocal delivery. They get a sense of how the character looks in terms of makeup and other characteristics, such as a mustache or hairstyle. They consider the clothes the character wears and any idiosyncrasies of speech or movement, such as a limp or a swagger. Only then will they move on to the inner aspects of the character: how the character feels; how the character reacts to people and events; what disturbs the character's emotional equilibrium; what fears, hopes, and dreams the character has.

91

## IN FOCUS: PUPPETRY AROUND THE WORLD

Puppetry in its various forms (puppets, marionettes, shadow puppets) has a long and honorable history. Remarkably, it emerged independently in widely separated parts of the world: in Indonesia, in Japan, in sections of Europe, and among Native Americans in the far northwest of what is now the United States.

In whatever form, the puppet figure is the image, reflection, and embodiment of a theatrical character and, therefore, a replacement for the actor. Puppets can run the gamut of emotions. They can be evil, demonic figures; they can be eerie, otherworldly creatures; they can be wildly comic, as in Punch and Judy shows when they biff one another across the head and knock one another down; they can be intensely human, as in the suffering characters in Japanese bunraku. In short, when puppets are onstage, audiences usually experience these silent, nonhuman characters as real people.

Shown here is a rehearsal for the production of *War Horse* at the National Theatre in London. The actors are working with the magnificent, life-size puppet representing the horse. (©Graeme Robertson/eyevine/Redux)

It should be noted as well that while puppet or marionette characters are often either comic or tragic figures, they are also frequently employed as advocates for a political point of view. The Bread and Puppet Theatre of San Francisco, founded by Peter Schuman (b. 1934), features larger-than-life, exaggerated figures made of papier-mâché. This theatre began with protests against the Vietnam War but has continued, often with the figures proceeding down city streets, in protests against all wars, including the Iraq War.

Puppet characters are created and manipulated in various ways. In Indonesia and other parts of Southeast Asia, two kinds of puppets were developed. One kind is rod puppets, so called because the movements of these puppets are controlled by rods attached to the head and limbs and operated by one or more persons, from either above or below. (Though they are most often associated with Southeast Asia, rod puppets, nearly life-size, were developed as well on the island of Sicily in the Mediterranean.) The other type of puppet popular in Southeast Asia—in Java and Bali as well as Indonesia—is the shadow puppet. In this case, silhouette figures, often made of leather, are highlighted on a screen that is lit from behind.

Marionettes are puppets controlled by strings attached to the head, arms, and legs, and operated from above. A unique type of puppet is the *bunraku* puppet from Japan, which will be discussed in more detail later. Originating in the late seventeenth century, it was firmly established by the eighteenth century and has continued to this day. In the early eighteenth century, one of the

most famous playwrights of all time, Chikamatsu Monzaemon, wrote masterful plays for bunraku theatre. In the case of bunraku figures, which today are roughly two-thirds life-size, one person operates the feet, another operates the left hand, and a third controls the face, head, and right hand.

Probably the puppet figures most familiar to Western audiences are hand puppets, operated by a person who has one or two hands inside the puppet itself. Among the immediately recognizable hand puppets are the Muppets, featuring such popular and enduring characters as Kermit the Frog and Miss Piggy. Another example of hand puppets onstage appeared in the successful Broadway production of the musical *Avenue Q* (2003) as well as in the dark comedy *Hand to God* (2011). Remarkable recent examples of puppetry were the horses and other animals created for the play *War Horse* (2007). Puppetry remains, and will continue to remain, a vital art form in its own right, and an important adjunct to live theatre.

92

## UNIQUE ACTING DEMANDS OF AVANT-GARDE THEATRE

Avant-garde theatre often requires special training and techniques—acrobatics, tumbling, mime, and special control of voice and body. Here we see Michael C. Hall as Newton and Amy Lennox as Elly in David Bowie's and Enda Walsh's *Lazarus* directed by Ivo van Hove at the Kings Cross Theatre in London. (©Robbie Jack/Corbis Entertainment/Getty Images)

Other performers, by contrast, begin with the *internal* aspects: with the feelings and emotions of the character. These performers delve deeply into the psyche of the character to try to understand and duplicate what the character feels inside. Only after doing this will they go on to develop the outer characteristics. Still other performers work on both aspects—inner and outer—simultaneously. Finally, we must realize that although a competent, well-trained performer may become a successful actress or actor, another ingredient is required in order to electrify an audience as truly memorable stage artists do. This results from intangibles—qualities that cannot be taught in acting schools—that distinguish an acceptable, accomplished actor or actress from one who ignites the stage. *Presence, charisma, personality, star quality*—these are among the terms used to describe a performer who communicates directly and kinetically with the audience. Whatever term one uses, the electricity and excitement of theatre are enhanced immeasurably by performers who possess this indefinable attribute.

## EVALUATING PERFORMANCES

As observers, we study the techniques and problems of acting so that we will be able to understand and evalute the performances we see. If a performer is unconvincing in a part, we know that he or she has not mastered a technique for truthful acting. We recognize that a performer who moves awkwardly or cannot be heard clearly has not been properly trained in body movement or vocal projection. We learn to notice how well performers play together: whether they listen to one another and respond appropriately. We also observe how well performers establish and maintain contact with the audience.

## PLAYING YOUR PART: THINKING ABOUT THEATRE

1. What is the most convincing performance you've seen, where you felt the actor onstage was really the person being portrayed? What was it about the performance that made it believable? In contrast, what was the least convincing and effective performance you have seen? Explain why this was so.
2. In Shakespearean and other classic plays, the actors often speak in verse. In what way are the various vocal techniques described

in this chapter important to actors in preparing to play a role in this kind of play and in the performance itself?

3. Identify a scene in a play in which two, three, or four actors are locked in conflict. What can individual actors do to hold the attention of the audience and make their actions and feelings convincing? How do you think these actors can best prepare for conflict scenes?
4. Read either *Miss Julie* or *A Doll's House*, both of which are available online. What kinds of background information would the actors in these plays need to know? What are the physical attributes actors would need to create for some of the key characters? Choose one scene and one character and discuss what is motivating the character. How might you employ some of Stanislavski's concepts in order to bring the character to life?

NOTE: *A Doll's House* is also available in *Anthology of Living Theatre*, Third Edition, by Edwin Wilson and Alvin Goldfarb.

There are, therefore, some key questions we may ask ourselves about the acting in a production:

1. Were the performers believable, given the requirements of the play? If they were believable, how did they seem to accomplish this? If they were not believable, what occurred to impair or destroy their believability?
2. Identify the performers you considered most successful. Citing specifics from the production, note what they did well: particular gestures, lines, or moments. For example, how did the performer's voice sound? How did she or he interpret the role?
3. If there were performers you did not like, identify them and explain why you did not like them. Give concrete examples to explain why their performances were less successful. (As you discuss this, be sure to separate the performer from the role. For example, you can dislike a character but admire the performance.)
4. Acting is more than a collection of individual performances. The entire company needs to work as a unit (as noted earlier, this is sometimes called ensemble): each member of the cast must not only perform her or his own role but also support the other performers. Discuss how the performers related or failed to relate to one another.

Did they listen to each other and respond? Did anyone seem to be "showing off" and ignoring the others?

Before leaving the subject of the performer, we should note that actors and actresses have always held a fascination for audiences. In some cases this is because they portray larger-than-life characters; it can also result from the exceptional talent they bring to their performances. Also, of course, some performers have personal charisma or appeal. Theatre audiences have often responded to stars onstage in the same way that people tend to respond to a rock star or a film star. There is something in these personalities that audiences find immensely attractive or intriguing. Moreover, the personal lives of actors are often of great interest to the public, and some people find it difficult to separate a stage character from the offstage woman or man.



## SUMMARY

1. All human beings engage in certain forms of acting; imitation and role playing are excellent examples of acting in everyday life.
2. Acting onstage differs from acting in everyday life, for several reasons—including the fact that a stage actor or actress is always being observed by an audience, and the fact that acting for the stage involves playing roles with which the performer may have no direct experience in life.
3. Historically, stage performances have required exceptional physical and vocal skills: the ability to move with agility and grace and to engage in such actions as sword fights and death scenes; the ability to deal with poetic devices (meter, imagery, alliteration, etc.); the skill to project the voice to the farthest reaches of the theatre space.
4. Acting is a difficult, demanding profession. Despite its glamor, it calls for arduous training and preparation. Looking at what is called for in a role like Hamlet gives some idea of the challenges involved.
5. From the end of the nineteenth century to the present day, many plays have been written in a very realistic, lifelike style. The characters in these plays resemble ordinary people in their dialogue, behavior, and so on. Presenting

them requires that performers make the characters they portray believable and convincing.

6. A Russian director, Konstantin Stanislavski, developed a system or method of acting to enable performers to believe in the "truth" of what they say and do. His suggestions included applying techniques of relaxation and concentration; dealing with specific objects and feelings (a handkerchief, a glass of water, etc.); using the power of fantasy or imagination (the "magic if") to achieve a sense of inner truth in a role; using psychophysical action; developing a spine, or through line, that runs through a role from the beginning to the end of a play; and playing together as an ensemble.
7. In the later stages of his work on actor training, Stanislavski moved from an emphasis on internal elements to more external ones—to what he called psychophysical action. Rather than emotion leading to action, he suggested that action leads to emotion.
8. Exercises and tasks have been developed to train performers. These include numerous physical and vocal exercises and techniques taken from other disciplines such as tai chi and the circus. "Centering" is often emphasized as a part of body and voice training.
9. Avant-garde theatre and some other theatres make additional demands on the performer with regard to voice and body training. The voice is sometimes used to emit odd sounds—screams, grunts, and the like. The body must perform feats of acrobatics and gymnastics.
10. The end result must be a synthesis or integration of the inner and outer aspects of acting.
11. Audience members should familiarize themselves with the problems and techniques of acting in order to judge performances properly.

Design Elements: In Focus box (spotlight): ©Exactostock/SuperStock; Playing Your Part box (theatre seats): ©Ron Chapple/Getty Images

## THE DIRECTOR SHAPES A PRODUCTION

The director of a production works closely with the cast and the designers (scenic, costume, lighting, sound). The director gives shape to the arc of the play or musical, and determines its style, its pace, and the way the actors create their characters and interact with one another. If the production is a new play or musical, the director also collaborates with the

playwright and the lyricist and composer. Shown here is director Diane Paulus (left) demonstrating a gesture to actor Jeremy Jordan (right) in a scene from *Finding Neverland* in a production at the American Repertory Theater (A.R.T.) in Boston. (©Boston Globe/Getty Images)



# 5

# The Director and the Producer

When we see a theatre performance, our most immediate connection is with the actresses and actors onstage. We begin to identify with the characters they play and absorb the situations in which they find themselves. Behind the performances, however, is the work of another creative person—the ***director***. She or he, with the support of the stage manager, rehearses the performers and coordinates their work with that of others, such as the designers, to make certain the event is performed appropriately, intelligently, and excitingly. The director oversees all of the choices made for a production in order to create a unified whole under a unified vision. In this chapter, we will look at the role of the director, and also at the role of the producer or manager—the person who is responsible for the management and business aspects of theatre.

> **director** In American usage, the person responsible for the overall unity of a production and for coordinating the work of contributing artists. The American director is the equivalent of the British producer and the French *metteur-en-scène* ("meh-TURR ahn SENN").

## THE THEATRE DIRECTOR

The director is the person who works most closely with performers in the theatre, guiding them in shaping their performances. When a new play is being presented, the director also works closely with the playwright. The director is responsible, as well, for coordinating other aspects of the production, such as the work of the scene, costume, lighting, and sound designers. The stage manager communicates the breadth of the director's conceptual vision daily with every production area to clarify ongoing production and rehearsal choices.

For many of us, as audience members, the director's work on a production is one of the least obvious components. Other elements, such as performers, scenery, and costumes, are onstage and immediately visible to us, and the words of the playwright are heard throughout the performance. But we are often not aware that the way performers speak and move, the way the scenery looks, and the way the lights

change colors and intensity often originate with the director. After the playwright, the director is usually the first person to become involved in the creative process of a production, and the choices made by the director at every step along the way have a great deal to do with determining whether the ultimate experience will be satisfactory for us, the members of the audience.

While the playwright incorporates a point of view toward the material dramatized in a script—it may be, for example, a tragedy, a melodrama, or a comedy—it is crucial for the director to understand this point of view and translate it into terms relevant to the production. The director must then make both the playwright's and his or her point of view clear to the performers, designers, and other artists and technicians involved. Although they work together, these artists and technicians must of necessity work on segments of the production rather than the entire enterprise. During rehearsals, for instance, the performers are much too busy working on their own roles and their interactions with each other to worry about scenery. To take another example, a performer who appears only in the first act of a two-act play has no control over what happens in the second act. The one person who does have an overall perspective is the director. The person who aids in communicating this perspective to everyone involved on a continuing basis is the production stage manager, the only other member of the production team to experience the entire rehearsal process with the director.

Directors get their training in a variety of ways. Many of them begin as actors and actresses and find that they have a talent for working with other people and for coordinating the work of designers as well as performers. Others train in the many academic institutions that have specific programs for directors. These include large universities with theatre as part of a liberal arts focus as well as special conservatories and institutes.

## THE TRADITIONAL DIRECTOR

In this chapter we will look at three approaches to directing: traditional, auteur, and postmodern. We begin with the traditional approach, which might also be called a text-based method. The starting point, or the foundation, of the traditional director's work is the script. It might be a well-known play by Shakespeare, Ibsen, or Strindberg, or a more recent work, such as one by Lorraine Hansberry, August Wilson, or Sarah Ruhl. The play might also be a new script by a very young or emerging playwright.

## The Director and the Script

For the most part, we experience theatre as a unified event. But, as pointed out before, theatre is a complex art involving not one or two elements but many simultaneously: script, performance, costumes, scenery, lighting, and point of view. These diverse elements—a mixture of the tangible and intangible—must be brought together into an organic whole, and that is the responsibility of the director.

**Choosing a Script** Frequently, the director chooses the script to be produced. Generally it is a play to which the director is attracted or for which he or she feels a special affinity. If the director does not actually choose the script but is asked to direct it by a playwright or a producer, he or she must still understand and



appreciate the material. The director's attraction to the script and basic understanding of it are important in launching a production. Once the script is chosen, the actual work on the production begins.

If the play is new and has never been tested in production, the director may see problems in the script, which must be corrected before rehearsals begin. The director will have a series of meetings with the playwright to iron out the difficulties ahead of time. The director may feel, for example, that the leading character is not clearly defined, or that a clash of personalities between two characters never reaches a climax. If the playwright agrees with the director's assessment, he or she will revise the manuscript. Generally there is considerable give-and-take between the director and the playwright in these preliminary sessions, as well as during the rehearsal period. The stage manager must maintain well-organized rehearsal documentation of possible script revisions for the playwright and director to discuss outside rehearsals. Ideally, there should be a spirit of cooperation, compromise, and mutual respect in this relationship.

Once the script is selected, the director begins analyzing it and preparing a production. There is no one way a director should go about this: Individual directors adopt their own personal approach. One method of undertaking this task was suggested by the work of the Russian director Konstantin Stanislavski. In this case, an initial step is to determine the ***spine*** of the play.

> **spine** Also known as main action, the spine is determined by the goal or primary objective of all the characters in a play, both collectively and individually.

**The "Spine" of the Play** The spine of the drama, also referred to as the *main action*, is determined by the goal, or the primary objective, of the characters in the play, both collectively and individually. There is nothing magical about the spine: It is a working hypothesis that gives directors a foundation and a through line on which to base their analysis and their work with the actors.

Finding a spine for a play allows the director to understand the action and provides a nerve center from which to develop it. Different directors may find different spines for the same play. With *Hamlet*, for instance, several spines are possible: Much will depend on the period in which the play is produced and on the point of view of the individual director. One spine could be simple revenge; another could be Hamlet's attempt to resolve his inner conflicts; still another could be Hamlet's attempt to locate and expose the duplicity and corruption he senses in Denmark. Such varied interpretations are to be expected and are acceptable as long as the spine chosen remains true to the spirit and action of the play.

**The Style of the Production** Once a spine has been found, a second task for a director is to find the *style* in which the play is to be presented. The concept of style in a theatrical production is difficult to explain. It means the *way* a play is presented. When we speak of a "casual style" of clothing, we mean that the clothing is loose and informal; when we speak of a "1960s" style, we mean that it has the look and feel of clothing worn in the that time period. In theatre, one way to consider style is in terms of realism and nonrealism, or as noted elsewhere, sometimes referred to as departures from realism. These two types can also be further subdivided.

For example, there are several types of realism. At one extreme is ***naturalism***, a kind of superrealism. The term *naturalism* was originated by several nineteenth-century French writers who wanted a theatre that would show human beings—often in wretched circumstances—as products of heredity and environment. In addition to this special use, the term *naturalism* refers more broadly to attempts to put onstage as exact a copy of life as possible, down to the smallest detail. In a naturalistic stage set of a kitchen, for instance, a performer can actually cook a meal on the stove, the toaster makes toast, the faucet produces water, and the light in the refrigerator goes on when the door opens. Characters speak and act as if they had been caught unobserved by a sound camera. In this sense, naturalism is supposed to resemble a documentary film. Naturalism is sometimes called *slice-of-life* drama, suggesting that a section has been taken from life and transferred to the stage.

**naturalism** Attempts to put onstage exact copies of everyday life; sometimes also called *slice-of-life* drama.

100

## ALLEGORY

The medieval morality play *Everyman* is an excellent example of an allegory, with the title character representing all humankind. In an allegory, characters personify ideas or otherworldly characters (such as, in this play, Good Deeds, Goods, and Kindred) in order to illustrate an intellectual or moral lesson. Shown here is a rehearsal for *Everyman* with performers Brigitte Grothum, Georg Preusse (in the title role), and Debora Weigert rehearsing a scene in a production at the Berliner Dom in Berlin. (©Clemens Bilan/Getty Images)

At the other extreme of realism is ***heightened realism***, sometimes referred to as *selective realism*. Here the characters and their activities are intended to resemble life, but a certain license is allowed. The scenery, for example, might be skeletal—that is, incomplete and in outline—although the words and actions of the characters are realistic. Or perhaps a character is allowed a modern version of a soliloquy in an otherwise realistic play. All art calls for selectivity, and heightened realism recognizes the necessity for the artist to make choices and to inject creativity into the process. *Realism* itself occupies the middle

ground between naturalism and heightened, or selective, realism; but when it is used as a broad umbrella term, it includes the extremes at each end.

**heightened realism** Also known as *selective realism*, refers to plays in which characters and their actions resemble real life but a certain license is allowed for other elements in the play.

101

Nonrealism, or departures from realism, can also be divided into types, which might include such forms as fantasy, poetic drama, musical theatre, absurdist theatre, and symbolism. Examples of two well-known types of nonrealism are *allegory* and *expressionism*.

***Allegory*** is the representation of an abstract theme or subject through symbolic characters, actions, or other elements of a production, such as scenery. Good examples are the medieval morality plays, in which characters personify ideas in order to teach an intellectual or moral lesson. In *Everyman*, performers play parts with names such as Good Deeds, Fellowship, and Worldly Goods. In less direct forms of allegory, a relatively realistic story serves as a parable or lesson. *The Crucible* by Arthur Miller is about the witch hunts in Salem, Massachusetts, in the late seventeenth century; but it can also be regarded as dealing with specific investigations into communism by the U.S. Congress in the early 1950s that Miller and others considered modern "witch hunts."

**allegory** Symbolic representation of abstract themes through characters, action, and other concrete elements of a play.

***Expressionism*** was at its height in art, literature, and theatre during the first quarter of the twentieth century, but traces of it are still found today, and contemporary plays using its techniques are called *expressionistic*. In simple terms, expressionism gives outward expression to inner feelings. In Elmer Rice's *The Adding Machine*, when the main character, Mr. Zero, is fired from his job, his feelings are conveyed by having the room spin around in a circle amid a cacophony of shrill sounds, such as loud sirens and whistles.

**expressionism** The attempt in drama to depict the subjective state of a character or group of characters through such nonrealistic techniques as distortion, striking images, and poetic language.

Deciding on a directorial style for a production involves giving a signature and an imprint to the entire production: the look of the scenery and lights, and the way performers speak and handle their costumes and props. It also involves the rhythm and pace at which the

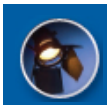
play moves, a subject that is taken up below. When a director arrives at a style for a production, two things are essential: (1) the style should be appropriate for the play, and (2) it should be consistent throughout every aspect of the production.

**The Directorial Concept** One way for the director to embody the spine in a production and to implement style is to develop a ***directorial concept***. Such a concept derives from a controlling idea, vision, or point of view that the director feels is appropriate for the play. The concept should also create a unified theatrical experience for those of us in the audience.

> **directorial concept** The controlling idea, vision, or point of view that the director feels is appropriate for the play; it should create a unified theatrical experience for the audience.

***Concept and period***. To indicate what is involved for the director in developing a concept, let us begin with period and location. Take, for instance, Shakespeare's play *The Tempest*. It is set on a remote island, and an air of mystery is present throughout the play. One director might take a traditional approach and present it as she or he believes it was performed in Shakespeare's day, with appropriate costumes and scenery. Another director might wish to set it in modern times on a secluded island in the Caribbean, with scenery and costumes reflecting a decidedly modern, Latin feeling, including calypso and other native music. A third director might take a *Star Wars* approach, placing the action at some future period in a fictional universe. In this case, performers arrive and depart by intergalactic rocket ships and wear futuristic space outfits. This kind of transposition has been carried out frequently with Greek plays, Elizabethan plays, seventeenth-century French plays, and other dramatic classics.





## IN FOCUS: THE EVOLUTION OF THE DIRECTOR

It is sometimes argued that the theatre director did not exist before 1874, when a German nobleman, George II (1826–1914), duke of Saxe-Meiningen, began to supervise every element of the productions in his theatre—rehearsals, scenic elements, and other aspects, which he coordinated into an integrated whole. It is

true that Saxe-Meiningen was one of the first people to emerge as a separate, indispensable member of the theatrical team. Although the title may have been new, however, the *function* of the director had always been present in one way or another, usually in the person of a playwright or an actor.

We know, for example, that the Greek playwright Aeschylus directed his own plays and that the chorus in a Greek play would rehearse under the supervision of a leader for many weeks before a performance. At various times in theatre history, the leading performer or playwright of a company served as a director, though without the title. The French dramatist Molière, for instance, not only was the playwright and the chief actor of his company but also functioned as the director. In Molière's short play *The Impromptu of Versailles* he made clear his definite ideas about the way actors and actresses should perform—no doubt the same advice he offered to performers in his company when rehearsing other plays.

When Hamlet gives instructions and advice to the players who perform the play-within-the-play in *Hamlet*, he is functioning as a director. In England after the time of Shakespeare—from the seventeenth century through the nineteenth—there was a long line of *actor-managers* who gave strong leadership to individual theatre companies and performed many of the functions of a director, although they were still not given that title. Among the most famous were Thomas Betterton (1635–1710), David Garrick (1717–1779), Charles Kemble (1775–1854), William Charles Macready (1793–1873), and Henry Irving (1838–1905).

Toward the end of the nineteenth century the term *director* came into common usage and the clearly defined role of the director was fully recognized. Perhaps significantly, the emergence of the director as a separate creative figure coincided with important changes that began to take place in society during the nineteenth century. First, there was a breakdown in established social, religious, and political concepts, resulting in part from the influence of Freud, Darwin, and Marx. Second, there was a marked increase in communication. With the advent of the telegraph, the telephone, photography, motion pictures, and—later—television, various cultures that had remained remote from or unknown to one another were suddenly made aware of each other.

The effect of these changes was to alter the monolithic, ordered view of the world that individual societies had maintained for over 2,000 years prior to that time. By the early twentieth

century, societies and nations had become heterogeneous and interconnected. Previously, consistency of style in theatre had been easier to achieve. Within a given society, writers, performers, and spectators were on common ground. For example, the comedies of the English playwrights William Wycherley (1640–1716) and William Congreve (1670–1729), written at the end of the seventeenth century, were aimed at a specific audience—the elite upper class, which relished gossip, clever remarks, and well-turned phrases.

The code of social behavior in this case was well understood by performers and audiences alike, and questions of style in a production hardly arose, because a common approach to style was already present in the fabric of society. The way a man took a pinch of snuff or a lady flung open her fan was so clearly delineated in daily behavior that performers had only to refine and perfect these actions for the stage. Today, however, due to diversity, multiculturalism, and globalization, achieving a unity of style is much more difficult and the director's task, therefore, is that much more important.

***Concept and central image***. Another way to implement a directorial concept is to find a *central*, or *controlling, image* or *metaphor* for a theatrical production. An example would be a production of *Hamlet* that envisioned the play in terms of a vast net or spiderweb in which Hamlet is caught. The motif of a net or spiderweb could be carried out on several levels: in the design of the stage set, in the ways the performers relate to one another, and in a host of details relating to the central image. There

105

might be a huge rope net hanging over the entire stage, for instance, and certain characters could play string games with their fingers. In short, the metaphor of Hamlet's being caught in a net would be emphasized and reinforced on every level.

103

## THE DIRECTORIAL CONCEPT

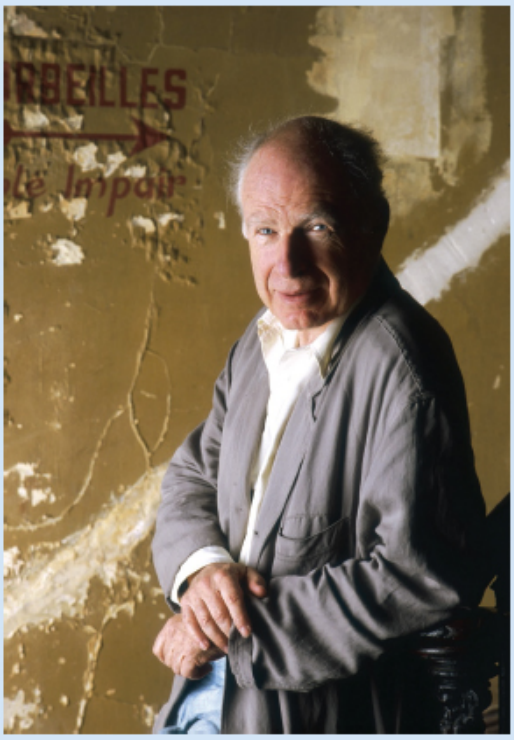
At times, directors create an overall image or metaphor in presenting their interpretation of a play. This can serve both to illuminate the text and to give the production unity and cohesion. The South African actor John Kani inspired the Royal Shakespeare Company director Gregory Doran to set Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar* in modern-day Africa with an all-black cast. Kani had referred to the play as "Shakespeare's Africa play" and Nelson Mandela had annotated a copy he read while imprisoned at Robben Island. In this scene we see Paterson Joseph (left) as Brutus and Jeffery Kissoon (right) as

Julius Caesar in the RSC production. (©Geraint Lewis/Alamy Stock Photo)



## IN FOCUS: PETER BROOK, GLOBAL DIRECTOR

The English director Peter Brook (b. 1925) presented some of the most memorable productions of the late twentieth and early twenty-first centuries, a number of which drew extensively from the theatrical traditions and source materials of many countries. His major productions include Peter Weiss's *Marat/Sade* (1964), Shakespeare's *A Midsummer Night's Dream* (1970), and his own adaptation of an Indian epic, *The Mahabharata* (1985). His best-known writings include *The Empty Space* (1968), *The Shifting Point* (1987), and *The Open Door* (1993).



Peter Brook in Paris. (©Julio Donoso/Getty Images)

As a means of escaping commercial theatre and allowing himself to address the universality of the theatrical experience, Brook founded the International Centre for Theatre Research in

Paris in 1970. This company was formed of actors from a variety of countries including Algeria, Japan, England, France, America, Spain, and Portugal, with directors from Armenia, England, and Romania and a designer from Switzerland. There was much sharing of ideas and techniques, with the Japanese actor teaching daily classes in nō, for example. Brook's vision was for the actors to learn from each other and to approach a kind of universal theatrical language. A production titled *Orghast* (1971) first allowed the company to present its experimentation with language. The text was written by Ted Hughes in an invented language influenced heavily by Latin and ancient Greek, and was performed in Iran.

In 1989, Brook's continued interest in identifying a universality of language in theatre was manifest in his production of *The Mahabharata*. The source text for this play was the Indian epic of the same name, which is more than 90,000 verses long, concerns wars between the Pandavas and the Kauravas, and addresses a great number of philosophical questions. Brook's production of this epic text originally took place at the Avignon Festival in France and took a full nine hours to perform. The source text was Indian, the director English, the theatre company French, and the composer Japanese, and the actors were from all over the globe. This production, which toured widely, clearly drew from a large number of different cultures.

Brook continued his onstage exploration of *The Mahabharata* in 2015 in a new work titled *Battlefield*, using just four global actors and a musician along with minimal properties to create a production about the horrific aftermath of war.

Although Brook has been criticized for exploiting and appropriating some of his source material (such as *The Mahabharata*, which he greatly simplified), his work has shown a creative and continued interest in drawing from many different global theatrical traditions. Unlike other directors who have "borrowed" certain aspects of other theatrical traditions, Brook has sought to use them to identify a common theatre language or universality understood by all.

Prepared by Naomi Stubbs, Associate Professor, LaGuardia Community College, CUNY.

***Concept and purpose***. The directorial concept should serve the play. The best concept is one that remains true to the spirit and meaning of

the script. A director who can translate that spirit and meaning into stage terms in an inspired way will create an exciting theatre experience; however, a director who is too intent on displaying his or her own originality may distort or violate the integrity of the script. For instance, a director might decide to make *Macbeth* into a cowboy play, with Duncan as a sheriff and Macbeth as a deputy who wants to kill the sheriff in order to take the job himself. In this version, Lady Macbeth would be the deputy's wife, whom he had met in a saloon. *Macbeth* could be done this way, but it might also come across as simply a gimmick—a means of calling attention to the director rather than to the script.

In most instances the best directorial concept is a straightforward one deriving from the play itself, not a scheme superimposed from outside.

### The Director's Collaborator: The Dramaturg

A person who can be of great assistance to the director is the ***dramaturg*** (sometimes also spelled as *dramaturge*), or literary manager, whom we mentioned earlier. The duties of the dramaturg are discovering promising new plays, working with playwrights on developing their scripts, identifying significant plays from the past that may have been overlooked, preparing material for teachers whose students will be attending performances, and writing articles for the programs that are distributed at performances. Of particular importance to directors is the work of dramaturgs in conducting research on previous productions of classic plays, as well as researching past criticism and interpretations of these plays. It is easy to see how the work of the dramaturg can be invaluable in assisting the director to arrive at decisions regarding style, approach, and concept.

**dramaturg** The individual who works on literary and historical issues with members of the artistic team mounting a theatre production.

## THE AUTEUR DIRECTOR AND THE POSTMODERN DIRECTOR

In addition to the traditional director, there are two other types of stage directors: the auteur director and the postmodern director. There are a number of similarities between these two, but we will look at them one at a time, beginning with the auteur director.

## The Auteur Director

***Auteur*** is a French word meaning "author." After World War II, French critics began using this term to describe certain film directors who, they said, were really the authors of the films they made. In these films the point of view and the implementation of that point of view came almost entirely from the director, not from a writer. The term has since been applied to a type of stage director as well. We are not speaking here of directors who alter the time or place in which the action occurs but retain the original script—the playwright's words and the sequence of scenes. Rather, we are speaking of directors who make more drastic alterations or transformations in the material, taking responsibility for shaping *every* element in the production, including the script.

> **auteur** French term for "author." When used to describe a director it suggests one who makes drastic alterations and transformations to a traditional script.

106

Interestingly, one of the first and most important auteur directors began his work with a traditional director, Stanislavski, and then went out on his own—the Russian director Vsevolod Meyerhold (1874–1940), who developed a type of theatre in which he controlled all the elements. The script was only one of many aspects that Meyerhold used for his own purposes. He would rewrite or eliminate text in order to present his own vision of the material. Performers, too, were subject to his overall ideas. Often they were called on to perform like circus acrobats or robots. The finished product was frequently exciting and almost always innovative, but it reflected Meyerhold's point of view, strongly imposed on all the elements, not the viewpoint of a writer or anyone else.

Following in Meyerhold's footsteps, many avant-garde directors of the mid-twentieth century, such as Jerzy Grotowski (1933–1999), Richard Foreman (b. 1937), and Robert Wilson (b. 1941), can also be classified as auteur directors. Each in his own way demanded that the text serve his purposes, not the other way around. In some cases, such as many of Wilson's pieces, the text is only fragmentary and is one of the least important elements.

Another recent auteur director is Ivo van Hove (b. 1958), a Belgian-born director who enjoys reinventing the classics. In his *Streetcar Named Desire* (1996), Blanche DuBois performs a good part of the play naked in a bathtub; in his staging of Arthur Miller's *A View from the Bridge* (2014), his actors, shoeless and dressed all in casual contemporary clothing, perform on a stripped-down rectangular boxlike

white stage with no props, and with the audience seated on two sides (in the traditional NewYork Broadway proscenium, bleacherlike seating was set up on the stage).

Other highly regarded auteur directors are Julie Taymor (b. 1952) and Mary Zimmerman (b. 1960).

### The Postmodern Director

There is a great deal of overlap between the auteur director and the postmodern director. What is postmodernism? Probably the best way to answer the question is historically. The modern period in drama began in the late nineteenth century with plays like those of Ibsen and Strindberg that broke long-held taboos. The subject matter of their plays included explicit sexual content, social diseases, the subjugation of women, and the hypocrisy of religious figures. The twentieth century, therefore, was the period of *modern drama*.

At midcentury, however, there were people who felt that as advanced as theatre had become, it remained bound by the strictures of the text. In their minds this state of affairs did not properly reflect the chaos, the confusion, and the alienation of the world around us. Two groups especially advanced these ideas: the theoreticians who propounded the doctrine of postmodernism; and a series of stage directors who embodied postmodernism in their work with a radical, rebellious, free-form approach to theatre production.

What are the hallmarks of postmodern production? One, which began with Meyerhold and continued with Grotowski in his “poor theatre,” was a taking apart of the text, often called *deconstruction*, in which portions of a text may be altered, deleted, taken out of context, or reassembled.

**RICHARD FOREMAN: AUTEUR DIRECTOR**

Richard Foreman is one of the foremost auteur directors in today's theatre. Such directors create their own theatre pieces, providing the vision and the interpretation. They serve not only as directors but also as authors, taking elements from many sources and melding them into their own version of what we see onstage. Shown here is a scene from Foreman's *Old-Fashioned Prostitutes (A True Romance)* with Alenka Kraigher (left) and Rocco Sisto at the Public Theater in New York in 2013. (©Karli Cadel/The New York Times/Redux)

A second hallmark is the abandonment of a narrative or linear structure in a theatre piece. We have already mentioned (and will discuss more fully later in our survey of modern theatre) that Robert Wilson and Richard Foreman, in his Ontological Hysteric Theater, both work as auteur and postmodern directors, replacing traditional structure with the use of segments, tableaux, and other nonsequential devices. A third hallmark is unfamiliar, cross-gender, multicultural casting. Lee Breuer (b. 1937) in a Mabou Mines production of *King Lear* recast the title role as a female ranch owner in the southern United States who has difficulty leaving her inheritance to her three "good ole boy" sons. *The Emperor Jones*, a play by Eugene O'Neill (1888–1953), is about the ruler of a Caribbean island who is gradually stripped of his powers.

When the Wooster Group produced this play, an actress, Kate Valk, played the ruler, appearing in blackface.

### ELIZABETH LECOMPTE: POSTMODERN DIRECTOR

Elizabeth LeCompte is a postmodern, auteur director who creates her own theatre pieces frequently by reworking classical texts, controlling every aspect of a production and making it her own. Shown here is a scene from her version of Shakespeare's *Hamlet* staged at the Royal Lyceum Theatre as a part of the Edinburgh International Festival in 2013. (©Robbie Jack/Corbis Entertainment/Getty Images)

In addition to those already discussed, other postmodern directors include Anne Bogart (b. 1951), working with her SITI organization, Elizabeth LeCompte (b. 1944), working with the Wooster Group, and Simon McBurney (b. 1957), founder of Théâtre de Complicité, and whose most recent work is the one-person *The Encounter* (2015).

108

## THE DIRECTOR AND THE PRODUCTION: THE PHYSICAL PRODUCTION

While developing his or her approach to the play, the director is also working with the designers on the physical production. At the outset—once the director's concept is established—the director confers with the costume, scene, lighting, sound designers, and possibly video designers and projection designers, to give visual and aural shape and substance to the concept. It is the responsibility of designers to provide images and impressions that will carry out the style and ideas of the production. (See the chapters on the various design elements.)

During the preproduction and rehearsal period, the director meets with the designers to make certain that their work is on schedule and keeping pace with the rehearsals. Obviously, the preparation of these elements must begin long before the actual performance, just as rehearsals must, so that everything will be ready on time for the performance itself. Any number of problems can arise with the physical elements of a production. For example, the appropriate props may not be available, a costume may not fit a performer, or scene changes may be too slow. Early planning will allow time to solve these problems.

## THE DIRECTOR'S WORK WITH THE PERFORMERS

Now we come to the director's work with the performers. Along with choosing and developing a script and settling questions of concept, style, and the physical production, the director also works closely with the performers we see onstage. The director is responsible for casting, blocking, and rehearsing those performers.

### Casting

Possibly the most important task of a director is deciding on the cast of the play. In theatre, ***casting*** means fitting performers into roles; the term *casting* is derived from the phrase "casting a mold." Generally speaking, directors attempt to put performers into the roles for which their personalities and physical characteristics are best suited. A young actress will play Juliet in *Romeo and Juliet*, a middle-aged or older actor with a deep voice will play *King Lear*, and so on. When a performer closely resembles in real life the character to be enacted, this is known as *typecasting*. There are times, however, when a director will deliberately put someone in a role who does not appear to be right for the part. This is frequently done for comic or satiric purposes and is called *casting against type*. For example, a sinister-looking actor might be called on to play an angelic part.

**casting** Fitting performers into roles.

In the modern American theatre, performers frequently *audition* for parts in a play, and the director casts from those performers who audition. In an audition, actors and actresses read scenes from a play or perform portions of the script to give the director an indication of how they talk and move, and how they would interpret a part. From this the director determines whether or not a performer is right for a given role.

Historically, casting was rarely done by audition because theatrical companies were more permanent. In Shakespeare's time, and in Molière's, as well as in Asian theatre, certain people in a theatrical troupe always played certain parts: One person would play heroic roles while another always played clowns. Today each production begins with a fresh cast, frequently chosen through an audition process, though stars are sometimes pre-cast in commercial productions. A theatre company and/or director may also employ a *casting director* who is responsible for helping identify actors appropriate for roles in a production.

From our standpoint as members of the audience, it is important to be aware of casting and the difference it can make to the effectiveness of a production. Perhaps an actor or actress is just right for the part he or she is playing. On the other hand, sometimes the wrong performer is chosen for a part: The voice may not be right, or the gestures or facial expressions may be stilted or inappropriate for the character. One way to test the appropriateness of casting is to imagine a different kind of actor or actress in a part while watching a performance.

## Rehearsals

Once a play is cast, the director supervises all the rehearsals. He or she listens to and watches the performers as they go through their lines and begin to move about the stage. Different directors work in different ways during the early phases of rehearsal. Some directors *block* a play in advance, giving precise instructions to the performers. The term ***blocking*** means deciding when and where performers move and position themselves on the stage. Other directors let the actors and actresses find their own movements, their own vocal interpretations, and their own relationships. And of course, there are directors who do a bit of both.

**blocking** Pattern and arrangement of performers' movements onstage with respect to each other and to the stage space, usually set by the director.

At the beginning of the rehearsal process the director often has the cast sit around a table, while reading through the script and discussing individual scenes as well as the play in general. After this, the director may break down the script into segments or scenes, which will be rehearsed separately. Some scenes will involve only a few people; others, as in a Shakespearean play, may be crowd scenes. At a certain point, the actors will be expected to be "off book," meaning that they have memorized their lines. Gradually, scenes are put together, and an

entire act is played without stopping. After that, individual scenes are refined, and then there is a run-through, when the play is performed straight through without stopping.

Also, some directors want the actors to become thoroughly familiar with the script while they remain seated. Others wish to get the play "on its feet" as soon as possible, meaning that the actors are moving about the rehearsal hall early in the process. Regardless of the director's approach to staging, the production stage manager keeps detailed notes of all the actors' movements and actions to help maintain consistency during rehearsals.

Throughout the rehearsal period, the director must make certain that the actors and actresses are realizing the intention of the playwright—that they are making sense of the script and bringing out its meaning. Also, the director must ensure that the performers are working well together—that they are listening to one another and beginning to play as an ensemble. The director must be aware of performers' needs, knowing when to encourage them and when to challenge or criticize them. The director must understand their personal problems and help them overcome such obstacles as insecurity about a role or fear of failure.

110

## IN FOCUS: COLOR-BLIND AND NONTRADITIONAL CASTING

While there have been many significant African American, Latino/a, and Asian stage performers, there is continuing recognition that there are limited opportunities for actors and actresses from underrepresented groups in the theatres around the United States (and in other countries). In order to address this issue, there have been productions employing what was originally referred to as *color-blind casting*, or what many now refer to more inclusively as *nontraditional casting*, in which roles are cast by directors without considering a performer's ethnicity, gender, transgender identity, or disability.

Nontraditional casting, for example, has been frequently employed in productions of Shakespeare across the globe as well as in other classic dramas. Some actual examples include all-female productions of Shakespeare; an all–Asian American cast playing the Jewish family in the 1930s drama *Awake and Sing*; an

African American cast performing Tennessee Williams's *Cat on a Hot Tin Roof*; and a transgender performer playing a female character in Thornton Wilder's *The Matchmaker*. The acclaimed musical *Hamilton* (2015), which has African American and Latino actors portraying many of the white founders of the United States, including those playing Alexander Hamilton, George Washington, and Thomas Jefferson, is another example.

Yet, directors still rarely cast performers of color, as well as women, in multiracial and gender-bending productions of contemporary texts. For that matter, many performers from underrepresented groups point out that "whitewashing," having white actors play other races such as a white actor playing the Latino lead in *In the Heights* or the Asians in the musicals *The King and I*, *Flower Drum Song*, and *Miss Saigon*, is still too common and undercuts even those limited opportunities for performers of color.

Some underrepresented theatre artists (including the playwright August Wilson), however, have argued that nontraditional casting undermines the ongoing need to present the voices of marginalized populations and that there will be fewer dramas dealing with their social and political concerns. Instead, performers who are cast in these nontraditional roles are often forced to erase their ethnic identities and not fully express them. Katori Hall, who disapproved of what she considered the inappropriate "color blind" casting of a white student actor as Martin Luther King Jr. in her play *The Mountaintop*, also questioned the nontraditional casting of *Hamilton*, echoing August Wilson's arguments: "And though I applaud *Hamilton* for its use of race-revolutionary casting, let us not forget that brown bodies are still being used to further mythologize and perpetuate the narratives of dead white men, historically and currently the most privileged group in American society."[1]

### The Director as the Audience's Eye

One could say that there are two people in theatre who stand in for us, the audience, serving as surrogate or substitute spectators. One, the critic or reviewer (discussed earlier), does his or her work after the event; the other, the director, does his or her work before it. In preparing a theatrical production, the director acts as the eye of the audience. During rehearsals, only the director sees the production from our point of view. For this reason, the director must help the performers

show the audience—us—exactly what they intend to show. If one performer hides another at an important moment, if a crucial gesture is not visible, if an actor makes an awkward movement, if an actress cannot be heard when she delivers an emotional speech, the director points it out.

111

### USING STAGE AREAS PROPERLY

One responsibility of the director is to make appropriate use of stage areas to create clarity, balance, and the proper emphasis in the visual picture onstage. The scene here is from Chekhov's *The Cherry Orchard* in a production at the Huntington Theatre. Note how the director Nicholas Martin has arranged the performers so that Kate Burton as Madame Ranevskaya in light gray costume, the leading figure in the play, stands out in front of the other actors who surround her expertly positioned. (©T Charles Erickson)

Also, the director underscores the meaning of specific scenes through *visual composition* and *stage pictures*, that is, through the physical arrangement of performers onstage. The spatial relationships of performers convey information about characters. For example, important characters are frequently placed on a level above other characters—on a platform, say, or a flight of stairs. Another spatial device is to place an important character alone in one area of the stage while grouping other characters in another area. This causes our eye to give special attention to the character standing alone. Also, if two

characters are opposed to each other, they should be placed in positions of physical confrontation onstage. Visual composition is more crucial in a play with a large cast, such as a Shakespearean production, than in a play with only two or three characters.

Certain areas onstage can assume special significance. A fireplace, with its implication of warmth, can become an area to which a character returns for comfort and reassurance. A door opening onto a garden can serve as a place where characters go when they want to renew their spirits or relieve a hemmed-in feeling. By guiding performers to make the best use of stage space, the director helps them



communicate important visual images to us—images consistent with the overall meaning of the play.

It is important to note, too, that directors must adjust their notions of blocking and visual composition to different types of stages, discussed in our chapter on stage spaces: the arena stage, the thrust stage, and the proscenium stage. Each of these calls for different approaches to the performers' movements and to the audience's sight lines.

## Movement, Pace, and Rhythm

The director gives shape and structure to a play in two ways: in *space*, as was just described, and in *time*. Since a production occurs through time, it is important for the director to see that the *movement, pace*, and *rhythm* of the play are appropriate. If a play moves too quickly, if we miss words and do not understand what is going on, that is usually the director's fault. The director must determine whether there is too little or too much time between speeches and whether a performer moves across the stage too slowly or too quickly. The director must also attempt to control the pace and rhythm within a scene and the rhythm between scenes.

One of the most common faults of directors is not establishing a clear rhythm in a production. At a performance we are often impatient to see what is coming next, and the director must see to it that the movement from moment to moment and scene to scene has enough thrust and drive to maintain our interest. Variety is also important. If a play moves ahead at only one pace, whether slow or fast, we will become fatigued simply by the monotony of that pace. Rhythm within scenes and between scenes works on us subliminally, but its effects are very real. It enters our psyche as we watch a performance and thus contributes to our overall response.

It must be borne in mind as well that although pace, rhythm, and overall effect are initially the responsibility of the director, ultimately they become the performers' responsibility. Once a performance begins, the actors and actresses are onstage and the director is not. In cinema, pace and rhythm can be determined in the editing room; in theatre, by contrast, they are in the hands of the performers. Then, too, the audience's reaction will vary from night to night, and that will also alter pace and rhythm. The director must therefore instill in the performers such a strong sense of inner rhythm that they develop an internal clock that tells them the pace at which they should play.

## Technical Rehearsal

Just before public performances begin, a ***technical rehearsal*** is held. The performers are onstage in their costumes and all of the production elements are in place: scenery, props, lighting, sound, and, in some instances, videos and projections for the first time. There is a *run-through* of the show from beginning to end, with all the props and scenery, lighting, and other technical changes.

> **technical rehearsal** A rehearsal that focuses on running through the production with scenery, props, lighting, costumes, and sound for the first time.

113

---

The stagehands may move scenery, the crew handles the needed props, lighting technicians use computer controls to dim and raise lights as well as control other lighting effects, technicians may also run a sound board and control intricate videos and projections that change settings and environments. The backstage crew, under the supervision of the stage manager, must coordinate its work with that of the performers.

Let us say that one scene ends in a garden, and the next scene opens in a library. When the performers leave the garden set, the lighting fades, and the scenery and furniture may be removed, which can be done either by stagehands or using stage machinery, such as a revolving stage, or an elevator stage, or even through lighting, projection, and video changes. Then, the scenery for the library must be brought onstage, again either by stagehands or employing stage technology. The books and other props may actually be put in place as part of the new setting or again possibly represented by projections. Next, the performers for the new scene in the library take their places as the lighting comes up.

Extensive rehearsals are required to ensure that all these changes occur smoothly, especially when there is the use of complex computer-controlled sets, lights, projections, and videos. Any mishap on the part of the technical crew, or the performers, would affect the illusion and destroy the aesthetic effect of the complex scene change.

## Dress Rehearsal

Just after the technical rehearsal, but before the first preview or tryout with an audience, the director will hold a ***dress rehearsal***. The purpose of the dress rehearsal is to put all the elements together: the full involvement of the performers as well as the technical components. The dress rehearsal is performed as if an audience were present, with no stops or interruptions and with full lights, scenery, costumes, and sound. Sometimes a few people are invited—friends of the director or cast members—to provide a token audience.

> **dress rehearsal** The first full performances of a production before performances for the public.

One function of the dress rehearsal is to give everyone concerned—cast, crew, and director—a sense of what the finished performance will be like. The dress rehearsal also allows for any last-minute changes before the first performance in front of a full audience.

## Previews

Once the technical rehearsals and the dress rehearsal are completed and remaining problems are solved, the next step is a performance in front of an audience. We have stressed from the beginning the importance of performer–audience interaction and the fact that no play is complete until it is actually enacted for an audience. It is crucial, therefore, for a production to be tried out before a group of spectators. What has gone before, in terms of rehearsals and other elements, must now meet the test of combining harmoniously in front of an audience.

For this purpose there is most often (but not always) a period of ***previews***—also called *tryouts*—when the director and the performers discover which parts of the play are successful and which are not. Frequently, for example, the director and performers find that one part of the play is moving too slowly; they know this because the audience members become restless and begin to cough or stir. Sometimes in a comedy there is a great deal of laughter where little was expected, and the performers and the director must adjust to this. In this preview period the audiences become genuine collaborators in shaping the

play. After several performances in front of an audience, the director and the performers get the “feel” of the audience and know whether or not the play is ready.

**previews** Tryout performances of a production before an audience, preceding the official “opening” performance.

114

## TECHNICAL REHEARSAL

Before performances begin, a technical rehearsal is held. All the technical aspects—scenery, lighting, sound, costumes, props—are employed in the same sequence and manner as in performance. This is in order to see that everything is in proper working order and is coordinated. Shown here is a rehearsal at the Guthrie Theater in Minneapolis for a production of *When We Are Married*, directed by John Miller-Stephany. Note the tables on which computers are being used by sound, light, and scenic designers to check out the running order and the coordination of all the elements. The set was designed by Frank Hallinan. (©T Charles Erickson)

### The Director’s Collaborator: The Stage Manager

Another key collaborator of the director, especially during the rehearsal process and then during the run of the show, is the stage manager. During the rehearsal process the stage manager works as the right-hand person to the director, doing such tasks as taking notes, keeping track of blocking, noting decisions about visual elements, communicating with all of the designers, making sure everyone is aware of rehearsal schedules, and keeping daily reports and logs. Throughout the final stages of preparing the production, for example, the stage manager continues to give detailed notes to all actors to ensure consistency in dialogue and movement.

115

## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. Have you ever had to pick someone for a team or for a job? How did you go about making your choice? Is that similar to casting in the theatre? Why or why not?
2. Have one of your classmates read a short speech from a play. Ask her or him to change the pace or rhythm of delivery. What terms or phrases did you use to make this request? Were your directions understood? How did the change in pace or rhythm affect the delivery of the speech and its impact on those listening?
3. Observe how one of your instructors interacts with the class through his or her movement. How does this movement affect the way in which the class material is delivered? Does your observation of this provide you any insight into the importance of stage blocking?
4. Ask if you can attend a technical rehearsal or dress rehearsal at your university theatre. What insights did you gain from attending that rehearsal?

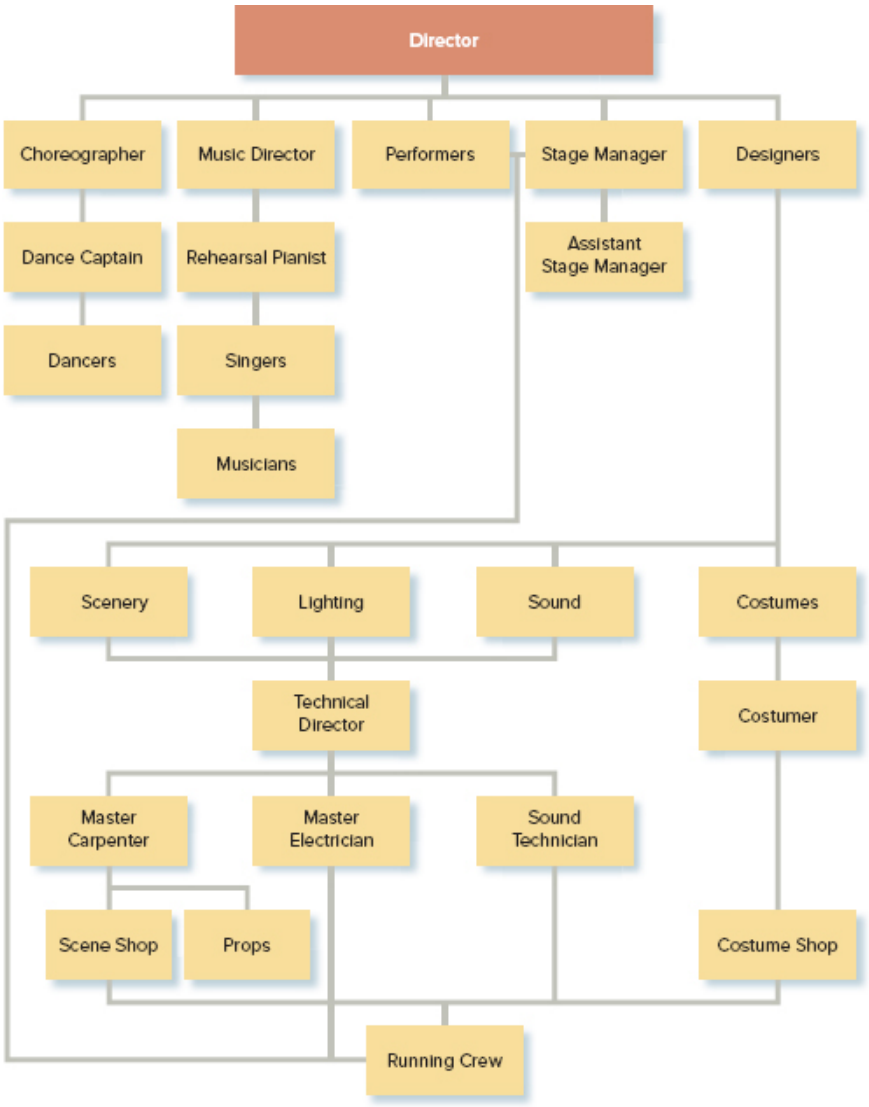
Once the play has opened and the director is no longer present at every performance, it is the stage manager's responsibility to maintain the consistency of the director's vision. Among her or his responsibilities are to make sure that actors stay true to the director's interpretation and that all technical cues are called on time during the run of the show. If understudies should go on for missing actors, it is the stage manager's responsibility to make sure they are prepared. If a

performer in a long-running show is replaced, it is often the stage manager's responsibility to work with the replacement to make sure she or he works within the confines of the director's vision.

The responsibilities of stage managers vary depending on the type of theatre in which they are working and from director to director. In commercial theatre it is important to realize that stage managers and actors are members of the same union, Actors' Equity Association (AEA), reflecting the close work stage managers do with performers.

## THE DIRECTOR'S POWER AND RESPONSIBILITY

Any artistic event must have a unity not encountered in real life. We expect the parts to be brought together so that the total effect will enlighten us, move us, or amuse us. In theatre, the director—who has a voice in so many areas of a production—is in a unique position to bring this about. This power, however, is a double-edged sword. If a director gets too carried away with one idea, for example, or lets the scene designer create scenery that overpowers the performers, the experience for the audience will be unsatisfactory or incomplete. If, on the other hand, the director has a strong point of view—one that is appropriate for the theatre piece and illuminates the script—and if all the parts fit and are consistent with one another, the experience will be meaningful and exciting, and at times even unforgettable.




## DUTIES OF A DIRECTOR IN A THEATRE PRODUCTION

Once a director has decided on a script (and has worked with the playwright, if it is a new play), he or she must organize the entire artistic side of the production. This chart indicates the many people whom the director must work with and the many elements that must be coordinated.

For an idea of the director's full range of responsibilities, see the nearby chart.

## PLAYING YOUR PART: THINKING ABOUT THEATRE

1. Imagine that while you are watching a production, one performer is overacting badly, to the point that he or she is quite unbelievable. Another performer is listless and has no energy. In each case, to what extent do you think this is the director's fault, and to what extent the performer's failure?
2. If you get bored or impatient when watching a performance, what do you think the director could have done in preparing the production to prevent this from happening?
3. Is it fair to say, as some critics do, when everything "clicks" in a production, that is, when the acting, the scenery and lighting, and the pace of the action all seem to be beautifully coordinated, that the director's hand is "invisible"?
4. If you have read a play this semester (or sometime in the past), what do you think the spine of that play is? What would your directorial concept be if you were directing a production of that play?

## THE PRODUCER OR MANAGING DIRECTOR

As spectators, we naturally focus on the event onstage rather than on what happens behind the scenes. But no production would ever be performed for the public without a business component. Here, too, the coordination of elements is crucial, and the person chiefly responsible, known as the ***producer*** in the commercial theatre, or ***managing director*** in the noncommercial theatre, is the behind-the-scenes counterpart of the director.

**producer** In American usage, the person responsible for the business side of a production, including raising the necessary money. (In British usage, a producer for many years was the equivalent of an American director.)

**managing director** In nonprofit theatre organizations, the individual who controls resources and expenditures.

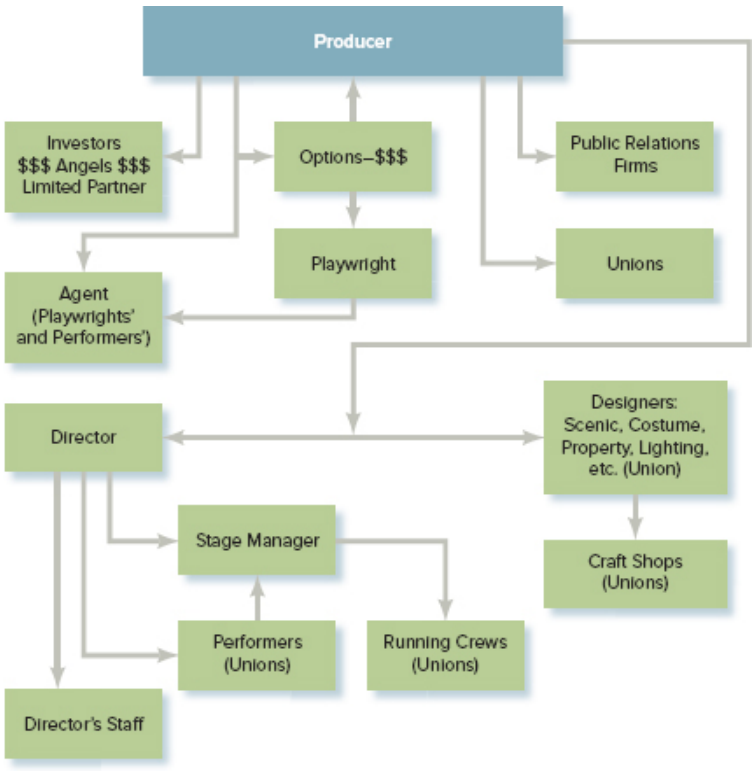
### The Commercial Producer

In a commercial theatre venture, the producer has many responsibilities. (See the nearby chart.) In general, the producer oversees the entire business and publicity side of the production and has the following duties:

1. Raising money to finance the production.
2. Securing rights to the script.
3. Dealing with the agents for the playwright, director, and performers.
4. Hiring the director, performers, designers, and stage crews.
5. Dealing with theatrical unions.
6. Renting the theatre space.
7. Supervising the work of those running the theatre: in the box office, auditorium, and business office.
8. Supervising the advertising.
9. Overseeing the budget and the week-to-week financial management of the production.

It is clear that the responsibilities of the commercial producer range far and wide. They require business acumen, organizational ability, aesthetic judgment, marketing know-how, and an ability to work with people. The producer in commercial theatre must have the artistic sensibility to choose the right script and hire the right director, but at the same time must be able to raise capital as well as oversee all financial and business operations in a production.

118



### RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE COMMERCIAL THEATRE PRODUCER

When a commercial theatre production is mounted, the person responsible for organizing the full range of nonartistic activities is the producer. This chart shows the producer at the top and indicates the people the producer must deal with and the numerous elements he or she must coordinate.

## Noncommercial Theatres

In a nonprofit theatre the person with many of the same responsibilities as the producer is called the *executive director* or *managing director*.

**Administrative Organization of a Nonprofit Theatre** Most nonprofit theatres—including theatres in smaller urban centers as well as the large noncommercial theatres in major cities like New York, Chicago, and Los Angeles—are organized with a board of directors, an artistic director, and an executive or managing director. The board is responsible for selecting both the artistic and the managing director. The board is also responsible for overseeing the financial affairs of the theatre, for fundraising, for long-range planning, and the like. To carry out some of these tasks, the board frequently delegates authority to an executive committee.

The artistic director is responsible for all creative and artistic activities. He or she selects the plays that will constitute the season and chooses directors, designers, and other creative personnel. Frequently, the artistic director also directs one or more plays during the season.



---

**Responsibilities of a Noncommercial Managing Director** The managing director in a noncommercial theatre is, in many respects, the counterpart of a producer in commercial theatre. In both a commercial production and the running of a nonprofit theatre organization, the tasks of the person in charge of administration are many and complex.

The managing director is responsible for the maintenance of the theatre building, including the dressing rooms, the scene and costume shops, the public facilities, and the lobby. The managing director is also responsible for the budget, making certain that the production stays within established limits. The budget includes salaries for the director, designers, performers, and stage crews, as well as expenditures for scenery, costumes, and music. Again, an artistic element enters the picture. Some artistic decisions—such as whether a costume needs to

be replaced or scenery needs to be altered—affect costs. The managing director must find additional sources of money or must determine that a change is important enough artistically to justify taking funds away from another item in the budget. In other words, she or he must work very closely with the director and the designers in balancing artistic and financial needs.

The managing director, often with additional staff members, is also responsible for publicity. The audience members would never get to the theatre if they did not know when and where a play was being presented. The managing director must work with staff to advertise the production and decide whether the advertisements and information should be placed in daily newspapers, magazines, on radio, on television, or in social media (such as Facebook, Twitter, and Instagram).

A host of other responsibilities come under the supervision of the managing director and his or her staff: Tickets must be ordered, the box office must be maintained, and plans must be made ahead of time for how tickets are to be sold. Securing ushers, printing programs, and maintaining the auditorium—usually called the ***front of the house***—are also the responsibility of the managing director's staff.

> **front of the house** Portion of a theatre reserved for the audience; sometimes called simply the *house*.

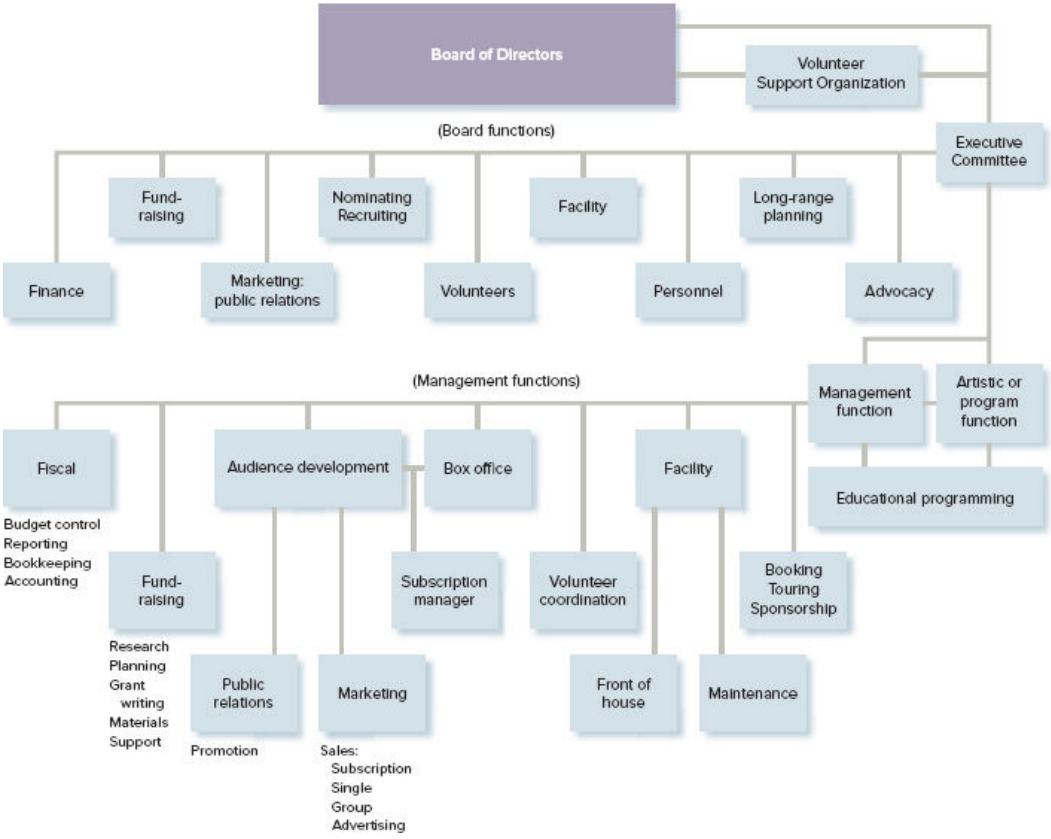
Once again, plans must be made well in advance. In many theatre organizations, an entire season—the plays that will be produced, the personnel who will be in charge, and the supplies that will be required—is planned a year ahead of time. It should be clear that coordination and cooperation are as important in this area as they are for the production onstage. (For the organization of a nonprofit theatre company, see the nearby chart.)

## The Producer's and Director's Collaborator: The Production Manager

In some nonprofit theatres, a production manager is employed to serve as a liaison between the design artists and technical staff and the director and producer or managing director. The production manager oversees the budgets for all of the design and technical areas, sets deadlines for completion, and makes sure that those deadlines are met. Should there be delays, possible budget overruns, or other behind-the-scenes problems, the production manager will attempt to resolve the issues as well as communicate with the director and/or the producer to make sure that those

issues do not impact the artistic quality of the production or its financial well-being. The responsibilities of the production manager may vary from theatre to theatre, depending on budgets and size of operations. If there is not a specifically designated production manager, then someone within the artistic or administrative staff will take on these duties.






### ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE OF A NONPROFIT THEATRE COMPANY

A nonprofit theatre is a complex institution, with many facets. This chart shows the various activities that must be organized for the successful management of such a theatre.

## COMPLETING THE PICTURE: PLAYWRIGHT, DIRECTOR, AND PRODUCER

A theatre presentation can be compared to a mosaic consisting of many brightly colored pieces of stone that fit together to form a complete picture. The playwright puts the words and ideas together; the performers bring them to life; the designers provide the visual and aural environment; the director integrates the artistic elements; the producer or managing director coordinates the business side of a production. The separate pieces in the mosaic must become parts of an artistic whole, providing us with a complete theatre experience.

## EVALUATING DIRECTING

While watching a production or experiencing a performance, we do not have time to pause and analyze every aspect of the production, from the acting and the script to the visual and aural elements. There is even less time, perhaps, to analyze the work of the director. But the topics covered in this chapter should give us, as audience members, some idea of what might or might not be the responsibility of the director: when the director might be at fault for a failure, or, on the other side, when he or she should be given credit for the successful unfolding of a theatrical event.

There are some key questions we might ask to determine whether the director was successful after we attend a production:

1. Did all the elements of the production seem to be unified and to fit together seamlessly? How was this reflected, in particular, in the visual elements—the scenery, costumes, and lighting; or in the sound, video, or projection design?
2. How did the director move the actors around onstage? Were there any moments when you felt that such movement was particularly effective or ineffective? Were entrances and exits smooth?
3. Did the pace or rhythm of the production seem right for the type of play you are attending? Did it drag or move swiftly? Did one scene follow another quickly, or were there long pauses or interruptions?
4. Did there seem to be a unifying idea or concept behind the production? If so, how was it reflected in the production? How were we, as audience members, able to see it embodied in the production? Was it reflected in striking images or in the way the actors developed their performances? (Evaluating a directorial concept can be one of the most difficult aspects of a production for us to judge, even for those of us who are very experienced theatregoers.)

## SUMMARY

1. The term *director* did not come into general use until the end of the nineteenth century. Certain functions of the director, however—organizing the production, instilling discipline in the performers, and setting a tone for the production—have been carried out since the beginning of theatre by someone in authority.
2. The director's duties became more crucial in the twentieth century. Because of the fragmentation of society and the many styles and cultures that now exist side by side, it is necessary for someone to impose a point of view and a single vision on individual productions.
3. The director has many responsibilities: working with the playwright if the script is a new work; evolving a concept or approach to the script; developing the visual side of the production with the designers; holding auditions and casting roles; working with the performers to develop their individual roles in rehearsals; ensuring that stage action communicates the meaning of the play; establishing appropriate pace and rhythm in the movement of the scenes; establishing the dynamics of the production as a whole; and supervising the technical and preview rehearsals.
4. *Auteur* directors demand that a text serve their own purposes, rather than shaping their purposes to serve the text. *Postmodern* directors often "deconstruct" a text or rearrange elements to create a theatre piece.
5. Because the director has such wide-ranging power and responsibilities, he or she can distort a production and create an imbalance of elements or an inappropriate emphasis. The director is responsible for a sense of proportion and order in the production.
6. The producer or manager of a production is responsible for the business aspects: maintaining the theatre, arranging publicity, handling finances, as well as managing the ticket sales, budgets, and ushers.

**Design Elements:** In Focus box (spotlight): ©Exactostock/SuperStock; Playing Your Part box (theatre seats): ©Ron Chapple/Getty Images

# Part Three

# The Playwright and the Play

**6 Creating the World of the Play**

**7 Dramatic Structure and Dramatic Characters**

**8 Theatrical Genres**

## CREATING THE PLAY: THE PLAYWRIGHT

Historically, the subject, the tone, the structure, and the point of view of a dramatic script are the creation of the playwright. The plays of Henrik Ibsen, who was an innovator in realistic drama at the end of the nineteenth century, continues to be produced today because of his focus on truthful, universal human circumstances.

Shown here is a scene from Ibsen's *Hedda Gabler*, with Roxanna Hope in the title role in the Hartford Stage Company production directed by Jennifer Tarver. (©T Charles Erickson)



It begins with an impulse, a story, an event, an inspiration: a composer has an idea for a song or a symphony, a choreographer conceives of a ballet, a playwright has a story for a drama or a musical, an architect conceives of a building. Following that beginning, the person who envisions the artwork sets about putting the idea into a form that will be recognizable to those with whom he or she will be collaborating. What emerges is the musical score, the script, the blueprint that others can bring alive as an orchestral concert, a theatrical production, an imaginative piece of architecture. The finished script, musical score, or blueprint establishes guidelines that point everyone toward the ultimate realization of the idea.

A theatre production is a collaboration, not only between the audience and the performers but among a whole range of people who work together to make it happen: performers, directors, designers, technicians. All these are essential, but like any enterprise, a theatre production must begin somewhere, and in most cases that starting point is the script. For more than 2,000 years, in both the West and Asia, the script of a play has been created by the dramatist or playwright, the person who chooses the story to be told, selects the characters, determines the sequence of dramatic episodes, and composes the dialogue for the characters to speak. Like theatre, other forms of art also involve collaboration. For instance, in architecture a team of engineers, designers, and contractors will work to create the finished structure. It is the vision of the architect, however, that drives the project.

In recent years, architects have used computer diagrams to render their plans, allowing the architect to create and be involved in many variations of his or her original

Choreographer Christopher Wheeldon (right) rehearsing *Carousel (A Dance)* with dancers Kathryn Morgan and Andrew Veyette of the New York City Ballet. (©Paul Kolnik)

An often-repeated story is akin to a drama, with words, characters, and a plot. Here we see a storyteller repeating a folk legend to a group of Native American children on the Barona Indian Reservation. (©Bob Rowan/Corbis Documentary/Getty Images)



idea. In the end, however, one plan is decided on—the equivalent of the blueprint, the script, the score, the scenario. During the past 100 years, theatre artists other than the playwright have sometimes assumed the work of creating a script. One is the auteur director, who not only conceives and originates the work but also directs and controls what happens onstage. Others creating scenarios—outlines for performances that are sometimes developed through improvisation—include ensemble theatre groups and performance artists.

It is important to understand, however, that these alternative approaches have not eliminated the playwright; rather, these other artists have taken the place of the playwright and become “dramatists.”

The creation of a blueprint, a scenario, or script remains an essential element of creating a theatrical event.

Anyone who creates a theatre piece faces the same challenge: how to turn nontheatrical material into a viable work for the stage. At what point in the story does the dramatic action begin? Who are the characters; what actions are they given; what words do they speak? How are interest and excitement developed and maintained? How is suspense created and increased? Will the work be serious or comic, funny or sad? In the process of answering these questions, a script emerges—a script that is both the embodiment of a vision and a blueprint for a production. Through the centuries, certain principles and strategies have emerged as most effective in creating a dramatic work. In Part Three we look at these principles and strategies, as well as the point of view that is adopted by the creator and that makes the work tragic, comic, or other dramatic type.

An architect conceives and designs a building in the way that a composer or dramatist creates a composition or a drama. The acclaimed architect Frank Gehry is shown here with his models for the new business school at the University of Technology in Sydney, Australia. (©Renee Nowytarger/Newspix/Getty Images)

## THE PLAYWRIGHT CREATES THE TEMPLATE

In undertaking to write a script, the playwright makes a number of decisions. His or her intention may be to entertain; to raise timeless questions, as is often the case in tragedy; or to make a political or social comment. In any case, the person or persons who create a theatre script set the tone, the agenda, and the approach to be followed by director, actors,

designers, and others. Lillian Hellman's *Little Foxes*, first staged in 1939, is usually categorized as a family melodrama. The play, set in the South, focuses on the battle over a family-owned business. Shown here is a 2017 production at the Manhattan Theatre Club directed by Daniel Sullivan and starring Laura Linney and Cynthia Nixon. (© Joan Marcus)

# Creating the World of the Play

Beginning in ancient times, in virtually every culture, there have been storytellers: a person who recounted tales to people gathered around a fire, describing heroic figures, daring deeds, frightening encounters, and humorous episodes. These chroniclers told stories of adventure, ghost stories, tall tales, horror stories, legends and histories, and fantastic fables.

In the theatre many people work together to present a story—actors and directors, designers and technicians—but it all begins with the theatre's storyteller: the playwright. Consciously or unconsciously the playwright makes a number of decisions that will determine exactly what kind of event audiences will see onstage. Among those decisions are what story will be told, the time and place of the story, the characters who will take part, the tone and emphasis of the story (will it be serious and tragic, or comic and humorous?), the way the story is told (the structure of the drama), and how it unfolds and ends. In the next chapter we will focus on decisions concerning the structure of the play and the characters who are featured. In the chapter after that we will turn to the question of whether the play is funny or sad, comic or tragic.

Before those decisions, however, there are other choices the playwright makes. For example, the playwright or dramatist determines what subject matter to present and which characters to include. Will the work be based on history—for example, an episode or incident from the American Civil War, from World War II, from the Vietnam War, or from the war in Iraq or Afghanistan? Perhaps the play will be based on biography—on the life of Eleanor Roosevelt or Martin Luther King Jr. Perhaps it will be an exploration of the creator's own life—facing the problems of growing up or facing a personal crisis as an adult. Still another possibility would be an imaginary story, either resembling everyday life or based on a fantasy or a nightmare.

### FOCUS AND EMPHASIS

A playwright can choose to emphasize a particular character trait in one play and its opposite in another. Henrik Ibsen, in his *Brand*, presents the leading character as a stark, uncompromising figure who will sacrifice everything—family, friends, love—for his principles. The leading character in Ibsen's *Peer Gynt*, however, is always compromising, always running away. Here we see actor Barret O'Brien in the role of Peer Gynt in a production at the Yale School of Drama directed by Mike Donahue. (©T Charles Erickson)

Along with the subject to be dramatized, there is also the question of whom and what to focus on. For example, a playwright can emphasize a particular character trait in one play and its opposite in another. This is what Henrik Ibsen often did. In his *Brand*, the leading character is a stark, uncompromising figure who will sacrifice everything—family, friends, love—for his principles. In contrast, the leading character in

Ibsen's *Peer Gynt* is just the opposite: always compromising, always running away. In creating a theatre piece there is great leeway in making a number of such decisions.

The playwright must also determine the order of events in a play. A good example is the way the myth of Electra was treated by three prominent tragic dramatists in Greece in the fifth century BCE. The story concerns Electra's revenge on her mother, Clytemnestra, and her stepfather, Aegisthus, for having murdered her natural father, Agamemnon. In carrying out her revenge, Electra enlists the help of Orestes, her brother, who has just returned from exile. In the versions by Aeschylus and Euripides, the stepfather is murdered first, and the mother, Clytemnestra, is murdered last. This puts emphasis on the terror of murdering one's own mother.

Sophocles, however, saw the story differently. He wanted to emphasize the idea that Electra and her brother were acting honorably and to play down the mother's murder. And so he reversed the order of the murders: he had the mother killed first; then he built up to the righteous murder of the stepfather as the final deed. The change made by Sophocles indicates the latitude writers, directors, and performance artists have in altering events to suit their artistic purposes. Still another choice open to a dramatist is what degree of seriousness to convey, or what point of view to take toward the subject of the drama: will it be comic or tragic, sympathetic or satiric, cynical or celebratory?

## THE SUBJECT AND VERB OF DRAMA: PEOPLE AND ACTION

Before turning to the specifics of creating a dramatic work, we should note an important point about the nature of drama. The subject of theatre is always people—their hopes, their joys, their foibles, their fears. In other words, if we were to construct a "grammar of theatre," the *subject* would be people: that is, dramatic characters. In grammar, every subject needs a verb; so, in the grammar of theatre, dramatic characters need some form of action that defines them.

### CONFLICT: THE CRUCIBLE OF DRAMA

Theatre requires conflict: between people; among family members; between opposing nations, ideologies, or political agendas. Here, in a scene from Lynn Nottage's play *Sweat* at the Roundabout Theatre in New York City, we see steelworkers in Reading, Pennsylvania, whose jobs are being threatened by changes in the global economy, turning on one another out of desperation. (©Joan Marcus)

The terms *to act* and *to perform* are used in theatre to denote the impersonation of a character by an actor or an actress, but these words also mean "to do something," or "to be active." The word *drama* derives from a Greek root, the verb *dran*, meaning "to do" or "to act." At its heart, theatre involves action. One way to provide action is to create a test or challenge for the characters. The American dramatist Arthur Miller named one of his plays *The Crucible*. Literally, a *crucible* is a vessel in which metal is tested by being exposed to extreme heat. Figuratively, a crucible has come to stand for any severe test of human worth and endurance—a trial by fire. In a sense, every play provides a crucible: a test devised by the playwright to show how the characters behave under conditions of stress. Through this test, the meaning of the play is brought out.

## STRUCTURAL CONVENTIONS: THE RULES OF THE GAME

Despite the options open to a dramatist with regard to the focus of the drama and the characters involved, there is one thing every dramatist is compelled to do if the work is to succeed as a theatre piece, and that is

to transform the raw material of the drama into a viable work for the stage. In order to make certain that the events onstage will be dynamic and that the characters will face a meaningful test, conventions or "ground rules" have evolved for dramatic structure. A good analogy would be the rules in games such as card games, board games, video games, and sports. In each case, rules are developed to ensure a lively contest.

Consider, for example, how theatre can be compared to sports. Theatre is more varied and complex than most sports events, and theatrical rules are not so clearly defined or so consciously imposed as rules in sports. Nevertheless, there are similarities that highlight the ways a play makes its impact.

130

## Limited Space

Most sports have a limited playing area. In some cases this consists of a confined space: a boxing ring, a basketball court, a baseball field. The playing area is clearly defined, and invariably there is some kind of "out of bounds."

Theatre, of course, is usually limited to a stage; but there is also a limit within the play itself. The action of a play is generally confined to a "world" of its own—that is, to a fictional universe that contains all the characters and events of the play—and none of the characters or actions moves outside the orbit of that world. Sometimes the world of a play is restricted to a single room.

In his play *No Exit*, Jean-Paul Sartre (1905–1980), a French existentialist, confines three characters to one room from which, as the title suggests, there is no escape. The room is supposed to be hell, and the three characters—a man, Garcin, and two women, Estelle and Inez—are confined there forever. Estelle loves Garcin, Garcin loves Inez, and Inez (a lesbian) loves Estelle. Each one, in short, loves the one who will not reciprocate, and by being confined to a room, they undergo permanent torture. There are numerous modern plays in which the action takes place in a single room, a good example being *'Night, Mother* by Marsha Norman (b. 1947), about a mother and daughter in crisis, which takes place in their rural home.

## Limited Time

Sports events put some limit on the duration of action. In football and basketball, there is a definite time limit. In golf, there is a given number of holes; in tennis, there is a limited number of sets. Theoretically, some

sports, such as baseball, are open-ended and could go on forever; but spectators tend to become impatient with this arrangement. Tennis, for instance, was originally open-ended but now has a “sudden death” or tiebreaker play-off when a set reaches six-all. A time limit or score limit ensures that the spectators can see a complete event, with a clear winner and loser and no loose ends. The time limit in theatre can be looked at in two ways: first, as the length of time it takes a performance to be completed; second, as the time limit placed on the characters within the framework of the play itself.

**LIMITED SPACE**

In his play *No Exit*, Jean-Paul Sartre presents three characters involved in an impossible love triangle confined to one room, from which, as the title suggests, there is no escape. Karen MacDonald as Estelle, Will Lebow as Garcin, and Paula Plum as Inez are shown in this scene, directed by Jerry Mouawad at the A.R.T. in Boston. (©T Charles Erickson)



Most theatrical performances last from one to three hours. In the drama festivals of ancient Greece, plays were presented for several days in a row. On a single day there might be a trilogy of three connecting plays followed by a short comic play. Still, even if we count a Greek trilogy as one play, it lasted only the better part of a day.

More important than the actual playing time of a performance is the time limit or deadline *within* the play. This means the time that is supposed to elapse during the events of the play, the time covered by those events—a few hours, a few days, or longer. Frequently, we find in a play a fixed period within which the characters must complete an action. For instance, at the end of the second act of Ibsen’s *A Doll’s House*, the heroine, Nora, is trying desperately to persuade her husband to put off until the following evening the opening of a letter that

she fears will establish her as a forger and will threaten their marriage. When he agrees, Nora says to herself, “Thirty-one hours to live.”

### Strongly Opposed Forces

Most sports, like many other types of games, involve two opposed teams or individuals. This ensures clear lines of force: the old guard versus the young upstarts, the home team versus the visitors. The musical *West Side Story* (based on Shakespeare’s *Romeo and Juliet*) features two opposed gangs, not unlike opposing teams in sports. In the simplest dramatic situations, one character directly opposes another. The man and woman, Julie and Jean, in Strindberg’s *Miss Julie* are a perfect example of characters bound to clash. Julie, an aristocrat, is the daughter of the owner of an estate. She has had an unhappy engagement and is deeply suspicious of men, but at the same time sexually attracted to them. Jean is a servant, an aggressive man who dreams of escaping his life of servitude and owning a hotel. These two characters experience strong forces of repulsion and attraction and are drawn together on a midsummer eve in a climactic encounter.

**STRONGLY OPPOSED FORCES**

Traditional plot structure calls for strongly opposing forces: the antagonist opposes the protagonist; one group opposes another. Here we see two brothers (played by Mark Ruffalo, left, and Tony Shalhoub in a 2017 Roundabout Theatre production directed by Terry Kinney) in conflict over long-simmering family issues, in Arthur Miller’s play *The Price*. (©Joan Marcus)

One device frequently used by dramatists to create friction or tension between forces is restricting the characters to the members of one family. Relatives have built-in rivalries and affinities: parents versus children, sisters versus brothers. Being members of the same family, they have no avenue of escape. Mythology, on which so much drama is based, abounds in familial relationships.

Shakespeare frequently set members of one family against one another: Hamlet opposes his mother; Lear opposes his daughters; Othello kills his wife, Desdemona. In modern drama, virtually every writer of note has dealt with close family situations: Ibsen, Strindberg, Chekhov, Williams, Miller, and Edward Albee (b. 1928), to mention a few. The American dramatist Eugene O'Neill wrote what many consider his finest play, *Long Day's Journey into Night*, about the four members of his own family.

## A Balance of Forces

In most sports, there are rules designed to ensure that the contest will be as equal as possible without coming to a draw. We all want our team to win, but we would rather see a close, exciting contest than a runaway. And so rules are set up, with handicaps or other devices to equalize the forces. In basketball or football, for instance, as soon as one team scores, the other team gets the ball so that it will have an opportunity to even the score. In theatre, a hard-fought and relatively equal contest is implicit in what has been said about opposing forces.

Even in the somewhat muted, low-key plays of Anton Chekhov, there is a balance of forces among various groups. In *The Cherry Orchard*, the owners of the orchard are set against the man who will acquire it; in *The Three Sisters*, the sisters are opposed in the possession of their home by their acquisitive sister-in-law.

## Incentive and Motivation

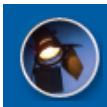
In sports, as in other kinds of games, a prize is offered to guarantee that the participants will give their best in an intense contest. In professional sports it is money; in amateur sports, a trophy, such as a cup. In addition, there is the glory of winning, as well as the accolades of television and the press and the plaudits of family and friends. In the same way, good drama never lacks incentive or motivation for its characters: Macbeth wants desperately to be king in *Macbeth*, and Blanche DuBois must find protection and preserve her dignity in *A Streetcar Named Desire*.

## CREATING STRUCTURE

Applying the principles and conventions outlined earlier, the dramatist sets about developing a dramatic structure for the theatre piece. Every work of art has some kind of structure, or framework. It may be loosely connected or tightly knit; the important thing is that the framework exists. In theatre, structure usually takes the form of a ***plot***, which is the arrangement of events or the selection and order of scenes in a play. Plot, in turn, is generally based on a *story*.

> **plot** As distinct from story, patterned arrangements of events and characters in a drama, with incidents selected and arranged for maximum dramatic impact.

133

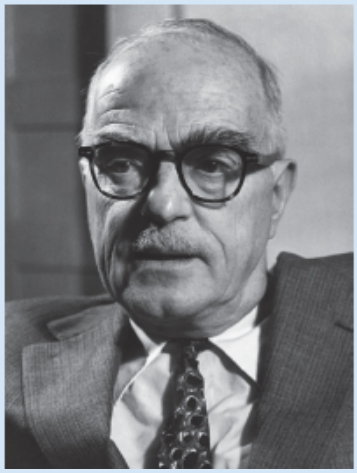


## IN FOCUS: GLOBAL CONNECTIONS

### The Asian Influence on the Playwrights Brecht and Wilder

During the past 100 years, many European and U.S. playwrights have been influenced by the structures, styles, and subject matter of traditional theatres of other continents. Two mid-twentieth-century dramatists from the West who were strongly influenced by Asian theatre were the German playwright Bertolt Brecht (1889–1956) and the American playwright Thornton Wilder (1897–1975). Brecht, for example, drew from Asian legends, and used techniques and styles borrowed from Chinese, Japanese, and Indian theatre. Chinese theatre and literature were to prove particularly important for his *Good Woman of Setzuan* (1938–1949), which was set in China; and *The Caucasian Chalk Circle* (1944–1945), based on a Chinese play, *The Story of the Chalk Circle*.

Bertolt Brecht. (©Hulton-Deutsch/Corbis Historical/Getty Images)



Thornton Wilder. (©Bettmann/Getty Images)

Both Brecht and Wilder had seen Beijing opera and adopted certain features of this dramatic style into their own work. Beijing opera (also called *jingju* and Peking opera) blends song, dance, martial arts, theatre, acrobatics, and dance and uses much symbolism. Beijing opera takes place on an almost bare stage (often with just a table and a few chairs onstage throughout) and uses simple props brought on by stage attendants, and symbolic movements by the actors. For example, an actor walking in a circle around the stage indicates a long journey; a banner with a fish design indicates water, although rolled up on a tray, the same banner would represent a fish. Brecht used such symbolic props and actions to achieve his alienation or distancing effect, which prevented the audience from identifying emotionally with the drama. In 1935, Brecht saw a performance by the Beijing opera star Mei Lanfang (1894–1961) in Moscow, and the following year

he wrote his essay “Alienation Effects in Chinese Acting,” which noted aspects of Beijing opera conducive to the distancing effect he desired.

Similarly, Wilder had been exposed to Chinese theatre first at an early age, when his father’s work took him to Hong Kong and Shanghai; and then as an adult, when he saw Mei Lanfang perform in New York in 1930. Aspects of Beijing opera that Wilder adopted can best be seen in his Pulitzer Prize–winning *Our Town* (1938). In this play, Wilder uses an almost bare stage with just two tables and six chairs positioned by the stage manager (who also acts as a narrator), and other locales are suggested by very simple alterations; in the third act, for example, the cemetery is suggested by just ten or twelve people sitting in chairs. Both playwrights illustrate the increasing prevalence of Asian influences in twentieth-century playwriting.

Prepared by Naomi Stubbs, Associate Professor, LaGuardia Community College, CUNY.



## Plot versus Story

Stories—narrative accounts of what people do—are as old as the human race, and they form the substance of daily conversation, of newspapers and television, of novels and films. But every medium presents a story in a different form. In theatre, the story must be presented in a limited period of time by living actors and actresses on a stage, and this requires selectivity.

It is important for us to recognize that the plot of a play differs from a story. A story is a full account of an event, or series of events, usually told in chronological order. Plot is a selection and arrangement of scenes taken from a story for presentation onstage. It is what actually happens onstage, not what is talked about. The story of Abraham Lincoln, for example, begins with his birth in a log cabin and continues to the day he was shot at Ford’s Theater in Washington. To create a play about Lincoln, a playwright would have to make choices. Would the dramatist include scenes in Springfield, Illinois, where Lincoln worked as a lawyer and held his famous debates with Stephen Douglas? Or would everything take place in Washington after Lincoln became president? Would there be scenes with Lincoln’s wife, Mary Todd, or would the other characters be only government and military

officials? The plot of a play about Abraham Lincoln and Mary Todd would have scenes and characters related primarily to their lives. The plot of a play about the Lincoln–Douglas debates would consist mostly of scenes relating to the debates.

Even when a play is based on a fictional story invented by the playwright, the plot must be more restricted and structured than the story itself: characters and scenes must still be selected and the sequence determined.

## The Opening Scene

The first scene of a drama starts the action and sets the tone and style for everything that follows. It tells us whether we are going to see a serious or a comic play and whether the play will deal with fantasy or with affairs of everyday life. The opening scene is a clue or signal about what lies ahead. It also sets the wheels of action in motion, giving the characters a shove and hurtling them toward their destination.

The playwright poses an initial problem for the characters, establishing an imbalance of forces or a disturbance in their equilibrium that compels them to respond. Generally, this imbalance has occurred just before the play begins, or it develops immediately after the play opens. In *Antigone*, for example, two brothers have killed each other just before the opening of the play. In *Hamlet*, "something is rotten in the state of Denmark," and early in the play the ghost of Hamlet's father tells Hamlet to seek revenge. At the beginning of *Romeo and Juliet*, the Capulets and the Montagues are at one another's throats in a street fight.

## Obstacles and Complications

Having met the initial challenge of the play, the characters then move through a series of steps—alternating between achievement and defeat, between hope and despair. The moment they seem to accomplish one goal, certain factors or events cut across the play to upset the balance and start the characters on another path. In theatre these may be ***obstacles***, which are impediments put in a character's way; or they may be ***complications***—outside forces or new twists in the plot introduced at an opportune moment.

**obstacle** That which delays or prevents the achieving of a goal by a character. An obstacle creates complication and conflict.

**complication** Introduction, in a play, of a new force, which creates a new balance of power and entails a delay in reaching the climax.

### THE OPENING SCENE

The first scene of a play is crucial, usually setting the location; establishing mood and tone; and introducing characters, themes, and action. A famous opening scene is that in Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet*, in which the Capulet and Montague families confront each other in a street fight. Shown here is the opening scene in a production directed by Dominic Dromgoogle at Shakespeare's Globe, with Ukweli Roach as Tybalt and Philip Cumbus as Mercutio in the foreground. (©Geraint Lewis)

Shakespeare's *Hamlet* provides numerous examples of obstacles and complications. Hamlet stages a "play within the play" in order to confirm that his uncle Claudius has killed his father. Claudius reacts to the play in a manner that makes his guilt obvious. But when Hamlet first tries to kill Claudius, he discovers him at prayer. An obstacle has been thrown into Hamlet's path: If Claudius dies while praying, he may go to heaven rather than to hell. Since Hamlet does not want Claudius to go to heaven, he does not kill him.

Later, Hamlet is in his mother's bedroom when he hears a noise behind a curtain. Surely Claudius is lurking there, but when Hamlet thrusts his sword through the curtain, he finds that he has killed Polonius, the father of Ophelia, the young lady he is close to. This provides Claudius with an excuse to send Hamlet to England with Rosencrantz and Guildenstern, who carry with them a letter instructing the king of England to murder Hamlet. Hamlet escapes that trap and returns to Denmark. Now, at last, it seems that he can carry out his

revenge. But on his return, he discovers that Ophelia has killed herself while he was away, and her brother, Laertes, is seeking revenge on him. This complicates the situation once again, as Hamlet is prevented from meeting Claudius head-on because he must also deal with Laertes. In the end Hamlet does carry out his mission, but only after many interruptions.

## Crisis and Climax

As a result of conflicts, obstacles, and complications in a play, the characters become involved in a series of ***crises***. A play usually builds from one crisis to another. The first crisis will be resolved only to have the action lead to a subsequent crisis. The final and most significant crisis is referred to as the ***climax***. In the climax the issues of the play are resolved, either happily or, in the case of tragedies, unhappily, often with the death of the hero or heroine.

**crises** A point in a play when events and opposing forces are at a crucial moment, and when the course of further action will be determined. There may be a series of crises leading to the definitive climax.

**climax** The highpoint in the development of a dramatic plot.

136

It should be noted that a series of crises leading to a climax in a drama applies most readily to traditional plays—that is, works created before the modern period. During the past 100 years, a number of variations of classic plot structure have appeared in which the notion of a climax has been either eliminated or minimized. These approaches to structure will be looked at in detail in the chapter "Theatrical Genres."

### PLOT COMPLICATIONS IN *HAMLET*

In conventional plot structure, the action is prolonged and tension is increased by a series of problems confronting the characters. The twists and turns in the plot of Shakespeare's *Hamlet* are an example. Shown here is Michael Benz as Hamlet, preparing to kill King Claudius (Dickon Tyrrell), who he thinks has murdered his father. But Hamlet hesitates because he does not want to send Claudius to heaven, as he fears might happen if he kills Claudius at prayer. This scene is from a production at The Broad Stage in Santa Monica, California. (©Noel Vasquez/ WireImage/Getty Images)

## POINT OF VIEW

In addition to structure and character portrayal, the person or persons creating a dramatic work must determine the point of view represented in the work: will it be tragic or comic, humorous or sad, or perhaps a mixture of the two? People and events can always be interpreted in widely different ways. How we perceive them depends on our point of view. There is a familiar story of two people looking at a bottle that is partly full of wine. The optimist will say that the bottle is half-full, the pessimist that it is half-empty.

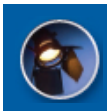
Anyone familiar with the presentation of evidence in a courtroom—in a trial involving an automobile accident, for instance—knows that different witnesses, each of whom may be honest and straightforward, will describe the same incident differently. One will say that she saw a minivan go through a stoplight and hit a blue car; another will say that he remembers clearly that the blue car pulled out before the light had changed and blocked the path of the van. The same variation in viewpoint affects our assessment of politicians and other public figures. To some people, a certain politician will be a dedicated, sincere public servant, interested only in what is best for the nation. But to others, the same politician will be a hypocrite and a charlatan.

Point of view is particularly important in the arts. Under ordinary circumstances, those who attempt to influence our point of view, such as advertisers and politicians, frequently disguise their motives. They use subtle, indirect techniques to convince us that they are not trying to impose their

137

views on us, though people who understand the process know that this is exactly what an advertiser or a politician is trying to do. In the arts, on the other hand, the imposition of a point of view is direct and deliberate. The artist makes it clear that he or she is looking at the world from a highly personal and perhaps unusual angle, possibly even turning the world upside down.

138



## IN FOCUS: FEMINIST PLAY STRUCTURE

As a result of the women's movement of the 1970s, some feminist theatre critics examined Aristotle's *Poetics* and suggested that his concept of the ideally structured tragedy, which had been the template for Western drama for centuries, reflected the West's dominant male culture. Radical feminist theorists, for instance, saw the plot complications, crisis, and denouement in tragedy as a duplication of the male sexual experience of foreplay, arousal, and climax. Other feminist critics viewed traditional linear, cause-and-effect plot development as a reflection of the step-by-step approach that men have traditionally used to empower their lives and control society. The leading figures, or subjects, of these plays, according to feminist critics, were invariably male.

To counter this Aristotelian tradition, feminist theatre critics and practitioners aimed to create what Professor Sue-Ellen Case, in her groundbreaking book *Feminism and Theatre* (1988), called a "new poetics." The idea was to explore a "women's form" of drama, and also to construct new, feminist ways of analyzing and responding to theatrical texts and performance.

Among the pioneers was the French feminist and playwright Hélène Cixous (b. 1937), who, in her famous essay "The Laugh of the Medusa," called for women to create a new language that would be suggestive and ambiguous. Other feminists called for a dramatic form that stressed "contiguity," a form, writes Case, that is "fragmentary rather than whole" and "interrupted rather than complete." This form is often cyclical and without the single climax. It is frequently open-ended and offers woman as subject. One example is *Fefu and Her Friends*, written and directed in 1977 by the Cuban-born American dramatist Maria Irene Fornés (b. 1930). Instead of a plot, there is a cyclical, physical action; and in place of logical cause and effect, Fornés writes each scene as though it were a new event. There is no hero; the subject of the play is a group of educated women sharing thoughts and ideas.

Not all women have embraced the new poetics. But increasingly, feminists have experimented with dramatic form and theatrical styles to confront, expose, and rewrite what they see as centuries of male cultural domination.

Prepared by Alexis Greene.

In films, for example, we have become familiar with the various points of view, angles of vision, and perspectives that the camera selects for us. In a close-up, we do not see an entire room or even an entire person—we see one small detail: hands on a computer keyboard or a finger on the trigger of a gun. In a medium shot we see more—a couple embracing, perhaps—but still only part of the scene. In an exterior scene we might have a panorama of the Grand Canyon or a military parade. The camera also predetermines the angle from which we see the action. In a scene emphasizing the strength of a figure, the camera might look up from below to show a person looming from the top of a flight of stairs. In another scene we might look down on the action. In still other instances the camera might be tilted so that a scene looks off balance; a scene might be shot out of focus so that it is hazy or blurred, or it might be filmed through a special filter.

Similarly, the viewpoint of the theatre artist tells us how to interpret the words and actions of the characters we see onstage; it provides a key to understanding the entire experience.

### The Dramatist's Point of View

"There is nothing either good or bad, but thinking makes it so," Shakespeare wrote in *Hamlet*. To this could be added a parallel statement: "There is nothing either funny or sad, but thinking makes it so." One's point of view determines whether one takes a subject seriously or laughs at it, whether it is an object of pity or of ridicule. Horace Walpole (1717–1797), an English author, wrote: "This world is a comedy to those that think, a tragedy to those that feel." Walpole's epigram underlines the fact that people see the world differently.

## THE INDIVIDUAL POINT OF VIEW

In addition to the social and cultural climate, the individual artist's outlook also determines whether a work will be serious or comic. Even two people writing in the same country at the same time will view the world differently. In seventeenth-century France, Racine wrote mostly tragedies, such as *Phèdre*. Shown at left is a London production at the National Theatre featuring Helen Mirren in the title role with Dominic

Cooper as Hippolytus, directed by Nicholas Hytner. However, in the same period Racine's countryman and contemporary, Molière, wrote comedies like *The Bourgeois Gentleman*, with French actor Pascal Reneric (left) as Monsieur Jourdain and French actor Francis Leplay as Maitre de Philosophie, shown here in a 2015 production at the Château de Chambord in France. (left: ©Geraint Lewis; right: ©Guillaume Souvant/AFP/Getty Images)

It is difficult to say just why some people look at the world and weep while others look at it and laugh, but there is no question that they do. In theatre, point of view begins when a dramatist, a director, or a performance artist takes a strong personal view of a subject, deciding that it is grave, heroic, or humorous. As in other art forms, opportunities for selectivity are greater than in everyday life; hence a point of view can be adopted in drama consciously and deliberately. In the case of a play, point of view is incorporated by the playwright into the script itself, with characters being given words to speak and actions to perform that convey a certain attitude. In a serious work the writer will choose language and actions suggesting sobriety and sincerity. Take the lines spoken by Shakespeare's Othello:

## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. If you were to write a play about your life, what would you choose as your opening scene? What would some of your complications be? Would there be a climactic moment?
2. If you were to write a play about a family you know (your own or another), what point of view would you take? Why? Are there strongly opposed forces or balanced forces in this family?
3. If you were told you were going to have to attend a play that lasted over four hours, what would your reaction be? Why? What are your traditional expectations about the space and time of a play?
4. After watching a popular film, describe how the opening scene aids in setting the action. Describe one or two of the complications in the film. Can you discuss the film's point of view?

Oh, now for ever

> Farewell the tranquil mind! Farewell content!
> Farewell the plumed troop and the big wars
> that make ambition virtue!

These words express unmistakably Othello's profound sense of loss.

Another writer might take what is ordinarily a serious subject and treat it humorously. A good example is Arthur Kopit (b. 1937), who gave a comic twist to a dead body in his play *Oh, Dad. Poor Dad. Mama's Hung You in the Closet, and I'm Feelin' So Sad*. The title itself, with its mocking tone and its unusual length, makes it clear from the beginning that Kopit wants us to laugh at his subject. Once the playwright's intentions are known, the director and the performers transmit them to the audience.

### Society's Point of View

In discussing point of view, we cannot overlook the role that society plays in the viewpoint adopted by an artist such as a playwright. As discussed in the chapter "Background and Expectations of the Audience," there is a close relationship between theatre and society. This relationship manifests itself particularly in the point of view artists adopt toward their subject matter.

Tragedy, for example, generally occurs in periods when society as a whole assumes a certain attitude toward people and toward the universe. Two periods conducive to the creation of tragedy were the golden age of Greece in the fifth century BCE and the Renaissance in Europe during the fourteenth, fifteenth, and sixteenth centuries CE. Both periods incorporated two ideas essential to tragic drama: on the one hand, a concept of human beings as capable of extraordinary accomplishments; and on the other, the notion that the world is potentially cruel and unjust. A closer look at these two periods will demonstrate how they reflect these two viewpoints.

## A CLIMATE FOR TRAGEDY

The worldview of a society is one factor that determines whether it will embrace and encourage tragedy. Some cultures, such as Athens in the fifth century bce and Elizabethan England, were particularly conducive to the creation of tragic drama. Shakespeare's *King Lear* is a good example. Shown here are John Lithgow (left) and Clarke Peters (right) in a production of the Elizabethan tragedy, directed by Daniel Sullivan at the Delacorte Theater in New York in 2014. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

In both the fifth century BCE in Greece and the Renaissance in continental Europe and England, human beings were exalted above everything else. The gods and nature were given a much less prominent place in the scheme of things. The men and women of those periods considered the horizons of human achievement unlimited. In the fifth century BCE, Greece was enjoying its golden age in commerce, politics, science, and art; nothing seemed impossible in the way of architecture, mathematics, trade, or philosophy. The same was true in Europe and England during the centuries of the Renaissance. Columbus had reached the new world in 1492, and the possibilities for trade and exploration appeared infinite. Science and the arts were on the threshold of a new day as well.

In sculpture during the two periods, the human figure was glorified as it rarely had been before or has been since, and the celebration of the individual was apparent in all the arts as well, including drama. The Greek dramatist Sophocles exclaimed:

> Numberless are the world's wonders, but none
> More wonderful than man.

And in the Renaissance, Shakespeare has Hamlet say:

> What a piece of work is man! How noble in reason! How infinite in faculty! In form, in moving, how express and admirable! In action how like an angel! In apprehension how like a god!

141

## PLAYING YOUR PART: THINKING ABOUT THEATRE

1. Think of a play you have read or seen where the main character encounters one impediment or roadblock after another. Describe the various obstacles that must be overcome before the end of the play.
2. Think of a play or musical you have seen or read where two major characters are in conflict with one another. Describe the two characters and explain the source of their conflict. How does it play out?
3. Think of a situation some people saw as very serious, but another person viewed as humorous. Explain what you believe led different people to see it so differently. What was your own feeling —was the incident funny or sad?

The credo of both ages was expressed by Protagoras, a Greek philosopher of the fifth century BCE:

> Man is the measure of all things.

But there is another side to the tragic coin. Along with this optimistic, humanistic view, there was a faculty for admitting, unflinchingly, that life can be—and frequently is—cruel, unjust, and even meaningless. Shakespeare put it this way in *King Lear:*

> As flies to wanton boys, are we to the gods;
> They kill us for their sport.

In *Macbeth*, he expressed it in these words:

> Out, out brief candle!
> Life's but a walking shadow, a poor player
> That struts and frets his hour upon the stage
> And then is heard no more; it is a tale

Told by an idiot, full of sound and fury,
Signifying nothing.

These periods of history—the Greek golden age and the Renaissance—were expansive enough to encompass both strains: the greatness of human beings on the one hand, and the cruelty of life on the other.

To clarify the distinction between the tragic point of view and other points of view, we need only examine periods in history when one or both of the attitudes forming the tragic viewpoint were absent or were expressed quite differently. In continental Europe and Great Britain, the eighteenth century was known as the *age of enlightenment*, and the nineteenth century as the *century of progress*. Enlightenment and progress: together they express the philosophy that men and women can analyze any problem—poverty, violence, disease, injustice—and, by applying their intelligence, solve it. An age of unbounded optimism in which no problem is thought insurmountable, and a sense of moral justice runs strong, is not one in which tragic drama can easily emerge.

Before we examine tragedy, comedy, and other dramatic forms in detail we will look first at dramatic structure and dramatic characters—the way a playwright moves the action from scene to scene to develop a plot and creates individual stage characters.

142

## SUMMARY

1. Drama is written and produced for different purposes: to move us, to involve us, to amuse us, to entertain us, to inform us, to shock us, to raise our awareness, to inspire us. The dramatist must determine which of these purposes the work being created will serve.
2. The action of a play frequently consists of a test, or crucible, for the characters, in which their true nature is defined. This test involves some form of conflict.
3. Dramatic conventions, ensuring a strong plot and continuation of tension, are analogous to rules in sports. In both sports and theatre there are limited spaces or playing areas, time limits imposed on the action, strongly opposing forces, evenly matched contestants, and prizes or goals for the participants.
4. A play generally begins with an imbalance of forces or a loss of equilibrium by one of the characters; this propels

the characters to action.

5. As a play progresses, the characters encounter a series of obstacles and complications in attempting to fulfill their objectives or realize their goals. These encounters produce the tension and conflict of drama.
6. Generally, every work of art, including theatre, has some kind of structure. In theatre, structure usually takes the form of a plot.
7. A dramatic plot is not the same as a story. A story is a complete account of an episode or a sequence of events, but a plot is what we see onstage. In a plot the events have been selected from a story and arranged in a certain sequence.
8. Point of view is the way we look at things: the perspective, or angle of vision, from which we view people, places, and events.
9. In the arts, the establishment of a point of view is direct and deliberate; it is an integral part of a performance or work of art, giving the audience a clue about how to interpret and understand what is being seen and heard.
10. Whether a theatre piece is serious, comic, or some combination of the two depends on the point of view of the artists who create it.
11. The viewpoint of society also affects the outlook of individual artists in terms of whether they create tragedy, comedy, or other genres.

Design Elements: In Focus box (spotlight): ©Exactostock/SuperStock; Playing Your Part box (theatre seats): ©Ron Chapple/Getty Images

## EPISODIC DRAMATIC STRUCTURE

In different periods and different countries, various approaches to dramatic structure have been followed. Climactic structure was created by the Greeks and adopted by many cultures in the years after that. Another structure is episodic, found in the plays of Shakespeare and his contemporaries as well as modern playwrights such as Bertolt Brecht. Here we see a

scene from Shakespeare's *The Tempest* with Antony Sher (right) as Prospero and Atandwa Kani (left) as Ariel in the joint Baxter Theatre and Royal Shakespeare Company production, directed by Janice Honeyman at the Courtyard Theatre, Stratford-upon-Avon, in 2009. (©Robbie Jack/Corbis Entertainment/Getty Images)



# 7

# Dramatic Structure and Dramatic Characters

## DRAMATIC STRUCTURE

Throughout theatre history, we find basic dramatic forms reappearing. In Western civilization, a form adopted in Greece in the fifth century bce emerges, somewhat altered, in France in the seventeenth century. The same form shows up once more in Norway in the late nineteenth century, and is repeated throughout the twentieth century. This form can be referred to as *climactic*. Another, contrasting form, best illustrated by the plays of Shakespeare, can be called *episodic*. Through most of the history of Western theatre, one or the other of these two forms—or some combination of the two—has predominated.

In addition, there are other forms. An approach in which dramatic episodes are strung together without any apparent connection has emerged in a new guise in recent times. Structure based on a ritual or pattern is both old and new. And musical theatre has a structure of its own. The characteristics of the basic types will be clearer when we look at each separately, beginning with climactic form. We then turn to the episodic structure, and then take up additional forms.

### Characteristics of Climactic Structure

Climactic structure which, as we noted above began with the Greek classic theatre, follows specific guidelines and tenets that have always defined this dramatic structure. In the section below, we enumerate and explain the characteristics of climactic structure that have been employed by playwrights during successive periods of theatre history.

146

## CHARACTERISTICS OF CLIMACTIC DRAMA

A climactic play usually has a minimum number of characters, covers a short space of time, and takes place in a limited space—often one room. A good example is Ibsen's *Hedda Gabler*, with Roxanna Hope in the title role in the Hartford Stage Company production directed by Jennifer Tarver. (© T Charles Erickson)

**The Plot Begins Late in the Story** The first hallmark of climactic drama is that the plot begins quite late in the story. Ibsen's *Ghosts*, written in 1881, is a clear example. Before *Ghosts* begins, a number of events have already occurred: Mrs. Alving has married a dissolute man who fathers an illegitimate child by another woman and contracts a venereal disease. When she discovers her husband's infidelity early in their marriage, Mrs. Alving visits the family minister, Pastor Manders, telling him she wishes to end the marriage. Although Manders is attracted to her and realizes that she has been wronged, for religious reasons, he sends her back to her husband with whom she stays out of a sense of duty. She does, however, send her son, Oswald, away to escape his father's influence. When her husband dies, Mrs. Alving builds an orphanage in his honor to camouflage his true character. At this point—as is typical with climactic plot structure—the play itself has still not begun. It begins later, when the son returns home and the facts of the past are unearthed, precipitating the crisis.

In climactic structure the play begins when all the roads of the past converge at a crucial intersection in the present, at the ***climax***, a situation that has two important consequences. First, it is frequently necessary to explain what has happened earlier by having one or more characters report the information to others. The technical term for this background information is ***exposition***. A second consequence of the plot beginning late is that the time span covered within a climactic play is usually brief—in many cases a matter of a few hours, and at the most a few days. Some playwrights, attempting to push events as near the climax as possible, have stage time (the time we



imagine is passing when we are watching a play) coincide with real time (that is, clock time). An example is Tennessee Williams's *Cat on a Hot Tin Roof:* the events depicted in the story last the same time as the play itself—a little over two hours.

**climax** The highpoint in the development of a dramatic plot.

**exposition** Information necessary for an understanding of the story but not covered by the action onstage; events or knowledge from the past, or occurring outside the play, that must be introduced so that the audience can understand the characters or plot.

**Scenes, Locales, and Characters Are Limited** Climactic drama typically has a limited number of long segments, or acts. In Greek plays there are generally five episodes separated by choral interludes. The French neoclassicists invariably used five acts. For much of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, three acts were standard. Today, the norm is two acts, though the long one-act play performed without intermission is also frequently presented.

Limiting the scenes in a play usually entails restricting the locale as well, sometimes to one room or one house. Along with restriction of locale, there is a restriction of characters. Greek drama generally has four or five principal characters. Many modern plays have no more than a similar number of main characters.

**Construction Is Tight** Because it is carefully constructed, a climactic play fits together tightly, with no loose ends. It is like a chain linked in a cause-and-effect relationship. As in a detective story, event A leads to event B; B leads to C, causing D; D leads in turn to E; and so on. Just as the time frame and the restricted space afford no exit, so the chain of events is locked in. Once the action begins, there is no stopping it. Because climactic dramas are so carefully and tightly constructed, they

are frequently referred to as ***well-made plays***. In this form the aim is always to make events so inevitable that there is no escape—at least not until the very last moment, when a ***deus ex machina*** may intervene to untangle the knot. (*Deus ex machina* means "god from the machine," referring to the apparatus in Greek theatre when gods were brought down from the top of the stage house at the end of a play to resolve the action. The term has since become used to describe any outside intervention at the end of a play to bring the play to a close.)

> **well-made plays** Type of play popular in the nineteenth century and early twentieth century that combines apparent plausibility of incident and surface realism with a tightly constructed, highly causal, and contrived plot.
>
> **deus ex machina** ("DEH-oos eks MAH-kih-nah") Literally, "god from a machine," a resolution device in classic Greek drama; hence, intervention of supernatural forces—usually at the last moment—to save the action from its logical conclusion. In modern drama, an arbitrary and coincidental solution.

Clearly, the method of climactic drama is compression. All the elements— characters, locale, events—are severely restricted. As if by centripetal motion, everything is forced to the center, in a tighter and tighter nucleus, making the ultimate eruption that much more explosive.

## Characteristics of Episodic Structure

When we turn to episodic structure, we see a sharp contrast to climactic structure. Episodic drama begins relatively early in the story and does not compress the action but expands it. The forces in episodic drama are centrifugal, moving out to embrace additional elements. Also, unlike climactic drama, episodic plays do not necessarily follow a close cause-and-effect development.

**People, Places, and Events Proliferate** In a typical episodic play the action begins relatively early in the story and covers an extensive period of time—sometimes many years. It also ranges over a number of locations. In one play we can go anywhere: to a small antechamber, a large banquet hall, the open countryside, a mountaintop.

Short scenes (some only half a page or so in print) alternate with longer ones. Two examples of episodic dramas are Shakespeare's *Antony and Cleopatra*, which has thirty-four characters and forty-plus scenes; and the Spanish playwright Lope de Vega's *The Sheep Well*, which has twenty-six characters and seventeen scenes.

## *King Lear* by William Shakespeare

**I-1 Lear's Palace.** Kent and Gloucester discuss the division of the kingdom and Gloucester's sons. Lear comes. The division of kingdom: first Goneril and then Regan praise Lear. Kent intercedes and is banished. Gloucester enters with Burgundy and France. Burgundy will not have Cordelia without a dowry. France takes her. Goneril and Regan begin plotting. (305 lines)

**I-2 Gloucester's Castle.** Edmund's soliloquy and scheme. Letter and plan against Edgar begins. Gloucester leaves, Edgar comes, scheme furthered. (173 lines)

**I-3 Albany's Palace.** Goneril and Oswald scheming. (26 lines)

**I-4 The Same.** Kent enters disguised; Lear comes, then Oswald, Kent trips him. Fool enters and talks to Lear. Goneril comes, chides Lear. He curses her and leaves. Goneril, Albany, and Oswald conspire further, then leave. (336 lines)

**I-5 In Front of Palace.** Lear, Kent, Fool. Lear sends letters to Gloucester, starts to Regan. (46 lines)

**II-1 A Court in Gloucester's Castle.** Edmund and Curan. Edgar comes, then leaves. Edmund stabs himself, Gloucester comes, Edmund blames Edgar, Gloucester finds letter. Cornwall and Regan enter. (The forces of evil join.) (129 lines)

**II-2 Before Gloucester's Castle.** Kent confronts Oswald, Cornwall comes; Kent put in stocks. (168 lines)

**II-3 The Open Country.** Edgar's soliloquy: he will disguise and abase himself. (21 lines)

**II-4 Before Gloucester's Castle.** Lear comes, sees Kent; confronts Regan. She is stubborn too. Goneril comes. He sees a league. Begs; leaves as storm begins. (306 lines)

**III-1 A Heath.** Kent with a Gentleman. (55 lines)

**III-2 Another Part of Heath.** Lear comes with Fool. Storm and insanity begin. Kent comes. (95 lines)

**III-3 Gloucester's Castle.** Gloucester tells Edmund of divisions between dukes and of letter from France. (23 lines)

**III-4 The Heath before a Hovel.** Lear, Kent, Fool—storm. Lear's madness and beginning self-realization. Edgar joins them, then Gloucester with a torch. (172 lines)

**III-5 Gloucester's Castle.** Cornwall and Edmund scheming. (22 lines)

**III-6 A Farmhouse Near Gloucester's Castle.** The mock trial for Lear. Kent, Gloucester, Fool, Edgar. All leave but Edgar. (112 lines)

**III-7 Gloucester's Castle.** Cornwall, Regan, Goneril, Edmund. They send for Gloucester (the "traitor"), prepare to blind him. Servant is killed; they pluck out Gloucester's eyes. (106 lines)

**IV-1 The Heath.** Edgar. Enter Gloucester, blind. Edgar prepares cliff scene. (79 lines)

**IV-2 Before Albany's Palace.** Goneril and Edmund. Enter Oswald. Intrigue of Goneril and Edmund. Albany comes; Goneril chides him. Servant comes telling of Cornwall's death. (979 lines)

**IV-3 French Camp Near Dover.** Kent and Gentleman report Lear ashamed to see Cordelia. (55 lines)

**IV-4 French Camp.** Cordelia and Doctor enter; plan to go to England. (29 lines)

**IV-5 Gloucester's Castle.** Regan and Oswald. She says Edmund is for her. (40 lines)

**IV-6 Country Near Dover.** Gloucester and Edgar—jumping scene. Lear comes, mad. The two wronged madmen together. Gentleman comes, then Oswald attacks him. Edgar kills Oswald, finds letters to Edmund—Goneril is plotting Albany's death in order to marry Edmund. (283 lines)

**IV-7 Tent in French Camp.** Cordelia and Kent. Lear brought in. The awakening and reconciliation. (96 lines)

**V-1 British Camp Near Dover.** Edmund, Regan, etc. Goneril comes, also Albany. Edgar enters, leaves. (69 lines)

**V-2 A Field between Camps.** Cordelia and Lear cross. Edgar and Gloucester come. (11 lines)

**V-3 British Camp.** Edmund comes, Lear and Cordelia are prisoners; are sent away. Edmund sends note with guard. Enter Albany, Goneril, and Regan, who quarrel. Edgar comes; challenges Edmund and wounds him. Truth about Goneril's plan comes out; she leaves. Edgar talks. Goneril and Regan are brought in dead. Edmund dies. Lear enters with the dead Cordelia; then he dies. Kent and Albany pronounce the end. (326 lines)

## EPISODIC STRUCTURE IN *KING LEAR*

Shakespeare's play sets up a juxtaposition of scenes. Note how the scenes move from place to place and alternate from one group of characters to another. Note, too, that the scenes move back and forth from intimate scenes to those involving a number of characters (an alternation of public and private scenes) and that the length of the scenes varies, with short scenes followed by longer ones, and so forth. This structure gives the play its dynamics, its rhythm, and its meaning.

149

150

## EPISODIC STRUCTURE: MANY CHARACTERS, PLACES, AND EVENTS

A good example of the typically wide-ranging episodic structure is *Measure for Measure* by William Shakespeare. Shown here is a 2015 production directed by Dominic Dromgoole at Shakespeare's Globe in London. In this scene are the actors (from left to right): Paul Rider as Escalus, Kurt Egylawan as Angelo, Dean Nolan as Elbow/Barnadine, Petra Massey as Mistress Overdone, Dennis Herdman as Froth, and Trevor Fox as Pompey. (©Nigel Norrington/Camera Press/Redux)

**There May Be a Parallel Plot or Subplot** In place of compression, episodic drama offers other techniques. One is the *parallel plot*, or ***subplot***. In *King Lear*, by Shakespeare, Lear has three daughters, two evil and one good. The two evil daughters have convinced their father that they are good and that their sister is wicked. In the subplot—a counterpart of this main plot—the Earl of Gloucester has two sons, one loyal and one disloyal, and the disloyal son has deceived his father into thinking he is the loyal one. Both old men have misunderstood their children's true worth, and in the end both are punished for their mistakes: Lear is bereft of his kingdom and his sanity; Gloucester loses his eyes. The Gloucester plot, with complications and developments of its own, is a parallel and reinforcement of the Lear plot.

**subplot** Sometimes referred to as parallel plot, a secondary plot that reinforces or runs parallel to the major plot in an episodic play.

**Juxtaposition and Contrast Occur** Another technique of episodic drama is *juxtaposition* or *contrast*. Rather than moving in linear fashion, the action alternates between elements. Short scenes alternate with longer scenes, public scenes alternate with private scenes, we move from one group to an opposing group, and comic scenes alternate with serious scenes.

An example of this last alternation comes in Shakespeare's *Macbeth*. Just after Macbeth has murdered King Duncan, there is a knock on the door of the castle. This is one of the most serious moments of the play, but the man who goes to open the door is a comical character, a drunken porter, whose speech is a humorous interlude in the grim business of the play. In other words, comedy alternates with tragedy.

## IN FOCUS: COMPARING CLIMACTIC AND EPISODIC STRUCTURES

### Comparing Climactic and Episodic Forms

| Climactic | Episodic |
|---|---|
| 1. Plot begins late in the story, toward the very end or climax. | 1. Plot begins relatively early in the story and moves through a series of episodes. |
| 2. Covers a short space of time, perhaps a few hours or at most a few days. | 2. Covers a longer period of time: weeks, months, and sometimes many years. |
| 3. Contains a few solid, extended scenes, such as three acts with each act comprising one long scene. | 3. Has many short, fragmented scenes; sometimes an alternation of short and long scenes. |
| 4. Occurs in a restricted locale, such as one room or one house. | 4. May range over an entire city or even several countries. |
| 5. Number of characters is severely limited—usually no more than six or eight. | 5. Has a profusion of characters, sometimes several dozen. |
| 6. Plot is linear and moves in a single line with few subplots or counterplots. | 6. Is frequently marked by several threads of action, such as two parallel plots, or scenes of comic relief in a serious play. |
| | 7. Scenes are juxtaposed to one another. An event may result from several causes; or it may have no apparent cause, but arises in a network or web of circumstances. |

7. Line of action proceeds in a cause-and-effect chain.
8. The characters and events are closely linked in a sequence of logical, almost inevitable development.

The table outlines the chief characteristics of climactic and episodic forms and illustrates the differences between them. It is clear that the climactic and episodic forms differ from each other in their fundamental approaches. One emphasizes constriction and compression on all fronts; the other takes a far broader view and aims at a cumulative effect, piling up people, places, and events.

## COMIC SCENES ALTERNATE WITH SERIOUS SCENES

One device possible in episodic drama is the juxtaposition and alternation of serious and comic scenes. Shakespeare often incorporates this technique in his plays. In the grave-digging scene in *Hamlet*, comedy interrupts very serious scenes involving the death of Ophelia and other tragic events. Shown here is Joshua McGulre as Hamlet with the skull of Yorick, in Shakespeare's Globe production, directed by Dominic Dromgoole. (©Geraint Lewis)

## COMBINING CLIMACTIC AND EPISODIC STRUCTURES

Though we often separate the episodic and climactic structures, there have been a number of times when the two forms were combined, joining together characteristics from each. Good examples are plays from the English Restoration and, 200 years later, the plays of the Russian dramatist Anton Chekhov. Shown here is a scene from a Restoration comedy, William Congreve's *The Way of the World*, directed by Michael Kahn at the Shakespeare Theatre Company. The play has some of the economy of climactic drama but features a number of characters, as shown here, which is typical of the episodic form. (©Carol Rosegg)

**The Overall Effect Is Cumulative** With regard to cause and effect in episodic drama, the impression created is of events piling up: a tsunami, a tidal wave of circumstances and emotions sweeping over the characters. Rarely does one letter, one telephone call, or one piece of information determine the fate of a character. Time and again, Hamlet has proof that Claudius has killed his father; however, what eventually leads him to kill Claudius is not a single piece of hard evidence but a rush of events. In modern theatre both climactic form and episodic form have been adopted, sometimes by the same playwright. This is characteristic of the diversity of our age. Ibsen, for example, wrote a number of "well-made" or climactic plays—*Ghosts*, *A*

*Doll's House*, and others—but also several episodic plays, such as *Brand* and *Peer Gynt*.

### Combinations of Climactic and Episodic Form

There is no requirement that a play be exclusively episodic or exclusively climactic. It is true that during certain periods one form or the other has been predominant. Also, it is not easy to mix the two forms because—as we have seen—each has its own laws and its own inner logic. In several periods, however, they have been successfully integrated.

153

A group of plays that combine elements of the climactic and episodic forms are the comedies of the Restoration period in England (from 1660, when the English monarchy was restored, to 1700). These comedies usually had a large cast, a subplot as well as a main plot, and several changes of scene. They did not, however, cover extended periods of time or move rapidly from place to place as the plays of Shakespeare did.

The climactic and episodic forms have frequently been combined successfully in the modern period. The Russian playwright Chekhov, who generally wrote about one principal action and set his plays in one household, usually has more characters than is customary in climactic drama. For instance, there are fifteen in *The Cherry Orchard*. Frequently, too, Chekhov's plays cover a period of several months or years.

## RITUAL IN MODERN THEATRE

Many avant-garde playwrights and groups use ceremonies and rituals. Ceremonies and rituals are also used in many

contemporary dramas. Paula Vogel's *Indecent*, which focuses on an early twentieth-century Yiddish play that, because of its treatment of a lesbian relationship, resulted in the arrest of the Broadway actors performing in it. Vogel and director Rebecca Taichman employed many ritualistic Jewish dances and accompanying music throughout its staging, as seen here in a moment from the off-Broadway production at the Vineyard Theatre in 2016. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

## Rituals as Dramatic Structure

Like acting, ritual is a part of everyday life of which we are generally unaware. Basically, ***ritual*** is a repetition or reenactment of a proceeding or transaction that has acquired special meaning. It may be a simple ritual like singing the national anthem before a sports contest, or a deeply religious ritual such as the Roman Catholic mass or the Jewish *kaddish*, a prayer for the dead. All of us develop rituals in our personal or family life: a certain meal we eat with the family once a week, for example, or a routine we go through every time we take an examination in school. Occasions like Thanksgiving, Christmas, and Ramadan become family rituals, with the same order of events each year, the same menu, and perhaps even the same conversation. Rituals give us continuity, security, and comfort. Often, as in the case of primitive tribes, people assume that if they perform a ritual faithfully, they will be blessed or their wishes will be granted. Conversely, they assume that failure to follow a ritual to the letter will lead to punishment.

**ritual** Ceremonial event, often religious, that takes place in a prescribed sequence.

In theatre, ritual is an activity where the old and new come together. Traditional plays are full of rituals: coronations, weddings, funerals, and other ceremonies. And in modern theatre, ritual has been discovered and given new life. Certain avant-garde theatre groups, for example, have made a conscious attempt to develop new rituals or revive old ones. Ritual has structure. Actions are repeated in a set fashion; these actions have a beginning, a middle, and an end; and there is a natural progression of events.

## Patterns as Dramatic Structure

Related to ritual is a pattern of events. In Samuel Beckett's *Waiting for Godot*, the characters have no personal history, and the play does not build to a climax in the

ordinary way. But if Beckett has sacrificed traditional plot structure, he has replaced it with a repeated sequence of events containing its own order and logic. The play has two acts, and in each act a series of incidents is duplicated. Each act opens with the two chief characters coming together on a lonely crossroads after having been separated. Then, in both acts, a similar sequence of events occurs: they greet each other; they despair of Godot's ever coming; they attempt to entertain themselves. Two other men, Pozzo and Lucky, appear and, following a long scene, disappear. The first two men are left alone once more. The two acts continue to follow the same sequence: a small boy comes to tell the men that Godot will not come that day, the boy leaves, and the men remain together for another night. There are important differences between the two acts, but the identical sequence of events in each act achieves a pattern, which takes on a ritualistic quality.

### Serial Structure

Another kind of structure is a series of acts or episodes—individual theatre events—offered as a single presentation. In this case, individual segments are strung together like beads on a necklace. Sometimes a central theme or common thread holds the various parts together. Sometimes there is little or no connection between the parts.

The musical *revue* is a case in point. In a revue, short scenes, vignettes, skits, dance numbers, songs, and possibly even vaudeville routines are presented on a single program. There may be an overall theme, such as political satire or the celebration of a past event or period. Sometimes a master of ceremonies provides continuity between the various segments. Also, in today's theatre we frequently see a program of short plays. Sometimes there will be a bill of one-act plays by the same author; at other times there will be two or three plays by different authors. On some occasions an attempt is made to relate the separate plays to a central theme; but sometimes the plays are chosen simply to complete an evening's entertainment.

### Structure in Experimental and Avant-Garde Theatre

In the second half of the twentieth century, a number of theatre groups in Europe and the United States experimented with forms such as ritual. These included the Polish Laboratory Theater, headed by Jerzy Grotowski, and the Living Theater, the Open Theater, the Performance Group, Mabou Mines, and the Wooster Group in the United States.

These groups had two things in mind. On one hand, they felt that the theatre of the past was no longer relevant to the problems of the present and that new forms had to be found to match the unique challenges and aspirations of the modern world. On the other hand, they wanted to look back beyond the traditions of the past 2,500 years to the beginning of theatre, to scrape off the layers of formality and convention that have accumulated through the centuries and rediscover the roots of theatre.

From the experiments of this radical theatre movement, several significant departures from traditional theatre practice were developed. Among them were the following: (1) emphasis on *nonverbal theatre*, that is, theatre in which gestures, body movements, and sounds without words are stressed rather than logical or intelligible language; (2) reliance on improvisation or a scenario developed by performers and a director to tell the story, rather than a written text; (3) interest in ritual and ceremony; and (4) stress on the importance of the physical environment of theatre, including the spatial relationship of the performers to the audience. The theatre groups that developed these ideas were referred to as *avant-garde*, a French term that literally means “advance guard in a military formation.” The term has come to mean an intellectual or artistic movement in any age that breaks with tradition and therefore seems ahead of its time.

155

**SEGMENTS AND TABLEAUX IN AVANT-GARDE THEATRE**

The works of many modern experimental theatre directors consist of separate segments, almost like pictorial tableaux. The emphasis is on the visual aspect, and also on images, sounds, music, and dancelike movement. An example of segments and tableaux can be seen in this scene from Robert Wilson's interpretation of the Brecht-Weill *Threepenny Opera*, a Berliner Ensemble production, with Stefan Kurt (center) as Macheath (Mack the Knife). (©David Baltzer/Zenit/Laif/Redux)

**Segments and Tableaux as Structure** The experimental pieces of the directors Robert Wilson (noted in the chapters "Acting for the Stage" and "The Director and the Producer") and Richard Foreman (b. 1937), like other types of avant-garde theatre, often stress nonverbal elements. At times they include non sequitur as well. In spite of this, their work does have structure. Often the various elements are united by a theme, or at least by a pronounced point of view on the part of the director. Also, the material is organized into units analogous to the frames of film and television, or to the still-life tableaux of painting or the moving tableaux of dance. (In theatre, a *tableau*—plural, *tableaux*—is a static scene onstage featuring performers in costume.)



Robert Wilson, in productions such as *A Letter to Queen Victoria, Einstein on the Beach*, and *CiVil WarS: A Tree Is Best Measured When It Is Down*, begins a segment with a visual picture—like a large painting, but three-dimensional. The performers move from this static image into the activities of the segment. When one segment has concluded, another picture or tableau will be formed to initiate the next segment. Frequently directors like Foreman and Wilson will use rapid movements—as in silent films—or slow-motion movements. At times several activities will occur simultaneously. All of these, however, relate both to an image and to a tableau or frame.

For many years Foreman, under the banner of his Ontological-Hysteric Theatre, presented new work almost annually. In 2013 he directed a piece that many considered a retrospective of his career titled *Old-Fashioned Prostitutes (A True Romance*).

## Structure in Musical Theatre

In musical theatre, structure often involves alternation and juxtaposition. Musical numbers alternate with spoken scenes; solos and duets alternate with choral numbers; singing alternates with dance

numbers; and sometimes comic songs and scenes alternate with serious ones. An example of structural principles in musicals



is found in *My Fair Lady*, with book and lyrics by Alan Jay Lerner and music by Frederick Loewe. The story is based on George Bernard Shaw's play *Pygmalion*.

### *THE KING AND I* A MUSICAL WITH A CLEAR DRAMATIC STRUCTURE

Musicals, like other forms of theatre, require a definite form and structure. In *The King and I* by Rodgers and Hammerstein II (which was based on the novel *Anna and the King of Siam*), scenes of dialogue alternate with musical and dance numbers; solos alternate with duets and choral numbers. Here we see Kelli O'Hara, as Anna the British school teacher, and Ken Watanabe, as the king, as well as other cast members in the family prayer scene from the 2015 Lincoln Center revival directed by Bartlett Sher. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

*My Fair Lady* concerns a speech teacher, Henry Higgins, who claims that the English judge people by how they speak. He bets his friend Colonel Pickering that he can take an ordinary cockney flower girl, Eliza Doolittle, and by teaching her correct diction, pass her off as a duchess. The comic subplot of *My Fair Lady* deals with Eliza's father, Alfred P.

Doolittle, a ne'er-do-well who doesn't want to achieve middle-class respectability, because if he does he will have to marry the woman he lives with.

The first song in the show is sung by Higgins—"Why Can't the English Learn to Speak?" The next song shifts to Eliza and her dreams of luxury as she sings "Wouldn't It Be Loverly?" The action now shifts to the subplot, and Alfred Doolittle is joined by two buddies to sing of how he hopes to avoid working, "With a Little Bit of Luck." We then move back to a scene with Higgins, who is pushing Eliza very hard to learn to speak properly. After a song by Higgins, "I'm an Ordinary Man," Eliza vows revenge on him in her next song: "Just You Wait."

The musical proceeds in this manner, moving from one character to another, from a solo to a trio to a dance routine to an ensemble. There is variety in these numbers—some are serious; some are comic; some explain the characters' feelings; some describe a situation. It is on such alternation that structure in musical theatre is based. Always, too, it must be remembered, spoken scenes are interspersed with musical numbers, and ballet or modern dance routines with other numbers.

## DRAMATIC CHARACTERS

Along with structures, the playwright creates dramatic characters. These can range from fully rounded human beings to so-called ***stock characters*** who are two-dimensional.

**stock characters** Two-dimensional, stereotypical characters.

### Extraordinary Characters

In most important dramatic works of the past, the heroes and heroines are extraordinary in some way. They are larger than life. Historically, major characters have been kings, queens, bishops, members of the nobility, or other figures clearly marked as holding a special place in society. In drama, as in life, a queen is accorded respect because of her authority, power, and grandeur; a high military official is respected because of the position he holds. Dramatists go one step further, however, in depicting extraordinary characters. In addition to filling prestigious roles, dramatic characters generally represent men and women at their best or worst—at some extreme of human behavior. Lady Macbeth is not only a noblewoman; she is one of the most ambitious women ever depicted onstage. In virtually every instance,

with extraordinary characters, we see men and women at the outer limits of human capability and endurance.

Comic characters can also be extremes. The chief character in *Volpone* by Ben Jonson (1572–1637) is an avaricious miser who gets people to present him with expensive gifts because they think he will remember them in his will. Characters may also be extraordinary because of their exceptional personalities or achievements. A good example is Joan of Arc, the heroine of George Bernard Shaw's *Saint Joan*, a simple peasant girl who rises to become commander of an army that triumphs in the name of the king of France.

158

# photo essay

## Extraordinary Characters

**In dramas of the past, the leading characters are often people who are exceptional in some way. Shown here is a gallery of exceptional characters from a range of dramas**.

(©Geraint Lewis/Rex Features/AP Images)

Christopher Marlowe's *Dr. Faustus* contains a quintessential tragic character, Faustus, who trades his soul to the devil in order to gain the knowledge and power of supernatural magic. Seen here are Sandy Grierson (left) as Mephistophilis (Lucifer's servant) and Oliver Ryan as Doctor Faustus in a 2016 production at The Swan theatre, Stratford-upon-Avon, Britain.

(© Geraint Lewis)

Frances Barber as Cleopatra, the powerful, alluring queen of Egypt with whom Antony fell in love in Shakespeare's *Antony and Cleopatra*, in a production at Shakespeare's Globe in London.

(©Kevin Cummins)

Anne-Marie Duff as the exceptional historical figure Joan of Arc in George Bernard Shaw's *Saint Joan*, directed by Marianne Elliott at the National Theatre, London.

(©Pier Paolo Cito/AP Images)

Greek actor Grigoris Valtinos as the quintessentially extraordinary figure of Oedipus in the National Theatre of Greece's *Oedipus Rex*

by Sophocles presented in Rome's Colosseum.

160

## THE TRAGIC FIGURE: AN EXCEPTIONAL CHARACTER

A good example of an extraordinary figure in tragedy is Tamburlaine, a larger-than-life character who through terror and cunning conquered much of the known world in central Asia and was the hero of two plays by Christopher Marlowe in the late 1580s. Shown here are Avery Brooks and the cast of the Shakespeare Theatre Company's *Tamburlaine*, adapted and directed by Michael Kahn. (©Carol Rosegg)

Some characters are mixtures, combining extreme virtue and extreme vice. Faustus, treated by Christopher Marlowe in *The Tragical*

*History of Doctor Faustus* and by Johann Wolfgang von Goethe in *Faust*, is a great scholar but becomes so bored with his existence and so ambitious that he makes a compact with the devil, forfeiting his soul in return for unlimited power. Cleopatra, an exceedingly vain, selfish woman, also has "immortal longings." Queen Elizabeth I of England and Mary Queen of Scots, rivals in real life, have made admirable dramatic characters—women of strong virtues and telling weaknesses.

In sum, larger-than-life characters become the heroes and heroines of drama not only because of their station in life but also because they possess traits common to us all—ambition, generosity, malevolence, fear, and achievement—in such great abundance.

In the eighteenth century, ordinary people began taking over from royalty and the nobility as the heroes and heroines of drama—a reflection of what was occurring in the real world. But despite this move away from royalty and the nobility, the leading figures of drama continued in many cases to be exceptional men and women at their best and worst.

### Representative or Quintessential Characters

When characters from everyday life replaced kings and queens as the leading figures in drama, a new type of character emerged alongside the extraordinary character. Characters of this new type are in many respects typical or ordinary, but they are significant because they embody an entire group. Rather than being notable as "worst," "best," or some other extreme, they are important as *representative* or *quintessential* characters. A good example of such a character is Nora Helmer, the heroine of Henrik Ibsen's *A Doll's House*. A traditional wife and mother, she has secretly forged a signature to get money for her husband when he was very ill and needed medical attention. All her life, first by her father, then by her husband, she has been treated like a doll or a plaything, not as a mature, responsible woman.

In the last act of the play, Nora rebels against this attitude; she makes a declaration of independence to her husband, slams the door on him, and walks out. It has been said that Nora's slamming of the door marks the beginning not only of modern drama but of the emancipation of modern women. Certainly Nora's defiance—her demand to be treated as an equal—has made her typical of all housewives who refuse to be regarded as pets. In one sense, Nora is an ordinary wife and mother, but she is unusual in the way she sums up an entire group of women. *A Doll's House* was written in 1879; but today, well over a century later, Nora is still a symbol of modern women, and the play is revived year after year.

## QUINTESSENTIAL CHARACTERS

Certain key characters in drama, especially in modern drama, are not extraordinary or exceptional in the same way as royalty or military leaders, but become important because they embody qualities of an entire group of people. Included in this description would be the lead characters in Arthur Miller's *Death of a Salesman*. Shown here are: Brian Dennehy (center) as Willy Loman, the salesman of the title, Mark Bazeley (left) as Happy Loman, one of Willy's sons, and Douglas Hensall as Biff Loman, his other son, in a 2005 revival directed by Robert Falls at the Lyric Theatre, London. This revival was first produced at the Goodman Theatre in Chicago and was also staged on Broadway. (©Donald Cooper/Photostage)

In *Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?* by Edward Albee, the main characters are a husband and a wife who are in many ways quite commonplace. He is a somewhat ineffectual college professor; she is the daughter of the college president. They argue and attack each other almost to the point of exhaustion. Another unhappily married couple? Yes. But again, they are quintessential. To Albee, they represent an American type: a bitter, alienated couple, bored with themselves and each other. To underline this point, he names them

Martha and George—the same first names as Martha and George Washington, America's "first couple." Another example is Willy Loman, in Arthur Miller's *Death of a Salesman*, who sums up all salesmen, traveling in their territories on a "smile and a shoeshine." Willy has lived by a false dream: the idea that if he puts up a good front and is "well liked," he will be successful and rich.

Still another example is Troy Maxon in *Fences* by August Wilson. Maxon epitomizes the proud, headstrong man who in order to survive in a world of oppression and prejudice has developed firmness and resolution, which serve him well but take their toll on his wife and son. Nora Helmer, Martha and George, Willy Loman, and Troy Maxon: all are examples of characters who stand apart from the crowd, not by standing above it but by summing up in their personalities the essence of a certain type of person.

## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. If you were to dramatize your life, how might you use a climactic structure? Describe the moments you would dramatize.
2. How might you use an episodic structure to structure a play about your life? What events would you dramatize?
3. Have you seen a movie or television show that uses stock characters? Describe the characters? Have you seen a film that employs quintessential characters? Describe them.
4. Describe a family ritual. What are the elements of the ritual?
5. Are there any films or television shows that present nonhuman characters? Describe them.

### Stock Characters

The characters we have been describing, whether extraordinary or representative, are generally fully rounded figures. Many characters in drama, however, are not three-dimensional; rather, they exemplify one particular characteristic to the exclusion of virtually everything else. Frequently they are known by their station in life, their sex, and their occupation along with some tendency of personality: the clever

servant, for instance, or the absentminded professor. They are referred to as *stock* characters, and they appear particularly in comedy and melodrama, though they can be found in all kinds of drama and also today in films and television shows.

**STOCK CHARACTERS OF COMMEDIA DELL'ARTE**

Italian Renaissance comedy developed stereotyped characters who were always the same: each of them was famous for a certain trait—greed, boastfulness, gullibility, or the like—and was always easily identifiable by his or her costume. Here we see examples of those characters and their masks, including the wily servant Harlequin (left) and the pompous supposedly educated Dottore (right), in a 2006 comedia performance in Piazza San Marco during Carnival in Venice. (©PjrTravel/Alamy Stock Photo)

Some of the most famous examples of stock characters are found in ***commedia dell'arte***. This is a form of popular comedy that flourished in Italy during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. In commedia dell'arte, there was no script but rather a scenario that gave an outline of a story. The performers improvised or invented words and actions to fill out the play. The stock characters of commedia were either straightforward or exaggerated and were divided into servants and members of the ruling class. In every character, however, one particular feature or trait was stressed.

**commedia dell'arte** Form of comic theatre, originating in Italy in the sixteenth century, in which dialogue was improvised around a scenario involving a set of stock characters, each with a traditional costume, name, and often mask.

Whenever such a character appeared, he or she would have the same propensities and would wear the same costume. The bragging soldier, called *Capitano*, always boasted of his courage in a series of fictitious military victories. *Pantalone*, an elderly merchant, spoke in clichés and chased girls; and a pompous lawyer called *Dottore* spoke in Latin phrases and attempted to impress others with his learning. Among servants, *Harlequin* was the most popular; displaying both cunning and stupidity, he was at the heart of most plot complications. These are but a few of a full range of commedia characters, each with his or her own peculiarities. As for examples of stock characters in melodrama, we are all familiar with such figures as the innocent young heroine, "pure as the driven snow"; and the villain, lurking in the shadows, twirling his moustache. In today's television, the familiar figures on weekly situation comedies are examples of stock or stereotypical characters.

## CHARACTERS WITH A DOMINANT TRAIT

Many comic plays feature characters with one predominant trait—greed, ambition, self-importance, and so forth. The extremes of the character are one of the elements that create the comic effect. The French playwright Molière often named his plays for such characters. Shown here are Nancy Robinette as Toinette and René Auberjonois as Argan in the

Shakespeare Theatre Company's production of Molière's *The Imaginary Invalid*, directed by Keith Baxter. (© Carol Rosegg)

164

Closely related to stock characters are characters with a *dominant trait*, that is, a single excess or "humor." The French playwright Molière and the English dramatist Ben Jonson wrote a number of comedies in which the chief character's excesses—avarice, self-importance, greed, pride, pomposity—lead to wildly humorous results. To further point up the one-sided nature of these characters, Jonson often named his characters for their single trait: his play *The Alchemist*, for example, includes characters with names like Subtle, Face, Dapper, Surly, Wholesome, and Dame Pliant.

## THE NARRATOR OR CHORUS

A role in drama in which a performer or group steps out of character to address the audience directly is a narrator or a

chorus. In Thornton Wilder's *Our Town*, the character of the Stage Manager is the narrator of the piece, and also plays small roles such as the preacher who marries the young couple. Here we see Helen Hunt, the first woman to portray that role, in a production directed by David Cromer at the off-Broadway Barrow Street Theatre in 2010. (©Chester Higgins Jr./The New York Times/Redux)

## Minor Characters

Stock characters or characters with a dominant trait are not to be confused with *minor characters*. Minor characters are those—in all types of plays—who play a small part in the overall action. Generally they appear briefly and serve chiefly to further the story or to support more important characters. Typical examples of minor characters are servants and soldiers; but even figures such as generals, bishops, judges, dukes, and duchesses are considered minor if they play only a small role in the action. Since we see so little of these characters, the dramatist can usually show only one facet of their personalities; but this is a different case from that of a main character who is deliberately portrayed as one-sided.

## A Narrator or Chorus

A special type of character is a narrator or the members of a chorus. Generally, a *narrator* speaks directly to the audience. He or she may or may not assume a dramatic persona as the other characters do. In Tennessee Williams's *The Glass Menagerie* and Thornton Wilder's *Our Town*, for instance, a performer appears both as a narrator and as one or more characters in the play. The chorus in ancient Greek drama, in song and dance, commented on the action of the main plot and reacted to events in the story. Use of a chorus or narrator creates a *dialectic* or *counterpoint* between a party outside the play and characters in the central action. (*Counterpoint* is a term from music denoting a second melody that accompanies or moves in contrast to the main melody.)

The dramatist Bertolt Brecht used a narrator, and sometimes singers, in a pointed way: to startle the audience by making a sudden shift from the main story to the presentation of a moral or political argument. In *The Caucasian Chalk Circle*, for instance, Grusha—an innocent, peace-loving peasant woman—steps out of character at one point to sing a song extolling the virtues of a general who loves war. Grusha, in other words, momentarily becomes a sort of chorus when she is asked to sing a song with a point of view opposite to her own.

This wrenching of characters and attitudes is deliberate on Brecht's part: it is meant to make us think seriously about some issue, such as war and the ravages of war.

165

**THE CHORUS: A TIME-HONORED DEVICE**

The Greeks were the first to use a chorus. It extended the range and sweep of their plays, which otherwise adhered closely to the climactic form. Here we see the chorus in the London production of *Bacchai* by Euripides, directed by Peter Hall at the National Theatre. (©Donald Cooper/Photostage)

## Nonhuman Characters

In Greece in the fifth century bce, and in many earlier cultures, performers portrayed birds and animals, and this practice has continued to the present. Aristophanes, the Greek comic dramatist, used a chorus of actors to play the title parts in his plays *The Birds* and *The Frogs*. In the modern period, Eugene Ionesco has men turn into animals in *Rhinoceros;* and the French playwright Edmond Rostand wrote a poetic fable called *Chantecler*, about a rooster.

Occasionally performers are called on to play other nonhuman roles. Karel Căpek (1890–1938) wrote a play, *R.U.R.*, in which people enact robots. (The initials in the title stand for "Rossum's Universal Robots," and it is from this play that the word *robot* derives.) In the medieval morality play *Everyman*, characters represent ideas or concepts, such as Fellowship, Good Deeds, Worldly Possessions, and Beauty.

### NONHUMAN CHARACTERS

Sometimes characters are nonhuman, although they usually have human characteristics. This tradition goes back at least as far as the comedies of the Greek writer Aristophanes in the fifth century bce in Greece. Frequently they are animals of some sort. Shown here is a scene from Edward Albee's *Seascape*, in which the characters are lizards, directed in 2002 by Mark Lamos at the Hartford Stage Company, with costumes by Constance Hoffman. (©T Charles Erickson)

Dramatic characters in the guise of animals or robots are the exception rather than the rule, and when they do appear, it is usually their human qualities that are emphasized.

166

## The Audience and Character Types

Classifying characters in categories is neither artificial nor arbitrary. Different types of characters are part of the fabric of various dramatic forms, and being aware of them is a helpful tool in appreciating and understanding those forms. It should also be remembered that not every character fits neatly into a single category, and that various character types are not necessarily mutually exclusive. For example, an extraordinary or quintessential character might also be a character with a dominant trait. At the same time, knowledge of the character types we have been studying can greatly help audiences understand how characters function in a drama and enhance their experience when seeing a performance.

When a playwright in ancient Greece or Elizabethan England wrote a tragedy, he did not think of the central figure in his drama as an

extraordinary character. In nineteenth-century France, when a dramatist composed a bedroom farce, he was not consciously employing stock characters. And when a twentieth-century playwright wrote a serious drama, he or she did not focus on developing quintessential figures as the play's chief characters. Dramatists create characters, not labels. In the same way, we as audience members attending a performance should not be preoccupied with assigning characters onstage to a specific category. During a theatre event we should let the action onstage unfold, taking it in as a whole, and observing particular elements only when they appear evident or are especially striking. Focusing on character types should be undertaken in studying a play before seeing it, or in analyzing it afterward.

## Juxtaposition of Characters

We turn now from single characters to the way characters interact with and relate to one another. Often in the creation of a dramatic work, characters are combined in important, significant ways to bring out certain qualities.

**Protagonist and Antagonist** From Greek theatre we have the terms ***protagonist*** and ***antagonist***. The *protagonist* in a play is the main character—Othello, for instance—and the *antagonist* is the main character's chief opponent. In *Othello*, the antagonist is Iago. It is through the contest between these two characters that their individual qualities are developed.

**protagonist** Principal character in a play, the one whom the drama is about.

**antagonist** Opponent of the protagonist in a drama.

**Contrasting Characters** Another way characters are contrasted is by setting them side by side rather than in opposition. Sophocles created two exceptionally strong-willed, independent female characters—Antigone and Electra—each one the title character in a play. Both are young women intent on defying an older person and willing to risk death to fight for a principle. But unlike other dramatists who had told the same story, Sophocles gave each of them a sister with a sharply contrasting personality. To Antigone he gave Ismene, a docile, compliant sister who argues that Antigone should obey the law and give in to authority. To Electra he gave Chrisothemis, a meek, frightened creature who protests that as women they are powerless to

act. Sophocles strengthened and clarified Antigone and Electra by providing them with contrasting characters to set off their own determination and courage.

167

### CONTRASTING CHARACTERS

Playwrights often set two characters beside each other, or against each other, so that they stand in sharp contrast. In Henrik Ibsen's *Hedda Gabler*, the frustrated, volatile, reckless Hedda is juxtaposed with her friend Mrs. Elvsted, a calmer, wiser, quieter person. In this scene Roxanna Hope as Hedda is on the left and Sara Topham as Mrs. Elvsted is on the right, under the direction of Jennifer Tarver at the Hartford Stage Company. (©T Charles Erickson)

## Orchestration of Characters

168

Anton Chekhov, the Russian dramatist, is said to have "orchestrated" his characters. The reference is to a musical composition in which the theme is played first by one section of the orchestra, such as the violins, and then by another, such as the brasses or woodwinds. Not only is the theme taken up by various sections, but it can be played in different ways as well—first in a major key, for instance, and then in a minor key. Beyond that, there is the way the various segments of the

orchestra—strings, brass, woodwinds, percussion—are blended together, how they play with one another or in counterpoint to one another. In a similar fashion, Chekhov created his characters, giving each a distinctive voice. But his real genius was in the way he blended his characters, creating differences, similarities, subtle shadings, and contrasts.

In each of his plays, Chekhov drew a series of characters with a common problem, and each character represented some aspect of the central theme. In *Uncle Vanya*, for example, Chekhov's theme of disillusionment and frustration with life is reflected by virtually every character in the play, each of whom longs for a love that cannot be fulfilled. The title character, Vanya, who has been working on an estate to help support a pompous professor, falls in love with the professor's young wife, who does not return his love. A neighbor, Dr. Astrov, who has grown dissatisfied with his life, also loves the professor's wife, but nothing can come of it. Vanya's niece, a plain woman who works hard for little reward, is in love with Dr. Astrov, who does not return her love. And so it goes; practically everyone embodies the theme of unrequited love. But all this is done subtly and carefully brought out through gradations and shadings of meaning, which are interwoven like threads in a tapestry.

Chekhov was a master at orchestrating his characters, but he was not the only dramatist to use the technique. In one way or another, most dramatists try to arrange their characters so as to produce a cumulative effect. It is not what one character does or says but what all the characters do together that creates the effect.

## ORCHESTRATION OF CHARACTERS

Characters in a play serve as contrasts, counterparts, or foils to each other; sometimes one group of characters is set in opposition to another, sometimes they complement one another. In every case, the playwright should make the relationships among characters serve the aims of the drama. Anton Chekhov was a master at combining and contrasting characters, sometimes a great many characters in one play. A good example is his work *The Three Sisters*, shown here with Heather Wood, in white, as Irina Prozorov in a new version of the play by Sarah Ruhl, directed by Les Waters at the Yale Repertory Theatre. (©Joan Marcus)

## PLAYING YOUR PART: THINKING ABOUT THEATRE

1. During the last performance you attended, did the action take place in one locale (one room, for instance) or, instead, in three or four locations? Did the action move frequently, returning at times to a former location? What effect did these elements of place or location have on your experience of the play?
2. Look at the cast of characters in a Shakespearean play you have seen or read. Place each character in a category: major

character; minor character; or a character in between—that is, a character with a clear personality but not a large role. Which characters are in opposition to one another? Which characters in the play dominate in the struggle? Is there a reversal of their fortunes?

3. While you are watching a modern play or drama involving a small group of characters locked in a struggle for dominance or control, how does the action usually play out? Is first one person in the ascendency and then another? What do shifts of power and control have to do with revealing the personalities of the characters? What do these changes have to do with the meaning of the play?



## SUMMARY

1. There are several basic types of dramatic structure. *Climactic* form was adopted by the ancient Greeks and has been used frequently ever since. Its characteristics are a plot beginning quite late in the story, a limited number of characters, a limited number of locations and scenes, little or no extraneous material, and tight construction, including a cause-and-effect chain of events.
2. *Episodic* form involves a plot covering an extended span of time, numerous locations, a large cast of characters, diverse events (including mixtures of comic and serious episodes), and parallel plots or subplots. Shakespeare's plays are good examples of episodic form.
3. The climactic and episodic forms can be combined, as they have been in the Restoration period and in the modern period, in the works of Anton Chekhov and others.
4. Ritual or pattern is often used as the basis of dramatic structure. Words, gestures, and events are repeated; they have a symbolic meaning acquired both through repetition and through the significance invested in them from the past.
5. Theatre events are sometimes strung together to make a program. Examples are a group of unrelated one-act plays and a group of skits and songs in a revue. In this case,

structure is within the individual units themselves; among the units the only structure might be the unfolding of the separate elements; or there can be a common theme uniting them.

**6**. Avant-garde theatre sometimes arranges events in a random way to suggest the random or haphazard manner in which life unfolds in everyday situations.

**7**. Experimental groups in the modern period have often used radical forms, including nonverbal and improvisational structures.

**8**. Segments and tableaux have also been used as structure.

**9**. Structurally, musical theatre consists of different elements put together in a sequence, in which solo musical numbers alternate with group numbers and dances and these musical elements alternate with dramatic scenes.

**10**. Dramatic characters symbolize people and fall into several categories. Frequently the chief characters of theatre are extraordinary characters: men and women at the outer limits of human behavior. Also, these characters often hold important positions: king, queen, general, admiral, duchess.

**11**. In modern serious theatre we frequently find typical or ordinary characters—complete, fully rounded portraits of people—who embody a whole group or type. An example is Willy Loman, the salesman in *Death of a Salesman*.

**12**. Some characters are stereotypes. Stock characters, for instance, are predictable, clearly defined types. Other characters have one dominant trait, which overshadows all other features.

**13**. A special type of character in drama of many periods is a narrator or the members of a chorus.

**14**. Occasionally performers are asked to play nonhuman parts—animals, birds, and so on—but these parts generally have a strong human flavor.

**15**. Characters are placed together by the playwright in certain combinations to obtain maximum effectiveness. A protagonist may be opposed by an antagonist; minor characters support major characters; and individual characters are orchestrated into a whole.

**Design Elements:** In Focus box (spotlight): ©Exactostock/SuperStock; Playing Your Part box (theatre seats): ©Ron Chapple/Getty Images

## DRAMATIC GENRE: COMEDY

Drama is often divided into categories or types, referred to as genres. The Greeks separated tragedy and comedy. To those two genres have been added tragicomedy and others. Shown here are Kristine Nielsen as Mrs. Hardcastle, Jeremy Webb as George Hastings, and Rebecca Brooksher (rear) as Constance Neville in a comedy of wit written by Oliver

Goldsmith, *She Stoops to Conquer*, which the eighteenth-century author called “a laughing comedy.” The production was directed by Nicholas Martin at the McCarter Theatre Center. (©T Charles Erickson)



8

# Theatrical Genres

When we attend a theatre performance, within the first fifteen minutes or so, we sense a tone and a mood that are being communicated. We become aware that those presenting the play—the playwright, the actors, the director—are signaling to the audience that they have adopted a definite point of view and attitude toward what is to follow. For example, in the opening scene of Shakespeare’s *Hamlet*, the ghost of Hamlet’s father appears to men on guard at the castle. It is an ominous, eerie scene that tells us this will be a serious play, perhaps even a tragedy. On the other hand, at the beginning of Shakespeare’s *A Midsummer Night’s Dream*, Theseus, the Duke of Athens, says: “Stir up the Athenian youth to merriment, awake the pert and nimble spirit of mirth,” a clear sign that this will be a comedy.

## TYPES OF DRAMA

In Greece in the fifth century bce, where Western theatre began, the actors wore masks covering their faces when they performed. The Greeks took the idea of the mask to create symbols of the two kinds of plays presented at their dramatic festivals—the mask of tragedy and the mask of comedy—symbols that are still used today. Similarly, in Japan in the fourteenth century ce, a theatre called nō had become established as the serious form of drama. Alongside nō, however, was a comical, farcical type of drama called kyōgen.

In other words, wherever theatre has appeared, there has been a tendency to divide it into categories or types, often referred to by the French term ***genre*** (“JAHN-ruh”). In addition to tragedy and comedy, additional genres have developed: farce, melodrama, tragicomedy, and a number of others.

**genre** A French word meaning “type” or “category.” In theatre, genre denotes the category into which a play falls: for example, tragedy, comedy, or tragicomedy.

This tendency to divide dramatic works into categories is not confined to theatre. We find it widespread, not only in the arts, but in many aspects of life. Not only those who create theatre adopt different points of view toward events and toward life in general; all of us do. Depending on our perspective, we can see the same subject as funny or sad, take it seriously or laugh at it, make it an object of pity or of ridicule.

172

Just why we look at events from different points of view is difficult to say, but there is no question that we do. The English author Horace Walpole (1717–1797) wrote: “This world is a comedy to those that think, a tragedy to those that feel.”[1]

In theatre, this question of viewpoint—looking at people or events from a particular perspective—becomes crucial. Viewpoint is not taken for granted, as it is in everyday life; rather, it is a conscious act on the part of whoever creates the text. To take an example, in most cases death is considered a somber matter; but in *Arsenic and Old Lace* (1941), the dramatist Joseph Kesselring (1902–1967) makes it clear that in his play we are to regard death as comic. Kesselring presents two elderly women who kill no fewer than twelve old men by serving them arsenic in glasses of wine. But because the dramatist removes from the play any feeling that the deaths are to be taken seriously, he engenders in the audience the notion that it is all in fun.

Before examining genre, we should note that often a play does not fit neatly into a single category. Those who create a text do not write categories or types of plays; they write individual, unique works—and preoccupation with genre may distract us from the individuality of a play or a production. Still, if we keep these reservations in mind, we will find that it is helpful to understand the traditional genres into which Western dramatic literature has fallen.

## TRAGEDY

Serious drama takes a thoughtful, sober attitude toward its subject matter. It puts the spectators in a frame of mind to think about what they are seeing and to become involved with the characters onstage: to love what these characters love, fear what they fear, and suffer what

they suffer. The best-known form of serious drama, to which we turn first, is *tragedy*. Other forms of serious theatre are *heroic drama, domestic drama*, and *melodrama*.

***Tragedy*** asks very basic questions about human existence. Why are people sometimes cruel to one another? Why is the world unjust? Why are men and women called on to endure suffering? What are the limits of human suffering and endurance? In the midst of cruelty and despair, what are the possibilities of human achievement? To what heights of courage, strength, generosity, and integrity can human beings rise? Tragedy assumes that the universe is indifferent to human concerns and often cruel and malevolent. Sometimes the innocent appear to suffer, whereas the evil prosper. In the face of this, some humans are capable of despicable deeds, but others can confront and overcome adversity, attaining a nobility that places them "a little lower than the angels." We can divide tragedy into two basic kinds: traditional and modern. *Traditional tragedy* includes works from several significant periods of the past. *Modern tragedy* generally includes plays from the late nineteenth century to the present day.

**tragedy** A serious drama in which there is a downfall of the primary character.

## Traditional Tragedy

Three noteworthy periods of history in which traditional tragic dramas were written are Greece in the fifth century bce, England in the late sixteenth century and early seventeenth century, and France in the seventeenth century. Tragedies from these three ages have in common the following characteristics, which are central to traditional tragedy.



---

**Tragic Heroes and Heroines** Generally, the hero or heroine of a tragedy is an extraordinary person—a king, a queen, a general, a nobleman or noblewoman—in other words, a person of stature. In Greek drama, Antigone, Electra, Oedipus, Agamemnon, Creon, and Orestes are members of royal families. In the plays of Shakespeare, Hamlet, Claudius, Gertrude, Lear, and Cordelia are also royal; Julius Caesar, Macbeth, and Othello are generals; and others—Ophelia, Romeo, and Juliet—are members of the nobility.

**Tragic Circumstances** The central figures of the play are caught in a series of tragic circumstances: Oedipus, without realizing it, murders his father and marries his mother; Antigone must choose between death

and dishonoring her dead brother; Phaedra falls hopelessly and fatally in love with her stepson, Hippolytus; Othello is completely duped by Iago; and Lear is cast out by the daughters to whom he has given his kingdom. In traditional tragedy, the universe seems determined to trap the hero or heroine in a fateful web and for that character to suffer a tragic fall.

### MAJOR CHARACTERS CAUGHT IN A TRAGIC WEB

In traditional tragedy, the fall of a hero or heroine has a special significance because of the combination of his or her personality and position. An example of a tragic heroine is the Duchess of Malfi in the play of the same name by John Webster. Despite her title and station in life, the duchess is taunted and destroyed by her evil brothers when she marries someone of a lower social rank. Seen here are Ursina Lardi in the title role and Robert Beyer as Bosola, one of the brothers, in a production at the Schaubühne theatre in Berlin, Germany. (©ullstein bild/Getty Images)

**Tragic Irretrievability** The situation becomes irretrievable: There is no turning back. The tragic figures are in a situation from which there is no honorable avenue of escape; they must go forward to meet their fate.

**Acceptance of Responsibility** The hero or heroine accepts responsibility for his or her actions and also shows willingness to suffer and an immense capacity for suffering. Oedipus puts out his own eyes; Antigone faces death with equanimity; Othello kills himself. King Lear suffers immensely, living through personal humiliation, a raging storm on a heath, temporary insanity, and the death of his daughter, and

finally confronts his own death. A statement by Edgar in *King Lear* applies to all tragic figures: “Men must endure their going hence even as their coming hither.”[2]

**Tragic Verse** The language of traditional tragedy is verse. Because it deals with lofty and profound ideas—with men and women at the outer limits of their lives—tragedy soars to the heights and descends to the depths of human experience; and many feel that such thoughts and emotions can best be expressed in poetry. Look at Cleopatra’s lament on the death of Mark Antony. Her sense of admiration for Antony, and her desolation, could never be conveyed so tellingly in less poetic terms:

> Oh, wither’d is the garland of war,
> The soldier’s pole is fall’n! Young boys and girls
> Are level now with men. The odds is gone,
> And there is nothing left remarkable
> Beneath the visiting moon.[3]

174

These words have even more effect when heard in the theatre spoken by an eloquent actress.

**The Effect of Tragedy** When the elements of traditional tragedy are combined, they appear to produce two contradictory reactions simultaneously. One is pessimism: The heroes or heroines are “damned if they do and damned if they don’t,” and the world is a cruel, uncompromising place, a world of despair. And yet, in even the bleakest tragedy—whether *Hamlet*, *Medea, Macbeth*, or *King Lear*—there is affirmation. One source of this positive feeling is found in the drama itself. Sophocles, Euripides, Shakespeare, and the French dramatist Jean Racine, although telling us that the world is in chaos and utterly lost, at the same time affirmed just the opposite by creating brilliant, carefully shaped works of art.

There is another positive element, which has to do with the tragic heroes and heroines themselves. They meet their fate with such dignity and such determination that they defy the gods. They say: “Come and get me; throw your worst at me. Whatever happens, I will not surrender my individuality or my dignity.” In Aeschylus’s play *Prometheus Bound* the title character—who is one of the earliest tragic heroes—says: “On me the tempest falls. It does not make me tremble.” In defeat, the men and women of tragedy triumph.

The Greek philosopher Aristotle in *Poetics* (c. 335 bce) attempted to describe the effect traditional tragedy had on the audience. He suggested that tragedy arouses pity and fear in the audience and that this genre purges the audience of those emotions. Spectators feel pity for the tragic hero caught in irretrievable circumstances and fear that if characters of noble stature can suffer falls so could they. The purgation of these emotions, however, again reflects a positive outcome of tragedy.

As for the deeper meanings of individual tragedies, there is a vast literature on the subject, and each play has to be looked at and experienced in detail to obtain the full measure of its meaning. Certain tragedies seem to hold so much meaning, to contain so much—in substance and in echoes and reverberations—that one can spend a lifetime studying them.

## Modern Tragedy

Tragedies of the modern period—that is, beginning in the late nineteenth century—do not have queens or kings as central figures, and they are written in prose rather than poetry. For these as well as more philosophical reasons, purists argue that modern tragedies are not true tragedies.

In answer to this, it should be pointed out that today we have few kings or queens—either in mythology or, except in certain places like Great Britain, in real life. At the same time, we may ask: Do we not have characters today who can stand as symbolic figures for important segments of society? Many would answer that we still do. In attempting to create modern tragedy, the question is not whether we view the human condition in the same way as the French did in the seventeenth century or the Greeks did in the fifth century bce—those two societies did not view life in the same way either—but whether our age allows for a tragic view on its own terms.

**A MODERN TRAGIC FAMILY**

In Federico García Lorca's play *The House of Bernarda Alba*, a widow who has grown to hate and distrust men keeps her daughters confined as virtual prisoners in their own home. In this production, directed by Elizabeth Huddle at the Madison Repertory Theatre, we see four of the daughters, with the mother in the center. Left to right, the performers are Jamie England, Monica Lyons, Elisabeth Adwin, Margaret Ingraham, and Diane Robinson. (©Zane Williams)

The answer seems to be yes. Compared with either the eighteenth or the nineteenth century—ages of enlightenment, progress, and unbounded optimism—our age has its own tragic vision. Modern tragic dramatists probe the same depths and ask the same questions as did their predecessors: Why do men and women suffer? Why do violence and injustice exist? And perhaps most fundamental of all: What is the meaning of our lives?

On this basis, many commentators would argue that writers like Ibsen, Strindberg, García Lorca, O'Neill, Williams, and Miller can lay claim to writing legitimate modern tragedy. The ultimate test of a play is not whether it meets someone's definition of tragedy but what effect it produces in the theatre and how successful it is in standing up to continued scrutiny. Eugene O'Neill's *Long Day's Journey into Night* takes as bleak a look at the human condition, with, at the same time, as compassionate a view of human striving and dignity as it seems possible to take in our day.

## HEROIC DRAMA

The term ***heroic drama*** is not used as commonly as *tragedy* or *comedy*, but there is a wide range of plays for which *heroic drama* seems an appropriate description. We use the term specifically to indicate serious drama of any period that incorporates heroic or noble figures and other features of traditional tragedy—dialogue in verse, extreme situations, and the like—but differs from tragedy in having a happy ending, or in assuming a basically optimistic worldview even when the ending is sad.

> **heroic drama** Serious but basically optimistic drama written in verse or elevated prose, with noble or heroic characters in extreme situations or unusual adventures.

176

# photo essay

## Modern Domestic Drama

**Serious drama in America came of age in the mid-twentieth century, with plays by Eugene O'Neill, Tennessee Williams, Arthur Miller, and Lillian Hellman, among others. Though all four experimented with nonrealistic dramatic devices, much of their strongest work was realistic domestic drama. Included here are examples in photographs from recent productions**.

(©Rune Hellestad/Corbis Entertainment/Getty Images)

*Long Day's Journey into Night* by Eugene O'Neill with Paul Nicholls as the younger son, Edmund, Jessica Lange as Mary Tyrone, and

Paul Rudd as James Tyrone Jr.

(©Robbie Jack/Corbis Entertainment/Getty Images)

Gillian Anderson as Blanche DuBois and Vanessa Kirby as her sister Stella in Tennessee Williams's *A Streetcar Named Desire* in a production at the Young Vic Theatre in London, directed by Benedict Andrews.

177

(©T Charles Erickson)

Lee Aaron Rosen as Chris Keller, Michael Tisdale as George Deever, and Diane Davis as Ann Deever in *All My Sons*, by Arthur Miller, directed by David Esbjornson at the Huntington Theatre Company.

(©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

Seth Numrich (left) and Danny Burstein (right) in a 2012–2013 Broadway revival of *Golden Boy* by Clifford Odets, directed by Bartlett Sher.

178

Several Greek plays ordinarily classified as tragedies are actually closer to heroic drama. In Sophocles's *Electra*, for instance, Electra suffers grievously, but at the end of the play she and her brother Orestes triumph. Another example is *The Cid*, written by Pierre Corneille (1606–1684) in France. It has a hero who leads his men to victory in battle but who is not killed; in the end, he wins a duel against his rival. In the late seventeenth century in England, a form of drama that was called *heroic drama*, or sometimes *heroic tragedy*, was precisely the type about which we are speaking: a serious play with a happy ending for the hero or heroine.

Many Asian plays—from India, China, and Japan—though deviating from the usual Western classifications by including, for example, a great deal of traditional dance and music, bear a close resemblance to heroic drama. Frequently, for example, a hero goes through a series of dangerous adventures, emerging victorious at the end. The vast majority of Asian dramas end happily.

A second type of heroic drama involves the death of the hero or heroine, but the overall effect is not considered tragic. Several of the plays of Johann Wolfgang von Goethe (1749–1832) follow this pattern. (Many of Goethe's plays, along with those of his contemporaries in the late eighteenth century and early nineteenth century, form a subdivision of heroic drama referred to as *Romantic drama*. ***Romanticism***, a literary movement that took hold in Germany at the time and spread to France and throughout much of Europe, celebrated the spirit of hope, personal freedom, and natural instincts.)

> **Romanticism** Nineteenth-century dramatic movement that imitated the episodic structure of Shakespeare, and thematically focused on the gulf between human beings' spiritual aspirations and physical limitations.

A number of plays in the modern period fall into the category of heroic drama. *Saint Joan*, by George Bernard Shaw, is a good example: Although Joan is burned at the stake, her death is actually a form of triumph. As if that were not enough, Shaw provides an epilogue in which Joan appears alive again.

In the history of theatre, the plays we are discussing as *heroic drama* occupy a large and important niche, cutting across Asian and Western civilizations and across periods from the Greek golden age to the present.

## BOURGEOIS OR DOMESTIC DRAMA

With the changes in society that resulted from the rise of the middle class and the shift from kings and queens to more democratic governments, we move from classic tragedy to modern tragedy. In the same way, during the past 150 years heroic drama has largely been replaced by ***bourgeois or domestic drama***. *Bourgeois* refers to people of the middle or lower-middle class rather than the aristocracy, and *domestic* means that the plays often deal with problems of the family or the home rather than great affairs of state. In the Greek, Roman, and Renaissance periods, ordinary people served as main characters only in comedies; they rarely appeared as heroes or heroines of serious plays. Beginning in the eighteenth century,

however, as society changed, there was a call for serious drama about men and women with whom members of the audience could identify and who were like themselves.

**bourgeois or domestic drama** Drama dealing with problems—particularly family problems—of middle- and lower-class characters. There are serious and comic domestic dramas.

In England in 1731, George Lillo (1693–1739) wrote *The London Merchant*, a story of a merchant's apprentice who is led astray by a prostitute and betrays his good-hearted employer. This play, like others that came after it, dealt with recognizable people from the daily life of Britain, and audiences welcomed it.

179

## DOMESTIC DRAMA OF EVERYDAY LIFE

Domestic drama concerns itself with family problems: parents and children, husbands and wives, growing up, growing old. The characters in it are recognizable people, and it has long been a mainstay of modern drama. Shown here in a recent Broadway revival of Lorraine Hansberry's *A Raisin in the Sun* are Denzel Washington, Sophie Okonedo, Latanya Richardson Jackson, Bryce Clyde Jenkins, and Anika Noni Rose. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

From these beginnings, bourgeois or domestic drama developed through the balance of the eighteenth century and the whole of the nineteenth, until it achieved a place of prominence in the new realistic works of Ibsen, Strindberg, and Chekhov. In the mid-twentieth century, three major American playwrights of domestic drama emerged: Eugene O'Neill, Arthur Miller, and Tennessee Williams. O'Neill, in such plays as *The Iceman Cometh* and *Long Day's Journey into Night*, probed the depth of his characters' anguish as realistically as any dramatist of modern times. Miller, in *The Crucible* and *Death of a Salesman*, combined the tragic lives of his characters with political and moral investigations. Williams, the most lyrical of the three, in *The Glass Menagerie* and *A Streetcar Named Desire*, explored the limits of human sorrow and endurance.

These three were followed in the decades to come by other important American playwrights such as Lorraine Hansberry, Edward Albee, August Wilson, and Paula Vogel. Problems with society, struggles within a family, dashed hopes, and renewed determination are typical characteristics of domestic drama. When sufficiently penetrating or profound, domestic drama achieves the level of modern tragedy.

180

---

In one form or another, bourgeois or domestic drama has become the predominant form of serious drama throughout Europe and the United States during the past 100 years.

## MELODRAMA

During the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, one of the most popular forms of theatre was ***melodrama***. The word, which comes from Greek, means "music drama" or "song drama." Its modern form was introduced by the French in the late eighteenth century and applied to plays that had background music of the kind we hear in movies: ominous chords underscoring a scene of suspense and lyrical music underscoring a love scene.

> **melodrama** Dramatic form made popular in the nineteenth century that emphasized action and spectacular effects and also used music to underscore the action; it had stock characters, usually with clearly defined villains and heroes.

Among the effects for which melodrama generally strives are fright and horror. It has been said that melodrama speaks to the paranoia in

all of us: the fear that someone is pursuing us or that disaster is about to overtake us. How often do we have a sense that others are ganging up on us or a premonition that we have a deadly disease?

Melodrama brings these fears to life; we see people stalked or terrorized, or innocent victims tortured. Murder mysteries and detective stories are almost invariably melodramas because they stress suspense, danger, and close brushes with disaster. This type of melodrama usually ends in one of two ways: Either the victims are maimed or murdered (in which case our worst paranoid fears are confirmed) or, after a series of dangerous episodes, they are rescued (in which case the play is like a bad dream from which we awaken to realize that we are safe in bed and everything is all right).

Probably the easiest way to understand melodrama is to look at film and television examples. Among the kinds of popular melodramas we are familiar with are *westerns, science fiction films, horror films, superhero films*, and *detective* or *spy films*. All of these emphasize heroes and villains, other stock characters such as sidekicks and love interests, as well as spectacular events and special effects. But the key to the melodramatic form, onstage and in film and television, is that good is almost always victorious over evil. These characteristics are also present in melodramatic plays.

Still another form of melodrama argues a political or moral issue. Melodrama invariably shows us good characters against bad characters. Therefore, a playwright who wants to make a strong political case will often write a melodrama in which the good characters represent his or her point of view.

Traditional melodrama with its moral outlook, happy ending, stock characters, use of background music, and emphasis on spectacle developed in the nineteenth century. Still, a list of significant melodramas could range over most of theatre history and could include writers from Euripides through Shakespeare and his contemporaries to modern dramatists throughout Europe and the Americas because many types of serious drama, tragic and nontragic, frequently have strong melodramatic elements as well.

Aside from those taking a basically serious point of view, there are two other fundamental approaches to dramatic material. One is *comedy*, with its many forms and variations; the other is a mixture of the serious and the comic, called *tragicomedy*.



## COMEDY

People who create ***comedy*** are not necessarily more frivolous or less concerned with important matters than people who create serious works; they may be extremely serious in their own way. Writers of comedy like Aristophanes, Molière, and George Bernard Shaw cared passionately about human affairs and the problems of men and women. But those with a comic view look at the world differently: with a smile or a deep laugh or an arched eyebrow. Writers like these perceive the follies and excesses of human behavior and develop a keen sense of the ridiculous, with the result that they show us things that make us laugh.

> **comedy** In general, a play that is light in tone, is concerned with issues that point out the excesses and folly of human behavior, has a happy ending, and is designed to amuse.

It should also be noted that there are many kinds of laughter. They range all the way from mild amusement at a witty saying or a humorous situation to a belly laugh at some wild physical comedy to cruel, derisive laughter. Theatre, which reflects life and society, encompasses comedies that display a similar range, from light comedies to outrageous farces.

## Characteristics of Comedy

If we cannot fully explain comedy, we can at least understand some of the principles that make it possible.

**Suspension of Natural Laws** One characteristic of most comedy is a temporary suspension of the natural laws of probability, cause and effect, and logic. Actions do not have the consequences they do in real life. In comedy, when a haughty man walking down the street steps on a child's skateboard and goes sprawling on the sidewalk, we do not fear for his safety or wonder if he has any bruises. The focus in comedy is on the man being tripped up and getting his comeuppance.

In burlesque, a comic character can be hit on the backside with a fierce thwack, and we laugh, because we know that it does not hurt anything but his or her pride. At one point in stage history a special stick consisting of two thin slats of wood held closely together was developed to make hitting someone more frightening. The stick was known as a ***slapstick***, a name that came to describe all kinds of raucous, physical, knockabout comedy.

> **slapstick** Type of comedy, or comic business, that relies on ridiculous physical activity—often violent in nature—for its humor.

Prime examples of the suspension of natural laws in comedy are found in film and television cartoons. In animated cartoons, characters are hurled through the air like missiles, are shot full of holes, and are flattened on the sidewalk when they fall from buildings. But they always get up, with little more than a shake of the head. In the audience, there are no thoughts of real injury, of cuts or bruises, because the cause-and-effect chain of everyday life is not operating.

Under these conditions, a significant accident, resulting in physical harm, itself can be viewed as comic. In the 2015 award-winning London backstage comedy *The Play That Goes Wrong*, created by members of the Mischief Theatre Company, a cast member of a disaster-prone fictional production is knocked unconscious but miraculously revives only to find that her replacement, a technician, will not give up the role. We do not really think of the character as being rendered unconscious, and we have none of the feelings one usually has for an accident victim. The idea of suffering and harm has been suspended, and we are free to laugh at the irony and incongruity of the situation.

182

**SUSPENSION OF NATURAL LAWS IN COMEDY**

Frequently in various kinds of comedy, particularly in farce, our natural reaction to events is reordered to achieve a comic effect, and the audience accepts this. An excellent example is the play *Arsenic and Old Lace* by Joseph Kesselring, in which two elderly women, who appear to be helpless and harmless, actually murder a number of old men by giving them elderberry wine laced with poison. Because we have accepted the comic premise of the play, however, we do not condemn their acts, as we might in a melodrama, but rather become amused. Shown here, from left to right, are: Michael von Rospatt, Gerda Gmelin, and Eva Maria Bauer in a 2001 production directed by Christoph Roethel at the Komödie Winterhuder Fährhaus in Hamburg, Germany (©Moenkebild/ullstein bild/Getty Images)

**The Comic Premise** The suspension of natural laws in comedy makes possible the development of a ***comic premise***. The comic premise is an idea or concept that turns the accepted notion of things upside down and makes this upended notion the basis of a play. The premise can provide thematic and structural unity and can serve as a springboard for comic dialogue, comic characters, and comic situations.

**comic premise** Idea or concept in a comedy that turns the accepted notion of things upside down.

Aristophanes, the Greek satiric dramatist, was a master at developing a comic premise. In *The Clouds*, Aristophanes pictures Socrates as a man who can think only when perched in a basket suspended in midair. In *The Birds*, two ordinary men persuade a chorus of birds to build a city between heaven and earth. The birds comply, calling the place Cloudcuckoo Land, and the two men sprout wings to join them. In another play, *Lysistrata*, Aristophanes has the women of Greece agree to go on a sex strike to end a war: They will not make love to their husbands until the husbands stop fighting and sign a peace treaty with their opponents.

183

## Techniques of Comedy

The suspension of natural laws and the establishment of a comic premise in comedy involve exaggeration and incongruity. ***Incongruity*** usually refers to a character's inappropriate behavior or actions for a specific circumstance resulting in our laughter. The contradictions that

result from these show up in three areas—verbal humor, characterization, and comic situations.

> **incongruity** In comedy, incongruity usually refers to a character's inappropriate behavior or actions for a specific circumstance resulting in our laughter.

**Verbal Humor** Verbal humor can be anything from a pun to the most sophisticated discourse. A *pun*—usually considered the simplest form of wit—is a humorous use of words with the same sound but different meanings. A man who says he is going to start a bakery if he can "raise the dough" is making a pun.

### VERBAL HUMOR

One key element of comedy is verbal wit. No one was more the master of wit than playwright Oscar Wilde, whose epigrams and clever word play are still quoted today. Shown

here is a scene from his play *The Importance of Being Earnest* in a production at the Aldwych Theatre in London featuring Maggie Smith and Richard E. Grant. (©Robbie Jack/Corbis Entertainment/Getty Images)

Close to the pun is the *malaprop*—a word that sounds like the right word but actually means something quite different. The term comes from Mrs. Malaprop, a character in *The Rivals* by the English playwright Richard Brinsley Sheridan (1751–1816). Mrs. Malaprop wants to impress everyone with her education and erudition but ends up doing just the opposite because she constantly misuses long words. For example, she insists that her daughter is not "illegible" for marriage, meaning that her daughter is not "ineligible," and when asked to explain a situation she says that someone else will provide the "perpendiculars" when she means the "particulars."

A sophisticated form of verbal humor is the *epigram*. Oscar Wilde (1854–1900), a man devoted to verbal humor, often turned accepted values upside down in his epigrams. "I can resist anything except temptation," says one of his characters; and "A man cannot be too careful in the choice of his enemies," says another.[4]

**Comedy of Character** In comedy of character the discrepancy or incongruity lies in the way characters see themselves or pretend to be, as opposed to the way they actually are. A good example is a person who pretends to be a doctor—using obscure medicines, hypodermic needles, and Latin jargon—but who is actually a fake. Such a person is the chief character in Molière's *The Doctor in Spite of Himself*. Another example of incongruity of character is Molière's *The Would-Be Gentleman*, in which the title character, Monsieur Jourdain, a man of wealth but without taste or refinement, is determined to learn courtly behavior. He hires a fencing master, a dancing master, and a teacher of literature to teach him these skills, but in every case Jourdain is ridiculed.

184

Comedy of character is also a basic ingredient of Italian commedia dell'arte and all forms of comedy where stock characters, stereotypes, and characters with dominant traits are emphasized.

We can also find examples of comedies of characters today in film and on television. The popular TV show *The Big Bang Theory* focuses on quirky scientists and much of the comedy is created by their unusual exaggerated behaviors and relationships.

**Plot Complications** Still another way the contradictory or the ludicrous manifests itself in comedy is in plot complications, including coincidences and mistaken identity. A time-honored comic plot is Shakespeare's *The Comedy of Errors*, based on *The Menaechmi*, a play of the late third century bce by the Roman writer Titus Maccius Plautus (c. 254–184 bce). *The Comedy of Errors* in turn was the basis of a successful American musical comedy, *The Boys from Syracuse*, with songs by Richard Rodgers (1902–1979) and Lorenz Hart (1895–1943). In *The Comedy of Errors*, identical twins and their identical twin servants were separated when young. As the play opens, however, both masters and both servants—unknown to one another—are in one place. The confusion among the twin brothers and the twin servants leads to an endless series of comic encounters.

**PLOT COMPLICATIONS: A HALLMARK OF FARCE**

Frequently used devices of comedy include twists and turns in the plot, mistaken identity, unexpected developments, and ridiculous situations. Michael Frayn's comedy *Noises Off* contains an abundance of these elements. The production shown here was directed by Lindsay Posner in London. (©Geraint Lewis)

## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. What recent event in everyday life has been described as a "tragedy"? Would that event meet the traditional definition of tragedy? Does it have the elements of traditional tragedy?
2. Is there a contemporary figure whose life you believe could be dramatized as a "modern tragedy"? Describe.
3. Have you seen a film or television show that could be categorized as "domestic drama"? What are its characteristics that lead you to that categorization?
4. Have you seen a recent film that you would categorize as a "melodrama"? What are its characteristics that lead you to that categorization?
5. Have you seen films or television shows that could be categorized as farce, burlesque, satire, domestic comedy, comedy of manners, comedy of characters?
6. Can you describe any current events that might be dramatized as tragicomedy? Why or why not?

A classic scene of plot complication occurs in Sheridan's *The School for Scandal*, written in 1777. Joseph Surface, the main character in the play, is thought to be an upstanding man but is really a charlatan, whereas Charles, his brother, is mistakenly considered a reprobate. In a famous scene called the "screen scene," both Lady Teazle, a married woman visiting Surface, and her husband, Sir Peter Teazle, are hidden, one behind a screen, one in a closet. When the honest Charles suddenly appears he discovers both of them, exposing their deceptions at a single moment.

### Forms of Comedy

Comedy takes various forms, depending on the dramatist's intent and on the comic techniques emphasized.

**Farce** Most of the plays previously discussed on plot complications are ***farces***. Farce thrives on exaggeration—not only plot complications but also broad physical humor and stereotyped characters. It has no

intellectual pretensions but aims rather at entertainment and provoking laughter. In addition to excessive plot complications, its humor results from ridiculous situations as well as pratfalls and horseplay, not on the verbal wit found in more intellectual forms of comedy. Mock violence, rapid movement, and accelerating pace are hallmarks of farce. Marriage and sex are the objects of fun in *bedroom farce*, but farce can also poke fun at medicine, law, and business.

> **farce** A subclass of comedy with emphasis on exaggerated plot complications and with few or no intellectual pretensions.

**Burlesque** ***Burlesque*** also relies on knockabout physical humor, as well as gross exaggerations and, occasionally, vulgarity. Historically, burlesque was a ludicrous imitation of other forms of drama or of an individual play. A recent example is the takeoff of the hit musical *Hamilton*, titled *Spamilton*. In the United States, the term *burlesque* came to describe a type of variety show featuring low-comedy skits and attractive women.

> **burlesque** A ludicrous, comic imitation of a dramatic form, play, piece of literature, or other popular entertainment.

**Satire** A form related to traditional burlesque, but with more intellectual and moral or political content, is ***satire***. Satire uses wit, irony, and exaggeration to attack or expose evil and foolishness. Satire can attack specific figures; for example, the continuously updated and revised revue *Forbidden Broadway* makes fun of the more flamboyant or excessive stars as well as plots and storylines of Broadway musicals. It can also be more inclusive, as in the case of Molière's *Tartuffe*, which ridicules religious hypocrisy generally.

> **satire** Comic form, using irony and exaggeration, to attack and expose folly and vice.



# photo essay

## Forms of Comedy

**Comedy takes a number of forms, depending on whether the emphasis is on verbal wit, plot complications, or the characters' eccentricities. It can range all the way from intellectual comedy,**

**to high comedy (dealing with the upper classes), to domestic comedy (similar to sitcoms on TV), to slapstick farce. Shown here is a variety of types of comedy**.

(©Donald Cooper/Photostage)

Shown here is Owain Arthur as Francis Henshall in *One Man, Two Guvnors*, a farce by Richard Bean after Goldoni's *The Servant of Two Masters*, in a production directed by Nicholas Hytner at the National Theatre, London.

(©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

Shown here are David Shiner (left) and Bill Irwin (right) performing in *Old Hats*, a slapstick comedy they created at the Pershing Square Signature Center, directed by Tina Landau.

## COMEDY OF MANNERS

Comedy of manners usually deals with the upper class in a given society. It stresses verbal humor, repartee, and irony. The precursors of modern comedy of manners were the Restoration comedies popular in London in the late seventeenth century. In the nineteenth century, Oscar Wilde was a master of comedy of manners, and in the twentieth century it was Noël Coward. One of Coward's best-known plays is *Private Lives*, about two upper-class couples whose marriages become comically entangled. Shown here from left to right are: Richard Teverson as Victor, Laura Rogers as Amanda, Tom Chambers as Elyot, and Charlotte Ritchie as Sybil in a 2016 touring production in England. (©Rex Features/AP Images)

**Domestic Comedy** The comic equivalent of domestic or bourgeois drama is *domestic comedy*. Usually dealing with family situations, it is found most frequently today in television situation comedies—often called *sitcoms*—which feature members of a family or residents of a neighborhood caught in a series of complicated but amusing situations. Television shows such as *The Simpsons, Modern Family*, and *Black-ish* are examples. This type of comedy was once a staple of theatre and

can still be found onstage in the frequently revived plays by Neil Simon (1927–2018).

**Comedy of Manners** ***Comedy of manners*** is concerned with pointing up the foibles and peculiarities of the upper classes. Against a cultivated, sophisticated background, it uses verbal wit to depict the cleverness and expose the social pretensions of its characters. Rather than horseplay, it stresses witty phrases. In comedy of manners, pointed barbs are always at a premium. In England a line of comedies of manners runs from William Wycherley, William Congreve, and Oliver Goldsmith (1730–1774) in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries to Oscar Wilde in the nineteenth century and Noël Coward (1899–1973) in the twentieth.

> **comedy of manners** Form of comic drama that became popular in the English Restoration, that is set within sophisticated society, while poking fun at its characters' social pretensions, usually through verbal wit.

188

---

**Comedy of Ideas** Many of George Bernard Shaw's plays could be put under a special heading, ***comedy of ideas***, because Shaw used comic techniques to debate intellectual propositions and to further his own moral and social point of view. Though witty and amusing, Shaw's plays frequently include provocative discussions of controversial social issues. *Mrs. Warren's Profession*, for example, about a woman who runs a house of prostitution, deals with hypocrisy in society, and *Arms and the Man* is not only an amusing story of a pompous soldier but also a treatise on war and heroism.

> **comedy of ideas** A comedy in which the humor is based on intellectual and verbal aspects of comedy rather than physical comedy or comedy of character. A drama whose emphasis is on the clash of ideas, as exemplified in the plays of George Bernard Shaw.

In all its forms, comedy remains a way of looking at the world in which basic values are asserted but natural laws are suspended in order to underline human follies and foolishness—sometimes with a rueful look, sometimes with a wry smile, and sometimes with an uproarious laugh.

## TRAGICOMEDY

In twentieth-century theatre a new genre came to the forefront—***tragicomedy***. In this section, we examine this form that has proved so important in the modern period.

> **tragicomedy** During the Renaissance, a play having tragic themes and noble characters but a happy ending; today, a play in which serious and comic elements are integrated. Many plays of this type present a comic or ironic treatment of a serious theme.

## What Is Tragicomedy?

In the past, comedy has usually been set in opposition to tragedy or serious drama: Serious drama is sad, comedy is funny; serious drama makes people cry, comedy makes them laugh; serious drama arouses anger, comedy brings a smile. True, the comic view of life differs from the serious view, but the two are not always as clearly separated as this polarity suggests. Many comic dramatists are serious people; "I laugh to keep from crying" applies to many comic writers as well as to certain clowns and comedians. A great deal of serious drama contains comic elements. Shakespeare, for instance, included comic characters in several of his serious plays. The drunken porter in *Macbeth*, the gravedigger in *Hamlet*, and Falstaff in *Henry IV, Part 1* are examples.

In medieval plays, comic scenes are interpolated in the basically religious subject matter. One of the best-known of all medieval plays, *The Second Shepherds' Play*, concerns the visit of the shepherds to the manger of the newborn Christ child. While they stop in a field to spend the night, Mak, a comic character, steals a sheep and takes it to his house, where he and his wife pretend that it is their baby. When the shepherds discover what Mak has done, they toss him in a blanket, and after this horseplay the serious part of the story resumes.

The alternation of serious and comic elements is a practice of long standing, particularly in episodic plays; but *tragicomedy* does not refer to plays that shift from serious to comic and back again. It is a view in which one eye looks through a comic lens and the other through a serious lens; and the two points of view are so intermingled as to be one, like food that tastes sweet and sour at the same time. In addition to his basically serious plays and his basically comic plays, Shakespeare wrote others that seem to be a combination of tragedy and comedy, such as *Measure for Measure* and *All's Well That Ends Well*. Because they do not fit neatly into one category or the other, these plays have proved troublesome to critics—so troublesome that they have been officially dubbed *problem plays*.

### COMBINING TRAGEDY AND COMEDY

Tragicomedy has become more and more prominent in the modern period, and has taken its place alongside traditional tragedy, comedy, and other genres as a major form of our time. In several of Shakespeare's so-called problem plays, comic and serious elements are intermixed in the manner of contemporary tragicomedy. A good example is *All's Well That Ends Well*, which features a strange, almost bizarre, mixture of fairy-tale elements with cynical realism. Shown here is James Garnon as Parolles in a London production at Shakespeare's Globe Theatre, directed by John Dove. (©Geraint Lewis)

The "problem," however, arises largely because of difficulty in accepting the tragicomic point of view, for these plays have many of the attributes of the fusion of the tragic and the comic. A sense of comedy pervades these plays, the idea that all will end well and that much of what happens is ludicrous or ridiculous; at the same time, the serious effects of a character's actions are not dismissed. Unlike true comedy, in which a fall on the sidewalk or a temporary danger has no serious consequences, these plays contain actions that appear quite serious. And so we have tragicomedy.

## Modern Tragicomedy

In the modern period—during the past 100 years or so—tragicomedy has become the primary approach of many of the best playwrights. As suggested in the chapter "The Audience: Its Role and Imagination," these writers are not creating in a vacuum; they



are part of the world in which they live, and ours is an age that has adopted a tragicomic viewpoint more extensively than most previous ages. As if to keynote this attitude and set the tone, the Danish philosopher Søren Kierkegaard (1813–1855) in 1842 wrote: "Existence itself, the act of existence, is a striving and is both pathetic and comic in the same degree."[5]

### COMEDIES OF MENACE

Comedies range widely, from the pure entertainment of farce and light comedy to more substantive and probing comedies with a strong serious component. The playwright Harold Pinter calls many of his plays comedies of menace, meaning that they can provoke laughter but also have a deeper, more disturbing, sometimes frightening element. One of Pinter's best-known plays exemplifying this is *The Birthday Party*. Shown here are Timothy West as Goldberg and Nigel Terry as McCann in a production of the play at the Piccadilly Theatre in London. (©PA Images/Alamy Stock Photo)

The plays of Anton Chekhov, written at the turn of the twentieth century, reflect the spirit described by Kierkegaard. Chekhov called two

of his major plays *comedies*; but Stanislavski, who directed them, called them *tragedies*—an indication of the confusion arising from Chekhov's mixture of the serious and the comic.

An example of Chekhov's approach is a scene at the end of the third act of *Uncle Vanya* (1899). The lives of Vanya and his niece, Sonya, have been ruined by Sonya's father, a professor. At the moment where Sonya tells her father how cruel and thoughtless he is, Vanya comes in, waving a pistol in the air, and shoots twice at the professor, but misses both times. There is some doubt that Vanya honestly means to kill the professor and the scene itself is both tragic and comic: The two elements are inextricably joined together.

191

---

Theatre of the absurd (discussed below) is an example of modern tragicomedy. It probes deeply into human problems and casts a cold eye on the world, and yet it is also imbued with a comic spirit. The plays of Harold Pinter (1930–2008), a writer associated with theatre of the absurd, have been called *comedies of menace*, a phrase suggesting the idea of a theatre simultaneously terrifying and entertaining.

## THEATRE OF THE ABSURD

After World War II, a new type of theatre emerged in Europe and the United States, which the critic Martin Esslin called ***theatre of the absurd***. Although the dramatists whose work falls into this category do not write in identical styles and are not really a "school" of writers, they do have enough in common to be considered together. Esslin took the name for this form of theatre from a quotation in *The Myth of Sisyphus* by the French writer, dramatist, and philosopher Albert Camus (1913–1960). In *The Myth of Sisyphus*, Camus says that in the modern age there is a separation between "man and his life, the actor and his setting," and that this separation "constitutes the feeling of Absurdity."[6]

**theatre of the absurd** Twentieth-century plays expressing the dramatists' sense of absurdity and futility of human existence through the dramatic techniques they employ.

**THEATRE OF THE ABSURD**

Non sequitur, nonsensical language, existential characters, ridiculous situations—these are hallmarks of theatre of the absurd, which can also be viewed as a type of tragicomedy. One example is Eugene Ionesco's *Exit the King*. Shown here, left to right, are Lauren Ambrose (as Queen Marie), Geoffrey Rush (King Berenger), William Sadler (the Doctor, in the background), and Susan Sarandon (Queen Marguerite, the king's wife) in a 2009 Broadway production adapted and directed by Neil Armfield. (©Joan Marcus)

Plays falling into the category of absurdism convey humanity's sense of alienation and its loss of bearings in an illogical, unjust, and ridiculous world. Although serious, this viewpoint is generally depicted in plays with considerable humor; an ironic note runs through much of theatre of the absurd.

A prime example of theatre of the absurd is Beckett's *Waiting for Godot*. In this play Beckett has given us one of the most telling expressions of loneliness and futility ever written: two tramps on a barren plain waiting every day for a supreme being called "Godot," who they think will come but who never does. At the same time, they themselves are comic. They wear baggy pants like burlesque comedians, and engage in any number of vaudeville routines. Also, the characters frequently say one thing and do just the opposite. One says

to the other, “Well, shall we go?” and the other says, “Yes, let’s go.” But having said this, they don’t move.

192

### TRAGICOMEDY: FUNNY AND SAD AT THE SAME TIME

Several plays by the Russian writer Anton Chekhov could be described as tragicomedies containing elements of both comedy and tragedy, mixed together in a profound way. The scene here is from Chekhov’s *Uncle Vanya* with June Watson as Marina, Ken Stott as Vanya, Paul Freeman as Serebryakov, and Anna Friel as Yelena. Directed by Lindsay Posner, the production was at the Vaudeville Theatre in London. (©Robbie Jack/Corbis Entertainment/Getty Images)

Absurdist plays suggest the idea of absurdity both in what they say—that is, their content—and in the way they say it, their form. Their structure, therefore, is a departure from dramatic structures of the past.

## Absurdist Plots: Illogicality

Traditional plots in drama proceed in a logical way from a beginning through the development of the plot to a conclusion, an arrangement that suggests an ordered universe. In contrast, many absurdist plays not only proclaim absurdity but also embody it.

An example is *The Bald Soprano* by Eugène Ionesco. The very title of the play turns out to be nonsense; a bald soprano is mentioned once in the play, but with no explanation, and it is clear that the bald soprano has nothing whatever to do with the play as a whole. The absurdity of the piece is manifest the moment the curtain goes up. A typical English couple are sitting in a living room when the clock on the mantle strikes seventeen times; the wife's first words are, "There, it's nine o'clock."

193

## PLAYING YOUR PART: THINKING ABOUT THEATRE

1. A play by Henrik Ibsen, Anton Chekhov, Tennessee Williams, Lorraine Hansberry, or August Wilson might be set in a time 50 or 100 years ago. What do you think it is about these dramas that allow audience members in the twenty-first century to identify strongly with the characters and the situations in the play?
2. Which kind of play do you prefer: a classic tragedy, a serious contemporary drama, a knockabout farce, a comedy, a musical? Can you explain why you prefer one type over the others?
3. Do you favor a play with a strong storyline, a tight plot, and unexpected twists and turns? Or do you prefer a looser play that reflects the randomness of everyday life? What do you think attracts you to these characteristics?

### Absurdist Language: Nonsense and Non Sequitur

Events and characters are frequently illogical in theatre of the absurd, and so too is language. *Non sequitur* is a Latin term meaning "it does not follow"; it implies that something does not follow from what has gone before, and it perfectly describes the method of theatre of the absurd. Sentences do not follow in sequence, and words do not mean what we expect them to mean.

An example of the irrationality or debasement of language is found in Beckett's *Waiting for Godot*. The character of Lucky does not speak for most of his time onstage, but at the end of the first act he delivers a long speech consisting of incoherent religious and legalistic jargon. The opening lines offer a small sample:

> Given the existence as uttered forth in the public works of Puncher and Wattmann of a personal God quaquaquaqua with white beard quaquaquaqua outside time without extension who from the heights of divine apathia divine athambia divine aphasia loves us dearly with some exceptions for reasons unknown but time will tell.[7]

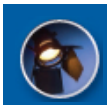
Numerous examples of such language appear not only in Ionesco's and Beckett's plays but in plays written by many other absurdist writers.

### Absurdist Characters: Existential Beings

A significant feature of absurdist plays is the handling of characters. Not only is there an element of the ridiculous in the characters' actions, but they frequently exemplify an *existential* point of view. In theatre, existentialism suggests that characters have no personal history and therefore no specific causes for their actions. The two main characters in *Waiting for Godot*, for example, are devoid of biography and personal motivation; we know nothing of their family life or their occupations. They meet every day at a crossroads to wait for Godot, but how long they have been coming there, or what they do when they are not there, remains a mystery.

In addition to the plays of the absurdists, other modern plays also incorporate the tragicomic spirit. In *The Visit*, by Friedrich Dürrenmatt (1921–1990), a Swiss dramatist, a wealthy woman returns to her birthplace, a small, poverty-stricken village. She offers a huge sum of money to the village on the condition that the citizens murder a storekeeper who wronged her when she was young. The townspeople express horror at the idea, but at the same time they begin buying expensive items on credit—some from the man's own store. There is a comic quality to these scenes, but the conclusion is not funny, for the man is eventually murdered by his greedy neighbors.





## IN FOCUS: MANY ADDITIONAL FORMS AND THE DEBATE OVER CATEGORIZATION

As can be seen in our discussions of tragicomedy and theatre of the absurd, dramas often defy categorization. Plays frequently mix genres and styles. We have noted how Shakespeare wrote plays that did not clearly fit into either tragedy or comedy and some earlier critics referred to them as "problem" plays.

In the late twentieth century, theorists who are referred to as *postmodernists*, and whose concepts we will discuss more fully later, questioned the validity of categorizing dramas by genre. They argued that such categorization led to a hierarchy that was built on sociopolitical and aesthetic biases. Why should tragedy or comedy be privileged over melodrama or domestic drama? Does privileging traditional tragedy over modern tragedy have sociopolitical (and in many cases, gender) implications? Can we really distinguish between any of these genres and do such broad categories even make sense? Do audiences or authors differentiate in this fashion or does each playwright create a unique work and does each audience member have his or her own unique reaction to that work? Is there really a distinction between more popular theatrical forms and entertainments and so-called high art?

We can clearly see the problem of trying to categorize drama since the end of the nineteenth century. Throughout this time period there have been many avant-garde and popular theatrical forms that do not neatly fit into any of the categories discussed in this chapter.

Expressionism and surrealism, forms that developed early in the twentieth century, tried to capture the inner workings of the human mind: expressionism presenting drama from the point of view of the protagonist and surrealism trying to mimic the dream and other subconscious states.

The German playwright Bertolt Brecht, between the two World Wars and shortly after World War II, created what he called “epic” theatre, in which audience members were constantly reminded they were in the theatre. Songs broke up the action of his plays and underscored his political messages, and narrators were used to comment on the sociopolitical meaning of the dramatic action.

In the past half century, many playwrights have written documentary plays based on actual historic events, using testimonies and archival documents as their dramatic material. Since the 1960s, moreover, there have been experimental companies that staged communally created performance pieces that engaged audiences in a variety of ways. As we shall see in the chapter “Global Theatre Today: Diverse and Global,” contemporary multicultural, feminist, LGBTQ, and global playwrights, as well as solo performance artists, have experimented with a multitude of styles and forms.

And, of course, over the past 100 years, there have been many popular theatre forms. One example is musical theatre (discussed

more fully in "The Theatre Today"), which incorporates plot (referred to as the *book* of a musical), songs, and dance to tell a story. There are also many subcategories of musical theatre.

While we will discuss the development of these and other forms more fully in the final two chapters of our text, the key question that these examples raise is: Can we actually categorize plays and are there theatre works that defy categorization?

In tragicomedy, a smile is frequently cynical, a chuckle may be tinged with a threat, and laughter is sometimes bitter. In the past, the attitude that produced these combinations was the exception rather than the rule. In our day, it seems far more prevalent, not to say relevant. As a result, tragicomedy has taken its place as a major form alongside the more traditional approaches.

195

## SUMMARY

1. Tragedy attempts to ask very basic questions about human existence: Why do men and women suffer? Is there justice in the world? What are the limits of human endurance and achievement? Tragedy presupposes an indifferent and sometimes malevolent universe in which the innocent suffer and there is inexplicable cruelty. It also assumes that certain men and women will confront and defy fate, even if they are overcome in the process.
2. Tragedy can be classified as traditional or modern. In traditional tragedy the chief characters are persons of stature—kings, queens, and the nobility. The central figure is caught in a series of tragic circumstances, which are irretrievable. The hero or heroine is willing to fight and die for a cause. The language of the play is verse.
3. Modern tragedy involves ordinary people rather than the nobility, and it is generally written in prose rather than verse. In this modern form, the deeper meanings of tragedy are explored by nonverbal elements and by the cumulative or overall effect of events as well as by verbal means.
4. There are several kinds of nontragic serious plays, the most notable being heroic drama, bourgeois or domestic

drama, and melodrama.

**5**. Heroic drama has many of the same elements as traditional tragedy—it frequently deals with highborn characters and is often in verse. In contrast to tragedy, however, it has a happy ending or an ending in which the death of the main character is considered a triumph, not a defeat.

**6**. Bourgeois or domestic drama deals with ordinary people, always seriously but not always tragically. It stresses the problems of the middle and lower classes and became a particularly prominent form in the twentieth century.

**7**. Melodrama features exaggerated characters and events arranged to create horror or suspense or to present a didactic argument for some political, moral, or social point of view.

**8**. Comedy takes a different approach from serious forms of drama. It sees the humor and incongruity in people and situations. Comic dramatists accept a social and moral order and suspend natural laws (a man falls flat on his face but does not really hurt himself).

**9**. Comedy is developed by means of several techniques. *Verbal humor* turns words upside down and creates puns, malapropisms, and inversions of meaning. *Comedy of character* creates men and women who take extreme positions, make fools of themselves, or contradict themselves. *Plot complications* create mistaken identity, coincidences, and people who turn up unexpectedly in the wrong house or the wrong bedroom. There are also physical aspects to comedy: slapstick and horseplay.

**10**. From these techniques, the dramatist fashions various kinds of comedy. For instance, depending on the degree of exaggeration, a comedy can be *farce* or *comedy of manners*; farce features strong physical humor, whereas comedy of manners relies more on verbal wit.

**11**. Another type of comedy is *domestic comedy*, which deals with ordinary people in familiar situations.

**12**. Depending on its intent, comedy can be designed to entertain, as with *farce* or *burlesque*; or to correct vices, in which case it becomes *satire*. Many of Shaw's plays represent *comedy of ideas*.

**13**. Serious and comic elements can be mixed in theatre. Many tragedies have comic relief—humorous scenes and characters interspersed in serious material.

**14**. Authentic tragicomedy fuses, or synthesizes, two elements—one serious, the other comic. We laugh and cry at the same time. Chekhov, Beckett, Dürrenmatt, and writers of theatre of the absurd use tragicomedy in their plays. Some commentators feel that this is the form most truly characteristic of our time.

**Design Elements:** In Focus box (spotlight): ©Exactostock/SuperStock; Playing Your Part box (theatre seats): ©Ron Chapple/Getty Images

# Part Four

## The Designers

**9 Scenery**

**10 Stage Costumes**

**11 Lighting and Sound**

### A SETTING FOR *THE CHERRY ORCHARD*

The Russian dramatist Anton Chekhov created a type of realistic modern drama, subtle and low-key, that had a profound influence on subsequent dramatists. The scene design we see here for Chekhov's *The Cherry Orchard* has the simplicity, the openness that allows for the emphasis to be on the performers and their actions. At the same time it creates a somber mood appropriate to the play's tone and mood. The scene shows Madame Ranevskaya, portrayed by Zoe Wannamaker at the left, who is fighting desperately to keep the family home and orchard that are in danger of being taken

from her. The scene designer was Bunny Christie. The production was directed by Howard Davies at London's National Theatre. (©Geraint Lewis)

198

Our experience of seeing a performance does not occur in a visual vacuum. We sit in the theatre watching what unfolds before us. Naturally, we focus most keenly on the performers who are speaking and moving about the stage. But the visual images of scenery, costumes, and lighting are always present. We also become aware of the elements of sound that are part of the production. The creation of these effects is the responsibility of designers.

As in other areas, there is a parallel between design elements in theatre and our experiences in everyday life. Every building or room we enter can be regarded as a form of stage set. Interior decorating, along with architectural design—the creation of a special atmosphere in a home or a public building—constitutes scene design in real life. A church decorated for a wedding is a form of stage set; so too is the posh lobby of a hotel, or an apartment interior with flowers, candlelight, and soft music. In every case the "designer"—the person who created the setting—has selected elements that signal something to us, thus making an impression.

Just as scenic design surrounds our daily lives, costumes are all around us. For instance, there are the outfits people wear in a holiday parade, at a masquerade ball, or in a pageant. Other obvious examples of the costumes we frequently see are in fashion magazines and runway shows. The dresses and other outfits created by top-name designers for haute couture shows are not what women would ordinarily wear; they are exotic, extreme, and offbeat.

In a less obvious way, costumes also play a significant role in daily life. We wear clothing not only for comfort, but also for the information we want to convey to others about ourselves. If we look around us, we are surrounded by costumes

The austere plain black robes worn by judges indicate authority and formality. Seen here are the judges of the Texas Court of Criminal Appeals in Austin. ©Bob Child/AP Images

High fashion—a model walks the runway during a show at the Paris Womenswear Fashion Week for the Spring/Summer 2010 season. ©Karl Prouse/Catwalking/Getty Images



every day: the formal, subdued uniform of a police officer; the sparkling outfits of a marching band at a football game; a judge's long black robe; the cap and gown for graduation; the dresses worn by bridesmaids at a formal wedding. In this sense, everything we wear is a form of costume.

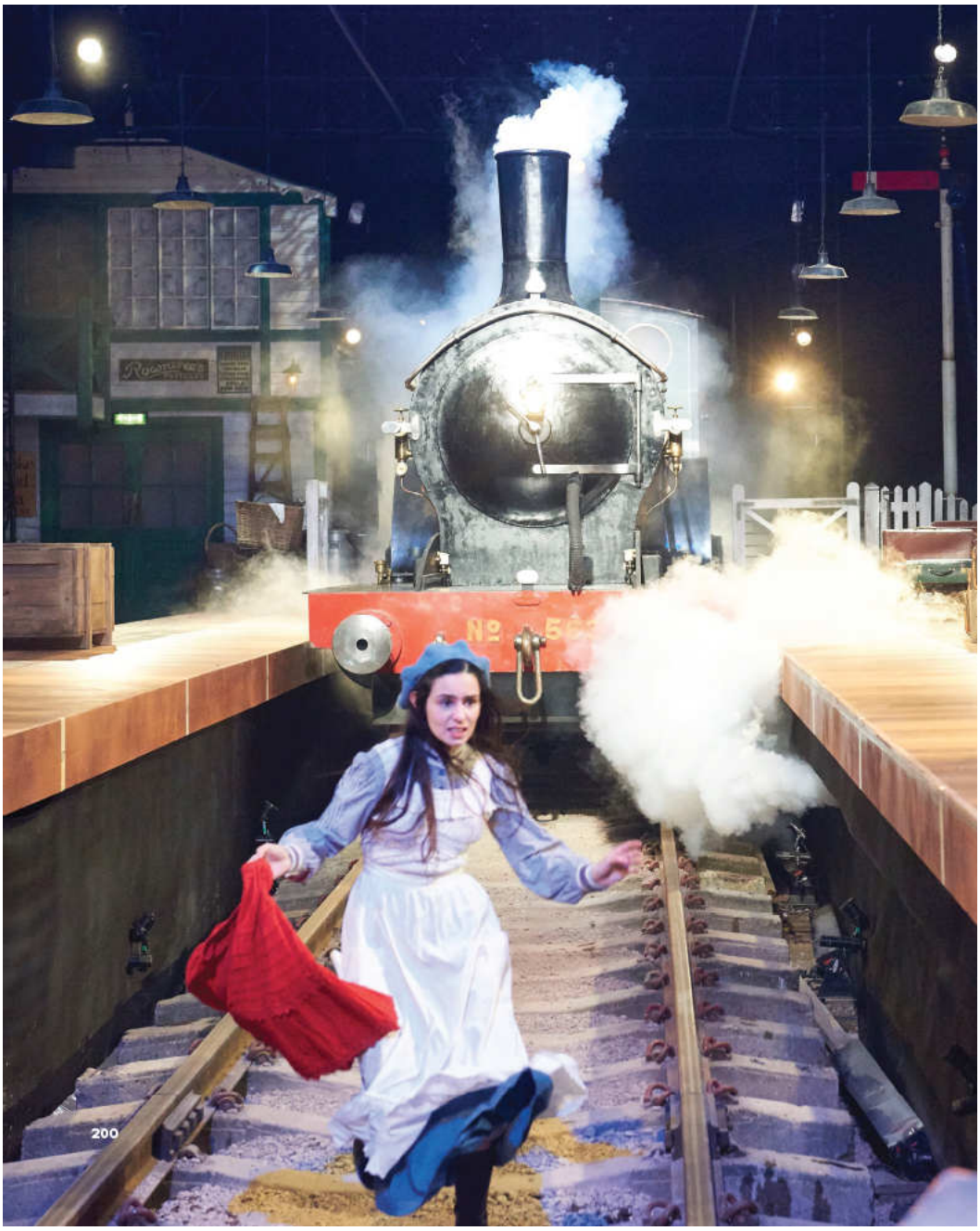
Stage lighting, quite simply, includes all forms of illumination on the stage. The lighting designer makes decisions in every area of lighting: the color of the lights, the mixture of colors, the number of lights, the intensity and brightness of the lights, the angles at which lights strike performers, and the length of time required for lights to come up or fade out.

As with costumes and scenery, we encounter lighting design in daily life: a dance club may use varying levels of light in addition to strobes or black lights to create a party atmosphere or to encourage people to dance.

A fourth type of designer in theatre is often referred to as the aural or sound designer. This is the person who arranges the sound components. Sound, of course, is all around us: the conversations in a meeting place; trains, trucks, and automobiles that pass by; music that blares from sound systems. In theatre, the sound designer is responsible for sound effects, recorded or digitized music, and the placement and synchronization of microphones for the performers. Not only must he or she create all aural material not originating with the performers; the sound designer must also blend the sound from all sources.

In Part Four we examine the work of the scenery, costume, lighting, and sound designers, which includes the various skilled theatre technicians who assist designers in bringing their visions and sounds to life.

Fireworks are part of colorful pyrotechnic displays on many occasions, such as these starbursts for New Year's Eve in Dubai, UAE. ©Patryk Kosmider/Shutterstock




## SCENE DESIGN PROVIDES THE VISUAL ENVIRONMENT

For a production of *The Railway Children* at the King's Cross Theatre in London, the designer, Joanna Scotcher, has created an arresting image of a sunken railroad track onstage with a young woman (played by Serena Manteghi) fleeing an oncoming locomotive spewing steam. The play was written by

Mike Kenny, based on the book by E. Nesbit, and directed by Damian Cruden. (©Geraint Lewis)



# 9

# Scenery

When we attend a theatre production, we first encounter the environment—the look and size of the space. Is it large or small, formal or informal? Then, as the presentation begins, we become aware of the performers and the roles they are playing, as well as the story that begins to unfold.

But along with these elements, which we immediately notice, there are other design factors that impact how we experience a production: the scenery (possibly including video and projections), costumes, lighting, and sound. In their own way, these are indispensable elements of the theatre experience.

## THE AUDIENCE'S VIEW

As we begin to take in the visual elements of a performance, we should look for specifics. Is the scenery realistic, resembling a recognizable kitchen, bedroom, or office? Or is the scenery abstract: shapes, steps, levels, platforms on a relatively bare stage? Is it futuristic or dreamlike? What about the costumes? Are they like everyday clothes, or do they suggest some period: ancient Rome, the American Revolution, the Civil War, the 1920s, the 1960s? Are the costumes fanciful, like Halloween outfits, or do they resemble clothes from daily life: judges' robes, police uniforms, physicians' outfits?

As for lighting, is it what we would expect in a normal setting, coming from sunlight outdoors, or lamps indoors? Or perhaps the lighting is abstract and arbitrary: beams of light cutting through the darkness, special lighting illuminating one part of the stage while the rest is dark. We must also take sound into account. Are there arbitrary sounds: a music track, special effects such as sudden eruptions of synthetic noises? Or is the sound realistic: sirens for ambulances, thunder for a storm?

In all these areas, we should be conscious of the visual and aural signals that are being sent continuously. As for who prepares these signals, they are the designers and all the technicians and others who work with them.

## THE SCENE DESIGNER

The scene designer creates the visual world in which a play unfolds. Together with the playwright and the director, the scene designer determines whether a scene is realistic or in the realm of fantasy. He or she decides on the colors, shapes, and visual style that the spectators view and the actors inhabit. The set indicates the kind of world we are in—outdoors or indoors; an affluent environment or a humble one; a time period long ago, today, or in the future. When different locales are called for—in a play with an episodic structure, for instance—the scene designer must ensure that we move smoothly and quickly from one locale to another.

Designers and lead technicians in their respective areas must deal with practical as well as aesthetic considerations. A scene designer must know in which direction a door should open onstage and how high each tread should be on a flight of stairs. A lighting designer must know exactly how many feet above a performer's head a particular light should be placed and whether it requires a 500- or 750-watt lamp. A costume designer must know how much material it takes to make a certain kind of dress and how to "build" clothes so that performers can wear them with confidence and have freedom of movement. A sound designer must know about acoustics, be familiar with echoes, and understand electronic sound systems.

As in other elements of theatre, symbols play a large role in design. A single item onstage can suggest an entire room—a bookcase, for instance, suggests a professor's office or a library; a stained-glass window suspended in midair suggests a church or synagogue. A stage filled with a bright yellow-orange glow suggests a cheerful sunny day, whereas a single shaft of pale blue light suggests moonlight or an eerie graveyard at night. How designers deal with the aesthetic and practical requirements of the stage will be clearer when we examine the subject in detail: scene design in this chapter, costumes and lighting and sound in the following chapters.

## A BRIEF HISTORY OF STAGE DESIGN

At the beginning of both Western and Asian theatre there was little of what we now call scene design. The stage itself was the background for the action. In Greek theatre, for instance, the facade of the stage house usually represented a palace or some other imposing edifice. In medieval theatre, "mansions" were set up in town squares. These were

small set pieces representing such things as Noah's ark, the whale that swallowed Jonah, and the manger in which Christ was born.

The Elizabethan and Spanish theatres of the Renaissance had bare stages in which the facade of the stage house functioned as the background for the action, just as it had in Greece. In Elizabethan England and Spain, set pieces as well as furniture such as thrones were used, but there was still little scenery as we know it. More elaborate settings began to appear along with the proscenium theatres in Italy and later in France and England in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. These were the theatres (described in the chapter "Theatre Spaces") where designers such as the Bibiena family came to the forefront.

Since then, theatre has experienced improved stage machinery (that is, the means by which scenery is shifted) as well as increasing realism in depicting scenes; also, the use of videos and projections and the use of computers to assist in creating



designs. This growing emphasis on mechanization, technology, and realism has been the basis of much modern stage scenery.

## SCENIC DESIGN TODAY

We are accustomed to "stage settings" in everyday life; but as with other elements in theatre, there is an important difference between interior decoration in real life and set designs for the stage. For example, the stage designer must deal with scale: the relationship of the performer in the set to his or her surroundings. This must in turn correspond to the scale of settings we experience in the world outside the theatre. The scale in a stage set may be different from that of a living room or a courtroom in real life. Robert Edmond Jones, who is often considered the most outstanding American scene designer of the first half of the twentieth century, put it in these terms:

> A good scene should be, not a picture, but an image. Scene-designing is not what most people imagine it is—a branch of interior decorating. There is no more reason for a room on a stage to be a reproduction of an actual room than for an actor who plays the part of Napoleon to be Napoleon or for an actor who plays Death in the old morality play to be dead. Everything that is actual must undergo a strange metamorphosis, a kind of seachange, before it can become truth in the theater.[1]

A stage set signals an atmosphere to us in the same way as a room in real life, but the scene designer must go a step further. As has been pointed out many times, theatre is not life: It resembles life. It has, as Jones suggests, both an opportunity and an obligation to be more than mere reproduction.

The special nature of scenery and other elements of scene design will be clearer when we examine the objectives and functions of scene design.

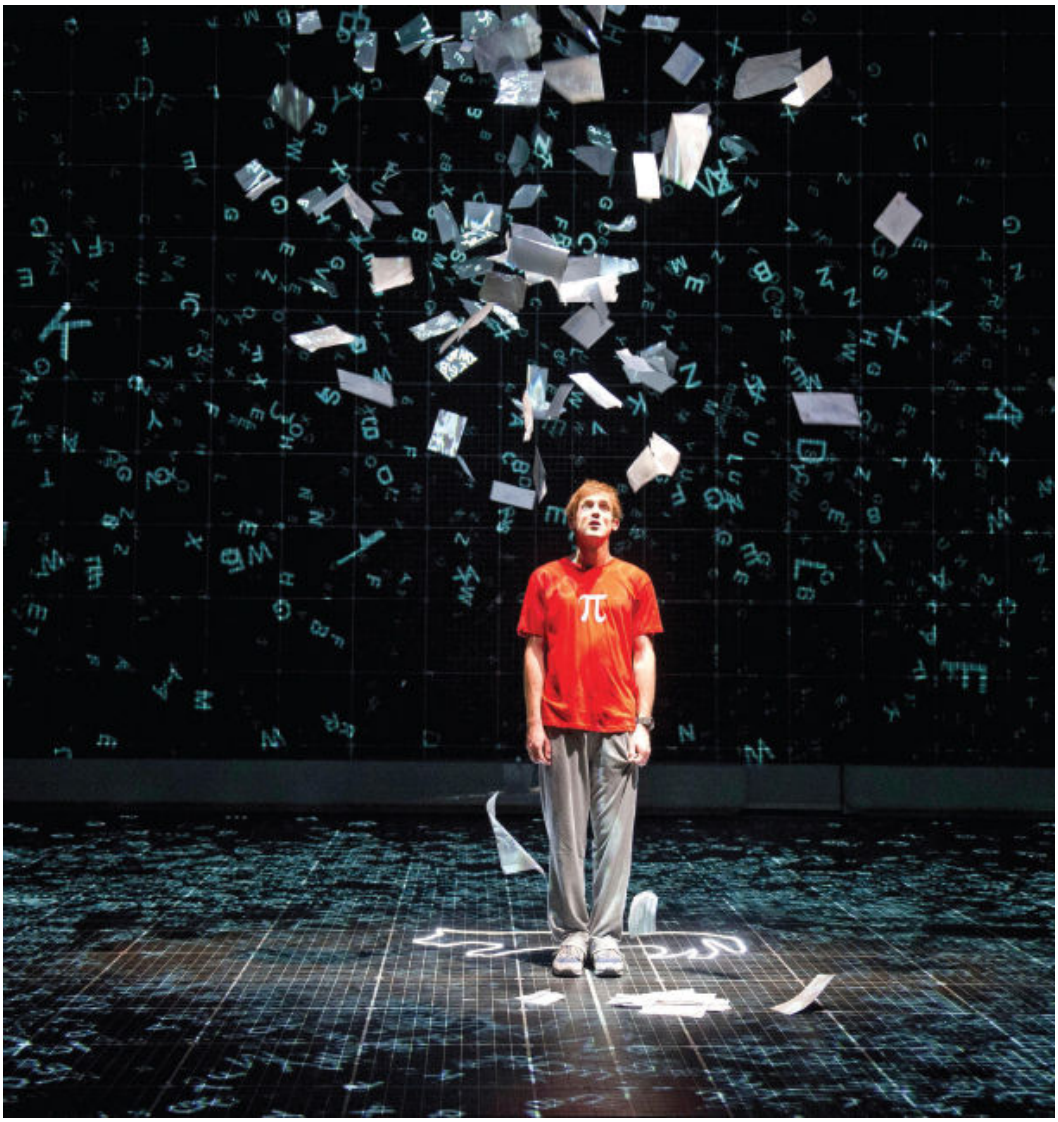
## The Scene Designer's Objectives

In preparing scenery for a stage production, a scene designer has the following objectives:

1. Help set the tone and style of the production.
2. Establish the locale and period in which the play takes place.
3. Develop a design concept consistent with the director's concept.
4. Provide a central image or metaphor, where appropriate.
5. Ensure that scenery is coordinated with other production elements.
6. Solve practical design problems.

**Establishing Tone and Style** A stage setting can help establish the mood, style, and meaning of a play. In the arts, style refers to the manner in which a work is done: how scenery looks, how a playwright uses language or exaggerates dramatic elements, how performers portray characters. (A realistic acting style, for example, resembles the way people behave in everyday life; in contrast, the lofty quality of traditional tragedy calls for formal, larger-than-life movements and gestures.)

A slapstick farce might call for a design style involving comic, exaggerated scenery, like a cartoon; and perhaps for outrageous colors, such as bright reds and oranges. Such scenery would match the acting, which would also be exaggerated, with lots of physical comedy —people tripping over carpets, opening the wrong doors, and so forth. A satire would call for a comment in the design, like the twist in the lines of a caricature in a political cartoon. A serious play would call for less exaggerated or less comic scenery.



## SCENERY: AN ENVIRONMENT FOR A PLAY

Scenery provides the visual world in which a performance takes place. It indicates whether a play is realistic, expressionistic, or fantastic and where the action takes place: inside a home, at various locations, in some exterior setting; and also whether the story occurs in a past era or at the present time. For *The Curious Incident of the Dog in the Night-Time*, the scene designer, Bunny Christie, created a visual environment filled with mathematical formulas, equations, and diagrams—some indicated in silhouette; others in falling papers covered with formulas—representing the world in which the main character, Christopher Boone, exists. The production shown here at the National Theatre in London was

directed by Marianne Elliott. Christopher was played by Graham Butler. (©Geraint Lewis/Alamy Stock Photo)

As an illustration of what is called for in scene design, let us consider two plays by the Spanish playwright Federico García Lorca. His *Blood Wedding* is the story of a young bride-to-be who runs away with a former lover on the day she is to be married. The two flee to a forest. In the forest, allegorical figures of the Moon and a Beggar Woman, who represents Death, seem to echo the fierce emotional struggle taking place within the characters who are torn between duty to their families and passion for each other. For this part of the play, the scenery and costumes must have the same sense of mystery, of the unreal, which rules the characters. The forest should not have real trees but should represent the thicket of emotions in which the man and woman are entangled; the costumes of the Moon and the Beggar Woman should not be realistic but should suggest the forces that endanger the lovers.

205

## MOOD AND STYLE

The designers should establish the mood, tone, and style of a production, a challenge that is accomplished with architectural shapes, colors, fabrics, furniture, and other elements. Note here the stage setting of the facade of a house with projections of ominous lighting on a rear screen and the stage floor. (©Chris Selby/Alamy Stock Photo)

Another play by García Lorca, *The House of Bernarda Alba*, is a contrast in style: It has no fantasy or fantastic characters. This play concerns a woman and her five daughters. The mother has grown to hate and distrust men, and so she locks up her house, like a closed convent, preventing her daughters from going out. From a design point of view, it is important to convey the closed-in, cloistered feeling of the house in which the daughters are held as virtual prisoners. The walls of the house and its furniture should all have solid reality, creating an atmosphere that will convey a sense of entrapment.

Scene design is especially important in indicating to us whether a play is realistic or departs from realism. ***Realism*** in theatre means that everything connected with a production conforms to our observation of the world around us. This includes the way characters speak and behave, the clothes they wear, the events that occur in the play, and the physical environment. Characters presented in a living room or a bar, for example, will look and act as we expect people in those settings to look and act.

**realism** Broadly, an attempt to present onstage people, places, and events corresponding to those in everyday life.

206

## REALISTIC AND NONREALISTIC SCENERY

Generally, realism and nonrealism call for different design elements, underscoring the difference in style between these two types of theatre. Here (top) we see an extremely realistic set, designed by James Noone for a production of William Inge's *Bus Stop* at the Huntington Theatre, directed by Nicholas Martin, lighting design by Philip Rosenberg, costume design by Miranda Hoffman. The bottom scene is a surrealistic setting designed by the avant-garde director Robert Wilson for his adaptation of the nineteenth-century plays *Faust, Parts 1 and 2* by Johann Wolfgang von Goethe, first performed in 2015. There is no attempt to portray reality; rather, there is a surrealistic presentation of images and ideas. (top: ©T Charles Erickson; bottom: ©David Baltzer/Zenit/laif/Redux)

On the other hand, ***nonrealism (or departures from realism***) means all types of



theatre that depart from observable reality. A musical in which characters sing and dance is nonrealistic because we do not ordinarily go around singing and dancing in public places. A play like Shakespeare's *Macbeth* is unrealistic because it has witches and ghosts—two types of creatures not encountered in our everyday existence. Also, the language of the play is poetry, and there are soliloquies in which characters speak thoughts out loud—again, these are elements that depart from the reality we see in our daily lives.

Nonrealistic elements are, of course, highly theatrical and can increase our pleasure and excitement. Moreover, they often indicate a deeper reality than we see on the surface. Thus "departures from realism" does not imply that something is not genuine or not true; it simply means that something is a departure from what we see in the world around us.

**nonrealism (or departures from realism)** All types of theatre that depart from observable reality.

The terms, then, are simply ways of categorizing aspects of theatre and are not mutually exclusive; they can be a helpful starting point in evaluating scene design because scenery can quickly signal to an audience the type of world we are viewing.

**Establishing Locale and Period** Whether realistic or not, a stage set should tell us where and when the play takes place. Is the locale a bar? A bedroom? A courtroom? A palace? A forest? The set should also indicate the time period. A kitchen with old-fashioned utensils and no electric appliances sets the play in the past. An early radio and an icebox might tell us that the period is the 1920s. A spaceship or the landscape of a faraway planet would suggest that the play is set in the future.

In addition to indicating time and place, the setting can also tell us what kinds of characters a play is about. For example, the characters may be neat and formal or lazy and sloppy. They may be kings and queens or members of an ordinary suburban family. The scenery should suggest these things immediately.

**Developing a Design Concept** In order to convey information, the scene designer frequently develops a *design concept*. Such a concept should be arrived at in consultation with the director and should complement the directorial concept, as discussed previously. The design concept is a unifying idea carried out visually. For García Lorca's *The House of Bernarda Alba*, for example, such a concept would be a claustrophobic setting that sets the tone for the entire play.

A strong design concept is particularly important when the time and place of a play have been shifted. Modern stage designs for Shakespeare's *A Midsummer Night's Dream* illustrate this point. In most productions, this play is performed in a palace and a forest, as suggested by the text. But the director Peter Brook, in his landmark production, wanted to give the play a clean, spare look so that the audience would see its contemporary implications. Accordingly, the scene designer, Sally Jacobs (b. 1932), fashioned a single set

consisting of three bare white walls, rather like the walls of a gymnasium. This single set was used as the background for all the scenes in the play, giving visual unity to the production and also creating a modern, somewhat abstract atmosphere. As part of the action, trapezes were lowered onto the stage at various times, and in some scenes the performers actually played their parts suspended in midair.

A more recent example of a distinctive design concept was that of director Diane Paulus, scene designer Scott Pask, and other members of the design team to create onstage the world of a circus for a Broadway revival of the musical *Pippin* in 2013. To accomplish this, acrobats, high-wire performers, jugglers, and a host of other circus artists were incorporated into the production.

208

## SCENE DESIGN SETS THE TONE

Good scene design sets the tone and style of a production, letting the audience know where and when the action takes place and whether the play is a tragedy, a comedy, or some other type of drama. Also, it harmonizes with other elements of the production—script, acting, and direction—to create a unified whole. The scene designer Patrick Carl created this rural Russian setting for Chekhov's *The Three Sisters*,

directed by Joe Dowling at the Guthrie Theater. The costumes are by Paul Tazewell. (©T Charles Erickson)

**Providing a Central Image or Metaphor** The design concept is closely related to the idea of a central image or metaphor. Stage design not only must be consistent with the play; it should have its own integrity. The elements of the design—lines, shapes, and colors—should add up to a complete visual universe for the play. Often, therefore, the designer tries to develop a central image or metaphor. In a 2013 production of *The Color Purple*, designed by John Doyle, who was also the director, the set was an abstract recreation of a single room, a wooden house, with a number of straight-back chairs hanging on the back wall as the central image. Company members would take chairs from the wall and create various spaces that represented the constant change of environment as the lead character went on her journey.

**Coordinating Scenery with the Whole** Because scenic elements have such strong symbolic value and are so important to the overall effect of a production, the designer needs to provide scenery consistent with the playwright's intent and the director's concept. If the text and acting are highly stylized, the setting should be stylized too. If the text and acting are realistic, the setting should also be realistic, rather than, say, a fantastic or overpowering spectacle. As with other elements, the setting should contribute to the overall effect of a production.

**A CENTRAL DESIGN IMAGE**

For a production of the musical *The Color Purple*, director and designer John Doyle created a central design concept consisting of a bare wooden wall on which chairs were hung. To create different locales and scenes, performers would take chairs off the wall and place them onstage. They could thus indicate a wide variety of spaces in a very novel and economic way. Based on the novel by Alice Walker, the book was by Marsha Norman and the music by Brenda Russell. Shown here in the role of Harpo is Adebayo Bolaji. (©Geraint Lewis/Alamy Stock Photo)

**Solving Practical Design Problems** Finally, the scene designer must deal with practical problems of design. Many of these involve physical elements of stage design, to which we'll now turn.

### Elements of Scene Design

As the scene designer proceeds, he or she makes use of the following five elements:

1. *Line*, the outline or silhouette of elements onstage; for example, predominantly curved lines versus sharply angular lines.
2. *Mass*, the overall bulk or weight of scenic elements; for example, a series of high, heavy platforms or fortress walls versus a bare stage

or a stage with only a single tree on it.

3. *Composition*, the balance and arrangement of elements; the way elements are arranged; for example, mostly to one side of the stage, in a vertical or horizontal configuration, or equally distributed onstage.



4. *Texture*, the "feel" projected by surfaces and fabrics; for example, the slickness of chrome or glass versus the roughness of brick or burlap.
5. *Color*, the shadings and contrasts of color combinations.

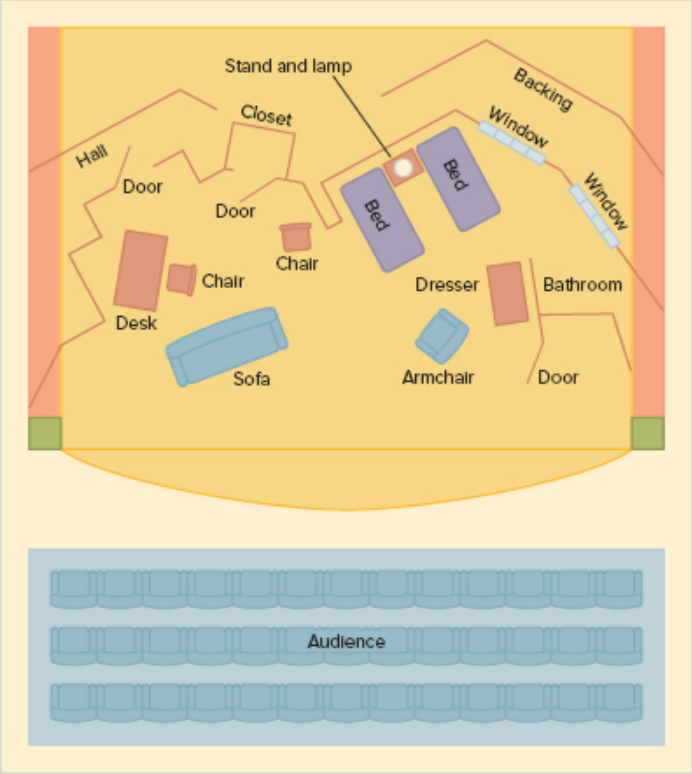
The designer will use these elements to affect us, in conjunction with the action and other aspects of the production.

**Physical Layout: The Playing Area** A playing area must, obviously, fit into a certain stage space and accommodate the performers. A designer cannot plan a gigantic stage setting for a theatre where the proscenium opening is only twenty feet wide and the stage is no more than fifteen feet deep. By the same token, to design a small room in the midst of a forty-foot stage opening might be ludicrous.

The designer must also take into account the physical layout of the stage space. If a performer must leave by a door on the right side of the stage and return a few moments later by a door on the left, the designer must obviously provide space for crossing behind the scenery. If performers need to change costumes quickly offstage, the scene designer must make certain that there is room offstage for changing. If there is to be a sword fight, the actors must have space in which to make their turns, to advance and retreat.

Any type of physical movement requires a certain amount of space, and the scene designer must allow for this in his or her ground plan. A ***ground plan*** is a floor plan outlining the various levels on the stage and indicating the placement of all scenery, furniture, doors, windows, and so on. The designer, working in conjunction with the director, is chiefly responsible for ensuring a practical ground plan.

**ground plan** A blueprint or floor plan of the stage indicating the placement of scenery, furniture, doors and windows, and the various levels of the stage, as well as the walls of rooms, platforms, and the like.




### GROUND PLAN

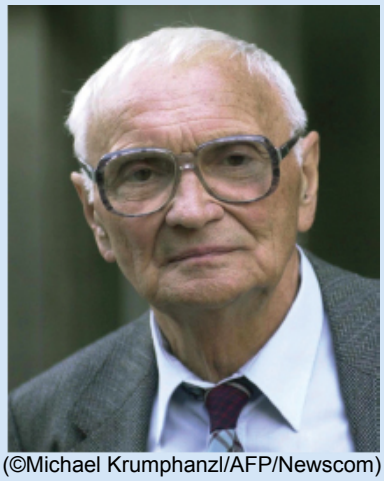
To aid the director, performers, and stage technicians, the designer draws a ground plan, or blueprint of the stage, showing the exact locations of furniture, walls, windows, doors, and other scenic elements.

How doors open and close, where a sofa is placed, at what angle steps will lead to a second floor—all these are important. Performers must be able to execute stairs easily and to sit in such a way that the audience can readily see them, and they must have enough space to interact with each other naturally and convincingly. If a performer opens a door onstage and is immediately blocked from the view of the audience, this is obviously an error on the part of the scene designer.

211

## IN FOCUS: THE TECHNOLOGICAL INNOVATIONS OF THE GLOBAL DESIGNER JOSEF SVOBODA

The Czech scene designer Josef Svoboda (1920–2002) developed a number of significant techniques in stage design, which have since been adopted and utilized by designers in countries around the globe. Svoboda's work centered on his understanding of the kinetic stage and scenography. The term *kinetic stage* refers to his belief that the set should not function independently of the actors, but rather should develop and adapt as a performance progresses. *Scenography* was what he called his art, conveying the sense that he created a whole physical space, not just designs on paper intended for the back of the stage. His experiments with these ideas led to many significant concepts in modern stage design, most notably the *polyekran*, *diapolyekran*, and *laterna magika*.



(©Michael Krumphanzl/AFP/Newscom)

*Polyekran* literally means "multiscreen" and was the practice, devised by Svoboda, of using multiple screens at multiple angles and heights. Although real people and objects were projected, the aim was to convince the spectators not that they were looking at the real object, but rather that they were looking at a projection, or a collage of projections. A later development of this technique was *diapolyekran*, which employed whole walls of small, square screens making up a composite image. The wall of screens could be used to present one unified image, cubist images, or a collage.

*Laterna magika*, the best-known of his innovations, used screens in conjunction with actors; the actors were part of the film, and the film was part of the action. The projections used in this form were not simply for decoration, or for communicating images independent of the action; rather, the projections and action functioned together, creating a new manner of performance.

These developments were introduced to the global community in 1958 at the Brussels World's Fair, where they instantly commanded attention from the wider theatrical community. Svoboda had been the chief designer at the National Theatre in Prague at the time of the World's Fair, and a showcase of the work of the theatre was displayed to the global audience, winning him three medals.

What was seen as ingenious in 1958 was quickly adopted and adapted by numerous practitioners in many countries, and the effect of these means of design can still be witnessed in contemporary theatre, in performance art, and on Broadway, as well as at rock concerts and sporting events. This incorporation of screens and projections as well as video into onstage action has infiltrated the world of the theatre to the extent that it has become one of the conventional tools of theatre design worldwide.

Prepared by Naomi Stubbs, Associate Professor, LaGuardia Community College, CUNY.

**Materials and Machinery of Scene Design** There are some long-used materials and machinery for scene design that continue to be used even in our increasingly technologically advanced theatre world. In creating a stage set, a designer begins with the stage floor. At times, trapdoors are set into the floor; through them, performers can enter or leave the stage. For some productions, tracks or slots are set into the stage floor, and set pieces or wagons are brought onstage in these tracks. A ***wagon*** is a low platform set on wheels. Wagon stages are brought onstage electronically using computer assistance or by stagehands hidden behind them. This type of scene change is frequently used in musical theatre. Another device used along the stage floor is a *treadmill*, which can carry performers, furniture, or props from one side of the stage to the other. Sometimes the stage floor includes a ***turntable***—a circle, set into the floor, that is rotated mechanically or electronically to bring one set into view as another disappears.

**wagon** Low platform mounted on wheels or casters by means of which scenery is moved on- and offstage.

**turntable** A circle set into the floor of a stage that is rotated mechanically or electronically to bring one set into view as another disappears.

## SPECIAL SCENIC EFFECTS: THE SCRIM

Scene designers use various materials and devices to achieve their effects. One popular scenic element is the scrim, which can be transparent when light comes from behind it and opaque when light comes from the front. It is especially effective for scenes of memory and fantasy. Shown here is the use of a scrim in the Broadway musical *An American in Paris*.
(©Nigel Norrington/Camera Press/Redux)

## SCENIC PROJECTIONS

An increasingly popular scenic resource is projections: rear-screen and front-screen projections, produced on an opaque surface or on a scrim. Projections allow rapid changes of locale, panoramic views, and abstract designs. Shown here is

a scene from a production of *The Curious Incident of the Dog in the Night-Time* at the National Theatre in London, with video designed by Finn Ross. Note the letters highlighted and silhouetted on the walls around the main character Christopher Boone, played by Graham Butler. (©Geraint Lewis/Alamy Stock Photo)

Formerly, equipment such as turntables, wagons, and treadmills would be moved mechanically or by hand. In recent years, however, these operations have



been computerized. Complicated scene changes can be controlled by computer so that they take place efficiently and simultaneously. Computers can also control the turning and shifting of scenic elements. In addition, safety features are built into the new computerized equipment. When performers are on a moving treadmill, for example, light beams or pressure-sensitive plates can detect a malfunction and shut down the system before anyone is hurt.

Instead of coming from the sides, scenery can be dropped from the ***fly loft; to fly*** is the term used when scenery is raised into the area above the stage, out of sight of the audience.

**fly loft** Space above the stage where scenery may be lifted out of sight by ropes and pulleys.

### SPECIAL EFFECTS

All manner of stage spectacle, from the eerie to the comic, come under the heading of special effects. An ancient tradition in the theatre, these effects can include fog, ghosts, and swords that appear to run through victims. The play *Thirty Nine Steps* calls for fog when we see the characters Pamela (Jennifer Ferrin) and Hannay (Charles Edwards) running for their lives, hoping to escape danger by climbing up a ladder. The play, which had its American premiere with the Huntington Theatre Company, is based on the Alfred Hitchcock film of the same name. The scenic and costume designer was Peter McKintosh. (©T Charles Erickson)

From floor level, ramps and platforms can be built to any height desired. To create walls or divisions of other kinds, for many years the most commonly used element was the ***flat***, so named because it is a single flat unit, consisting of canvas stretched on a wood frame. The side of the flat facing the audience was painted to look like a solid wall, and flats used connected together were made to look like a complete room.

**flat** A scenic unit consisting of canvas stretched on a wooden frame often used with similar units to create a set.

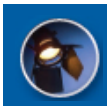
Today scene designers and shop technicians have turned increasingly to the *hard flat*, sometimes called a *movie* or *Hollywood flat*; it consists of a thin, solid material, called *lauan*, mounted on a wooden or hollow metal frame. A hard flat can be painted, and three-dimensional plastic moldings can be attached to it, creating cornices, chair rails, and other interesting features. Other vertical units are cutouts—small pieces made like flats or cut out of plywood. These too can be painted.

A special type of scenery is the ***scrim***—a gauze or cloth screen. A scrim can be painted like a regular flat; however, the wide mesh of the cloth allows light to pass through. When light shines on a scrim from the front—that is, from our point of view in the audience—it is reflected off the painted surface, and the scrim appears to be a solid surface. When light comes from behind, the scrim becomes transparent and, as audience members, we can see performers and scenery behind it. Scrims are particularly effective in scenes where ghosts appear or when eerie effects are desired. Scrims are also useful in memory plays or plays with flashbacks: The audience sees the scene in the present in front of the scrim; then, as the lights in front fade and the lights behind come up, a scene with a cloudy, translucent quality appears through the gauzelike scrim, indicating a scene taking place in someone's memory or in the past.

**scrim** Thin, open-weave fabric that is nearly transparent when lit from behind and opaque when lit from the front.

Another scenic device is *screen projection*. An image can be projected on a screen either from in front—as in an ordinary movie theatre—or from behind. The advantage of projection from behind is that the performers will not be in the beam of light, thus there will be no shadows or silhouettes. And today, images can be projected onto three-dimensional objects and manipulated through the use of computers.

214



## IN FOCUS: VIDEO AND PROJECTION DESIGN

Video design and projection design are burgeoning areas of stage design. While early on, video and projection design consisted of integrating film and static images onto the stage of live theatre events, with the advent of greater computer control, the introduction of tablets and other handheld devices, high-definition

video, more sophisticated projection technology, and digital downloads, designers in these areas have become more significant contributors to the creation of an overall stage design, not just special effects. In some instances, they have become equal partners with the set designer.

The design process itself has changed owing to the development of 3D animation software in which the set design can be manipulated and presented without the need to create a series of traditional models. Projection mapping allows projection to be designed and viewed on a computer and then projected on various three-dimensional objects of varying sizes onstage, not just on a two-dimensional surface as was true in the past.

But even more significantly, the designs themselves incorporate these new technologies. Today, enhanced projectors, 3D projections, and high-definition video can be employed to create onstage, for example, avatars that seem to interact with live actors. Actors can walk through projections or become part of a projection, creating magical effects. Entire sets can be replaced by high-tech videos and projections. Gaming technology allows live actors to initiate moments of special effects onstage themselves.

Some critics worry that the emphasis on technology in design is an ultimately unsuccessful attempt by theatre artists to compete with film and television and unfortunately undercuts what theatre does best: creating live interaction between the actor and the audience. However, others point out that throughout theatre history, all the way back to the Greeks and Romans, there have been experiments with special effects and new technologies. Our theatre will continue to explore the ways in which the innovations of this digital age can be incorporated in live performances.

©d_gas/Getty Images

Obviously, projections offer many advantages: images can change with the rapidity of cinema, and vast scenes can be presented onstage in a way that would otherwise require tremendously elaborate scene painting. Two recent productions that used projections extensively and successfully in London and then on Broadway were *War Horse* and *The Curious Incident of the Dog in the Night-Time*.

The use of video and projection has led to scene designers either becoming proficient with the new technology (since in some instances,

video and projections literally replace scenery) or with video and projection designers being employed as part of the design team.

In recent years, many avant-garde artists have also incorporated video screens and video projections into production design, frequently to draw stark parallels or contrasts between the live performance and something captured on video.

**Special Effects** Scrims and projections bring us to a consideration of special effects. These are effects of scenery, lighting, sound, and props that seem unusual or even miraculous. (The term ***prop*** comes from the word *property*; it refers to any object that will be used onstage but is not a permanent part of the scenery or costumes. Props are such things as smartphones, lamps, mirrors, computers, walking sticks, umbrellas, and fans.) Special effects include fog, ghosts, knives or swords that appear to stab victims, walls and windows that fall apart, and so forth.

**prop** Properties; objects that are used by performers onstage or are necessary to complete a set.

## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. Think about your residence hall room or your home as a set design. What does it reveal about you? Why?
2. Set up your classroom as a proscenium theatre, with the audience facing in one direction. Using stage directions (stage right, stage left, upstage, downstage), direct a classmate around the stage area.
3. If a designer was going to create a play with you as a character, what props would be most central to representing you onstage?
4. Watch a recent film that employs significant special effects. Why are such special effects so popular? Is there any way that the same effects could be created in the theatre?
5. Visit your university or community theatre scene shop. What types of equipment are found in the shop? Is there a set under construction? Ask if there are drawings, elevations, or ground plans that you might review.

6. Visit a technical rehearsal at your university or community theatre. Ask if you can walk around the setting prior to or after the rehearsal. What elements make up the set? Is any machinery being employed for set changes?

Today, films and television—because of their technical capabilities—have very realistic special effects, like burning buildings and exploding cars. Also, computers can create the world of dinosaurs, supernatural universes, or all forms of catastrophes.

However, the use of special effects onstage is almost as old as theatre itself. From the Greeks on, theatre has tried to create the illusion of the miraculous or extraordinary. With the enhanced use of technology, along with all of the ways in which new media can be employed, theatrical productions frequently incorporate sophisticated effects.

An example of the use of an onstage special effect occurs in the internationally popular musical *The Phantom of the Opera*, when a huge chandelier falls from the top of the auditorium onto the stage. In the musical *Matilda* (2010), a child seemingly writes on a chalkboard using her eyes. Unbeknownst to the audience, the chalkboard is plastic and has the letters projected on it from a screen behind it.

We will see, in a later discussion, that there are also many special effects using lighting and sound.

## The Process of Scene Design

In meeting the objectives described earlier, how does the scene designer proceed? Although every designer has his or her own method, usually the same general pattern is followed.

The designer reads the script and develops ideas about scene designs and a design concept. He or she may even make a few rough sketches to illustrate thoughts about the designs. Meanwhile, the director also has ideas about the scenery. These ideas may vary considerably, depending on the director: They may be vague, or they may be an exact picture of what the scenery should look like.

Director and designer meet for a preliminary conference to exchange ideas about the design. During these discussions, they will develop and discuss questions of style, a visual concept for the production, and the needs of the performers.

Next, the designer develops preliminary sketches, called *thumbnail sketches*, and rough plans to provide a basis for further discussions about the scenic elements.

## STEPS IN THE SCENE DESIGN PROCESS

In designing a production, the scene, costume, lighting, and sound designers look closely at the script and work cooperatively with the director and with one another. Scene designers often make sketches, computer-generated designs, and models in preparing for the scenic aspect of a production. Here we see three stages in the scene design for the musical *In the Heights*, which originated off-Broadway at the 37 Arts Theatre in New York and later moved to Broadway. The scene designer Anna Louizos carefully scouted out the Washington Heights neighborhood in Manhattan where the play takes place and made many rough pencil sketches, one of which is shown here at the top left. The top right photo shows one of various set models she built, and the bottom photo shows the completed set with actors onstage. (upper left and right: ©Anna Louizos; bottom: ©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

As the designer proceeds, he or she attempts to fill out the visual concept with sketches, drawings, models, and the like. Sometimes the designer will bring the director sketches showing several possible ideas, each emphasizing different elements to achieve different results.

When the director and the designer have decided on an idea and a rough design, the designer will make a more complete sketch, usually in color, called a ***rendering***. If the director approves of the rendering, the designer will make a small-scale three-dimensional model that the director can use to help stage the show. There are two types of models. One shows only the location of the platform and walls, with perhaps some light detail drawn in; it is usually all white. The other is a complete, finished model: Everything is duplicated as fully as possible, including color and perhaps moldings and texture.

**rendering** A complete drawing of a set, usually in color.

Today, designers increasingly use computers and computer graphics to develop not only ground plans but also their renderings, thumbnail sketches, and three- dimensional models of what a set will look like. Computerized design, known technically as ***computer-assisted design (CAD)***, is very flexible. The designer can make instantaneous changes in what appears on the screen and can easily indicate to the director and others alternative plans and features of a stage set. Not only ground plans but also the three-dimensional look of a set can be instantaneously rearranged to let both director and designer see what various configurations would look like. In this way, the scene can be shown in three dimensions; it can also be looked at from various perspectives: from the right or left, from above, from the front.

**computer-assisted design (CAD)** Designs created by computer. All features of a set design, including ground plans, elevations, and walls, can be indicated by computer, and variations and alternations can be easily created and displayed.

These digital renderings and models can be created and shared on tablets and other handheld devices as well as on computers. Designs can be sent immediately to directors and other collaborators via e-mail or on the “digital cloud.”

## THE SCENE DESIGNER’S COLLABORATORS AND THE PRODUCTION PROCESS

As with every element of theatre, there is a collaborative aspect to scene design: In addition to the director, there are a number of other important people with whom the scene designer works. In fact, any scene design would be little more than a creative idea without the input of the following collaborators: technical directors, property designers, scenic charge artists, stage managers, design assistants, and skilled technicians working in every one of these areas, often with expanded new technologies. These scenic collaborators are essential at every level of production, from university theatre to regional professional theatre to Broadway.

A few definitions are in order. The ***technical director*** is responsible for solving overall technical problems; he or she is in charge of scheduling, constructing and painting scenery, and in general making certain that all designs are executed as conceived by the scene designer. The *property designer* creates and executes all props; this work may include building special pieces of furniture, finding or devising magical equipment, and selecting items such as lamps and other accessories. *Scenic charge artists* are responsible for seeing that sets are built and painted according to the specifications of the scene designer. In the case of painting the set, the person in charge is referred to as the *paint charge artist*. As noted earlier in this chapter, projection design is becoming a more common feature of the scenic environment, also requiring additional skilled technicians to bring the world of the play to life.

**technical director** Staff member responsible for scheduling, construction, and installation of all equipment; he or she is responsible for guaranteeing that designs are executed according to the designer's specifications.

218

Realizing the design typically begins with drafting (predominantly with CAD these days, including the use of tablets and other handheld digital devices) all production ground plans, also known as floor plans, which are detailed layouts of each scenic location drafted within the context of a specific theatre space. Drawings that show all exact scenic details from the point of view of the audience are known as *designer/front elevations*. The drafting of the designer/front elevations is completed either by the scene designer or by various design assistants. These drawings are then used to construct accurate scenic models or perspective renderings that are useful visual tools for anyone involved in the production. Once they have been given final approval by the director, the floor plans are delivered to the stage manager, who will tape on the floor of the rehearsal spaces an accurate, full-scale version

of all platforms, ramps, staircases, and entrances and exits to be used by the director and the actors in rehearsal.

The use of CAD (which, as noted, includes the use of handheld digital devices as well as computers) is now commonplace to create almost all of these representations of settings since designers and their associates, assistants and collaborators are now using advanced CAD skills. The flexibility of CAD allows designers to make changes very quickly and to share designs electronically with all collaborators. Designs can be sent via e-mail, by placing them in the “digital cloud,” or viewed on tablets or other handheld devices. Such technological flexibility in the design process, along with the use of projection and video technology, have made all forms of computer-assisted design the norm in almost all theatres today.

The technical director uses the floor plans to determine where all the construction elements will go, as well as to determine backstage escapes for actors. The technical director then completes construction drawings for all those floor plan elements. The technical director also converts the complete set of designer/front elevations into a complete set of rear elevations or working drawings for construction purposes. Without this critical engineering and drafting step, the scenery could never be built accurately or safely. The technical director and scenic designer work together in much the same way an engineer will work with an architect in completing the blueprints to plan construction of a building.

The visual world of many production designs is so complex that a property designer typically works as an essential collaborator with the scenic designer. The property area is also broken down into areas: (1) functional props used by actors, and (2) set dressing, which fills out the visual stage reality. Once the scene designer has approved all of the property designer’s research, solutions, and drawings, those are also forwarded to the technical director to be worked into the construction schedule. It is also frequently the property designer who completes the mechanical special effects used in theatrical production.

Owing to developments in computer and electronic technology, special effect solutions are frequently crafted by projection designers as well. Although not many productions utilize the intense level of scenic projection noted previously, projection technology solutions are finding their way into many production designs for special visual effects requiring the presence of yet another essential scenic collaborator.

## PLAYING YOUR PART: THINKING ABOUT THEATRE

1. What production that you have attended had the most elaborate scenery and special effects? What effect did these visual elements have on you? Were you captivated by the visual elements or did you think they were overdone?
2. What production that you have seen had the least amount of scenery and visual effects? Did you miss seeing an elaborate scene design or did you enjoy using your imagination to create the setting in your mind?
3. Have you seen a production that has many changes of setting? How efficiently and effectively were the scene changes carried out? What types of stage machinery were employed to create smooth transitions?
4. It is often argued that film and television can employ more realistic scenery and special effects than the theatre. Is there any way in which theatrical scenery and special effects compete with those in the media?

The scene designer and her or his assistants also complete a full series of paint elevations, paintings in scale of each scenic element requiring painting that are then delivered to the scenic charge artist who works with a group of scenic artists in completing the painting of the actual scenery. The *paint charge*, the person who oversees the painting of stage scenery, and scenic artists require both talent and technique, for instance, to create the feeling of rare old wood in a library, or of bricks, or of a glossy, elegant surface in an expensive living room.

In commercial theatre, construction drawings and paint elevations are sent to scenic houses separate from the theatre that specialize in both construction and painting. In regional theatres and university settings there are typically support spaces and support staff for scenic, property, painting, and costume construction on-site. In these settings the entire production team is typically present at all times, allowing for convenient tracking of the construction and painting process. In Broadway and other professional producing theatres without technical support spaces and staff, it is necessary for the designer or the assistant designers (or both) to visit the scenic houses and paint studios to check on progress and to ensure consistency with the original design intent.

When the time comes for technical rehearsals, dress rehearsals, and the actual performances after the official opening, a production requires backstage leadership by the stage management team. The members of this team call all the cues for lights, sound, projections, scenic shifts, and actors' entrances. An entire crew of stagehands will work together to coordinate every change, no matter how small, in the visual world of the play. These changes may involve a fly crew for flown scenery, a shift crew for either automated or manual shifting of entire settings, and a property crew for any preparation or movement of furniture and properties on- or offstage. Meanwhile a crew of dressers, whose work will be covered in more detail in the next chapter, will work backstage with the actors helping them prepare for the upcoming scene. As noted earlier in our discussion of directing, once a production moves beyond opening night, it is controlled by the stage manager, who is also responsible for maintaining the director's artistic intent as well as maintaining consistency in cue placement and the visual world of the play.

220

## Designing a Total Environment

Sometimes a designer goes beyond scenery and special effects to design an entire theatre space, rearranging the seating for spectators and determining the relationship of the stage area to the audience. For instance, in an open space such as a gymnasium or warehouse, a designer might build an entire theatre, including the seats or stands for the audience and the designated acting areas. In this case, the designer considers the size and shape of the space, the texture and nature of the building materials, the atmosphere of the space, and the needs of the play itself. This is also true of multifocus theatre.

Even in Broadway theatres some designers change the architecture of the theatre space in creating the world of the play; we noted in the previous chapter that a current example is *Natasha, Pierre & the Great Comet of 1812*. Another example was when the rock musical *Bloody, Bloody Andrew Jackson* transferred to Broadway in 2010, the design for that production extended into the audience area.

A slight twist on the idea of creating a total environment was employed in the musical *Once* (2012). The bar used as the set was also used during intermission to serve refreshments to audience members, thereby blurring the distinction between the auditorium and the playing space.

## EVALUATING SCENE DESIGN

After we attend a production, there are many questions we should ask ourselves as we try to evaluate the scene design and its success in supporting the play presented. Among those questions are:

1. What information was conveyed by the scenery about time, place, characters, and situation? How was this information conveyed to you?
2. What was the overall atmosphere of the setting? How was that atmosphere created?
3. Did any colors dominate the design? How did colors affect your impression of the theatre event?
4. Was the setting a specific place, or was it no recognizable or real locale? Did that choice seem appropriate for the play?
5. If the setting was realistic, how effectively did it reproduce what the place would actually look like?
6. Were there symbolic elements in the scenery? If so, what were they? How did they relate to the play?
7. Were there many scene changes? Were they handled effectively? Could you tell how they were done?
8. Were projections or video used in the production? If so, what was their function: to create scenery, for special effects, or both? Did you feel the use of these media was appropriate? Why or why not?
9. Were there any special effects? Were you able to ascertain how they were done?

We have been examining the work of the scene designer. In the next chapter we turn to someone whose work is closely related: the costume designer.



### SUMMARY

**1**. We encounter forms of scene design in everyday life: in the carefully planned decor of a restaurant, in a hotel lobby, or in a decorated apartment.

2. Scene design for the stage differs from interior decorating in that it creates an environment and an atmosphere that is not complete until occupied by performers and that is able to meet the practical needs of the script.
3. In addition to creating an environment, the scene designer has the following objectives: to set tone and style, distinguish realism from nonrealism, establish time and place, develop a design concept, provide a central design metaphor, coordinate scenery with other elements, and deal with practical considerations.
4. As in other aspects of theatre, in scene design there has been more and more crossover, and interaction, between theatre design and design for many types of popular entertainment.
5. In practical terms the scene designer must deal with the limits of the stage space and the offstage area. For example, ramps must not be inclined too steeply, and platforms must provide an adequate playing area for the performers. In short, the stage designer must know the practical considerations of stage usage and stage carpentry, as well as the materials available, in order to achieve desired effects. Close work with the technical director allows the scene designer to push the limits of construction in creating a unique visual world while maintaining a safe environment for performers.
6. In theatrical productions that stress visual elements over the play or the acting, the scene design must constantly engage and entrance the spectator.
7. Special effects are elements of scenery, lighting, costumes, props, or sound that appear highly unusual or miraculous. Technical expertise is required to develop them properly.
8. Elements of design include line, mass, composition, texture, color, rhythm, and movement.
9. The scene designer works closely with the director and other designers and creates a series of drawings (sketches and renderings) and models of what the final stage picture will look like.
10. In dealing with created or found space, the designer must plan the entire environment: the audience area as well as the stage area.

**11**. The technical director, with his or her staff, supervises the construction of scenery, special effects, and the like in order to meet the designer's specifications.

**12**. A scenic charge artist and additional scenic artists must translate the look shown in models, renderings, and paint elevations into the full-scale version of the design.

**13**. Working with the technical director and the scenic charge artist are the property designer and the paint charge artist.

**Design Elements:** In Focus box (spotlight): ©Exactostock/SuperStock; Playing Your Part box (theatre seats): ©Ron Chapple/Getty Images

## STAGE COSTUMES: AESTHETIC, SYMBOLIC, AND SUITED TO THE CHARACTER

In addition to being elegant and beautiful, costumes can convey a wealth of information to the audience. Seen here in a stylish, lavish costume of clearly expensive materials is actress Olivia Llewellyn in a production of *Les Liaisons*

*Dangereuses* at the Playhouse Theatre in London directed by Tim Fywell. (©Robbie Jack/Corbis Entertainment/Getty Images)



# 10

# Stage Costumes

Clothes have often indicated or signaled a number of things regarding the wearer, including the following:

- Position and status
- Gender identity
- Occupation
- Relative flamboyance or modesty
- Degree of independence or regimentation
- Whether one is dressed for work or leisure, for a routine event or a special occasion

As soon as we see what clothing people are wearing, we receive messages about them and form impressions of them. We instantaneously relate those messages and impressions to our past experience and our preconceptions, and we make judgments, including value judgments. Even if we have never before laid eyes on someone, we feel we know a great deal when we first see what he or she is wearing.

## COSTUMES FOR THE STAGE

In theatre, clothes send us signals similar to those in everyday life, but as with the other elements of theatre, there are significant differences between the costumes of everyday life and theatrical costumes. Stage costumes often communicate the same information as ordinary clothes with regard to gender identity, position, and occupation; but onstage this information is magnified because every element in theatre is a focus of attention. Also, costumes on a stage must meet other requirements not normally imposed in everyday life. These requirements will be clearer after we look at the objectives of costume design.

### Objectives of Costume Design

Stage costumes should meet the following seven requirements:

1. Help establish the style of a production.
2. Indicate the historical period of a play and the locale in which it occurs.



3. Indicate the nature of individual characters or groups in a play—their stations in life, their occupations, their personalities.
4. Show relationships among characters—separating major characters from minor ones, contrasting one group with another.
5. Where appropriate, symbolically convey the significance of individual characters or the theme of the play.
6. Meet the needs of individual performers, making it possible for a performer to move freely in a costume, perhaps to dance or engage in a sword fight, and (when required) to change quickly from one costume to another.
7. Be consistent with the production as a whole, especially other visual elements.

## The Process of Costume Design

In order to achieve these objectives, the costume designer goes through a process similar to that of the scene designer. He or she reads the script, taking particular note of the characters: their age, gender identity, physical qualities, and special traits, as well as their roles in the play.

Early in the process, the costume designer also meets with the director and other designers to discuss the “look” that the show will have and how the various elements will be coordinated. The costume designer may make preliminary sketches, or use computer-assisted design, to show the director and other designers. These may include not only suggestions about style (for example, historical, modern, futuristic) but also ideas for colors and fabrics. Once agreed upon, these designs will move from sketches to renderings (which again may be done by hand or on computers or handheld devices) of what the costumes will look like in their final form. Swatches of material may be attached to these designs, indicating the texture and color of the fabrics to be used.

As part of this process, the costume designer will meet with the members of the cast, measuring each performer and making certain

that the costumes will be workable and appropriate for the individual actresses and actors.

The following sections discuss how the various objectives of costume design are realized by the designer in this process.

**Setting Tone and Style** Along with scenery and lighting, costumes should inform us about the style of a play. For a production set in outer space, for instance, the costumes would be futuristic. For a Restoration comedy, the costumes could be quite elegant, with elaborate gowns for the women and lace at the men's collars and cuffs. For a tragedy, the clothes might be formal and dignified—seeing them, we would know immediately that the play itself was serious.

**Indicating Time and Place** Costumes indicate the period and location of a play: whether it is historical or modern, whether it is set in a foreign country or the United States, and so on. A play might take place in ancient Egypt, in seventeenth-century Spain, or in modern Africa. Costumes should tell us when and where the action occurs.

225

---

For most historical plays, the director and the costume designer have a range of choices, depending on the directorial concept. For a production of Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar*, for instance, the costumes could indicate the ancient Roman period when Caesar actually lived; in this case, the costumes would include Roman togas and soldiers' helmets. Or the costumes could be Elizabethan. We know that in Shakespeare's day costumes were heightened versions of the English clothes worn at the time, regardless of the period in which a play was set. As a third option, the designer could create costumes for an entirely different period, even our own day—with the men in business suits, modern military uniforms, and perhaps even tuxedos. Whatever the choice, the historical period should be clearly indicated by the costumes.

*A Girl* *Dumas* *Benoit*

*Cyrano de Bergerac costume for Coquelin* *Eleonora Duse* *Sarah Bernhardt*

## COSTUME DESIGN: THE PROCESS

Costume designers often make preliminary sketches of costumes as they begin to design a production. Shown here are sketches for *The Ladies of the Camellias* by the costume designer Jess Goldstein for a production at the Yale Repertory Theatre. (©Jess Goldstein)

**Identifying Status and Personality** Like clothing in everyday life, costumes can tell us whether people are from the aristocracy or the working class, whether they are blue-collar workers or professionals. But in theatre, these signals should usually be clear and unmistakable. For example, in real life a woman in a long white coat could be a doctor, a laboratory technician, or a hairstylist. A costume onstage must indicate the occupation exactly—by giving the doctor a stethoscope, for instance.

Costumes also tell us about the personalities of characters: A flamboyant person could be dressed in flashy colors; a shy, retiring person might wear subdued clothing.

Costumes also indicate age. This is particularly helpful when an older performer is playing a young person, or vice versa. A young person playing an older character, for instance, can wear padding or a beard.

**Indicating Relationships among Characters** Characters in a play can be set apart by the way they are costumed. Major characters, for example, will be dressed differently from minor characters. Frequently,

the costume designer will distinguish the major characters by dressing them in distinctive colors, in sharp contrast to the other characters. Consider, for instance, Shaw's *Saint Joan*, a play about Joan of Arc. Obviously, Joan should stand out from the soldiers surrounding her. Therefore, her costume might be bright blue while their costumes are steel gray. In another play of Shaw's, *Caesar and Cleopatra*, Cleopatra should stand out from her servants and soldiers.

226

# photo essay

## Stage Costumes Make a Strong Visual Statement

**On these pages are three examples of striking costumes. Costume designers, using colors, fabrics, intricate cuts and shapes of cloth, accessories, and other elements, create a special look for each production. The costumes must fit the actor and allow for easy movement, as well as be visually appealing. They must also be appropriate for the play, and communicate to the audience the period and the social status and the financial level of the characters wearing the costumes**.

(©T Charles Erickson)

Seen in the first photo are John Scherer (Hysterium) and Beth McVey (Domina) in vividly colorful costumes designed by Matthew Hemesath for *A Funny Thing Happened On The Way To The Forum*, at the Papermill Playhouse.

227

(©Geraint Lewis)

For this African-themed production of Shakespeare's *The Tempest* directed by Janice Honeyman at the Royal Shakespeare Company in collaboration with the Baxter Theatre Centre of Cape Town, South Africa, Illka Louw designed the spectacular scenery and costumes worn by Antony Sher as Prospero and Atandwa Kani as Ariel.

(©Liz Lauren/Richard Hein)

Deborah Hay (Celimene) sinks to the floor in exasperation in Chicago Shakespeare Theater's *The School for Lies*, adapted from Molière's *The Misanthrope*. Directed by CST Artistic Director Barbara Gaines, written by David Ives, with hilarious costumes designed by Susan E. Mickey.

228

## COSTUMES INDICATE SOCIAL RELATIONSHIPS

Along with their many other properties, costumes can signal the relationships and contrasts among characters in a

production. Not only can costumes indicate the time period when a drama takes place, and the locale where it occurs, but they can and should indicate occupations and relative social positions. Who, for example, is a laborer or tradesperson and who is a professional businessperson? In this scene from August Wilson's *Radio Golf* at the Goodman Theatre, we see John Earl Jelks as Sterling Johnson and Hassan El-Amin as Harmond Wilks in costumes designed by Susan Hilferty. The man on the right is a succcessful businessman; the man on the left is a laborer. (©Peter Wynn Thompson)

Costumes underline important divisions between groups. In *Romeo and Juliet*, the two feuding families, the Montagues and the Capulets, would be costumed in different colors. In a modern counterpart of *Romeo and Juliet*, the musical *West Side Story*, the two gangs are dressed in contrasting colors: The Jets might be in various shades of pink, purple, and lavender; the Sharks in shades of green, yellow, and gold.

**Creating Symbolic and Nonhuman Characters** In many plays, special costumes are called for to denote abstract ideas or give shape to fantastic creatures. Here the costume designer must develop an outfit that conveys the appropriate imaginative and symbolic qualities. In *Macbeth*, for instance, how does one clothe the witches or the ghost of Banquo? For the musical *The Lion King*, the director Julie Taymor, who was also the costume designer, used puppets, masks, and other devices to create outfits for numerous animal characters, such as lions, tigers, giraffes, and elephants.

## THE COSTUME DESIGNER MEETS PERFORMERS' NEEDS

Costume designer Stefano Nicolao, a prodigious designer for theatre and film, works in his Venice studio on the creation of an elegant gown for a performer who is standing at a mirror. (©Stefano Rellandini/Reuters/Alamy Stock Photo)

**Meeting Performers' Needs** Virtually every aspect of theatre has practical as well as aesthetic requirements, and costume design is no exception. No matter how attractive or how symbolic, stage costumes must work for the performers. A long, flowing gown may look beautiful, but if it is too long and the performer wearing it trips walking down a flight of steps, the designer has overlooked an important practical consideration. If performers are required to duel or engage in hand-to-hand combat, their costumes must stand up to this wear and tear, and their arms and legs must have freedom of movement. If they are to dance, they must be able to turn, leap, and move freely.

Quick costume changes are also frequently called for in theatre. Tear-away seams and special fasteners are used so that one costume can be ripped off quickly and another put on (often with the assistance of dressers). On Broadway and in national touring productions it is also necessary to make costumes for more than one performer for the same role, although this is not typically the case in shorter runs in regional or university theatre productions.

Unlike scenery, which stays in place until it is moved, a costume is always in motion, moving as the performer moves. This provides an opportunity for the designer to develop grace and rhythm in the way a

costume looks as it moves across the stage, but with that goes the great responsibility of making the costume workable for the performer.

Each of these specific costuming needs points to the absolute importance of skilled ***stitchers*** (technicians who sew all the costumes) and ***drapers*** (technicians who pattern, pin, and drape the fabric to fit individual actors perfectly) in a costume shop.

**stitchers** Technicians who sew all of the costumes for a production.

**drapers** Technicians who pattern, pin, and drape the fabric to fit the actors in a production perfectly.

At times it is important for the costume designer to work closely with individual performers, who must know how to use the accessories and costumes provided for



them. This is particularly true for historical costumes that re-create elements unique to that time period; such costumes often require the performer to work closely with the director and the costume designer and frequently with a movement specialist as well.

**Maintaining Consistency** Finally, costumes must be consistent with the entire production—especially with the various other visual elements. A realistic production set in the home of everyday people calls for down-to-earth costumes. A highly stylized production requires costumes designed with flair and imagination.

### The Costume Designer at Work

As noted earlier, the person who puts all these ideas into effect is the costume designer. Every production requires someone who takes responsibility for the costumes. This is true whether the costumes are *pulled* or *built*.

***Pulling*** is a term used when costumes are rented (or maintained in an extensive costume collection in, for example, a university or regional theatre) and the designer goes to a costume house or storeroom and selects outfits that are appropriate for the production. The designer must already know about period, style, and the other matters discussed previously. He or she must also have the measurements of all the performers for whom costumes are to be pulled. Seldom will pulled or rented costumes fit perfectly, and it is the responsibility of stitchers, often with tailoring experience, to complete the necessary alterations.

**pull** To choose a costume from an inventory owned by a theatre company or costume warehouse.

When costumes are ***built***, they are created in a costume shop under the direction of the shop supervisor, who works closely with a costume designer in much the same way the technical director and scene designer work together. Before making a costume out of expensive fabrics, well-staffed costume shops will make *muslin mock-ups* of the costumes first, and those are then fitted to the actor. Next, the mock-ups are taken apart and used as patterns for the actual costume fabric.

**build** To create a costume from scratch in a costume shop.

In these shops, costumes are built in two different ways. Some are drafted as flat patterns based on the performer's measurements, and some are draped. Draping involves pinning and tucking the fabric directly to a dress form of the proper size and marking the fabric while it is on the dress form, in preparation for stitching, detailed finish work, and closures.

Today, technology has also made it possible to create mock-ups on a computer and cutting and draping can be completed with computer assistance.

## The Costume Designer's Resources

Among the elements a costume designer works with are (as discussed below) (1) line, shape, and silhouette; (2) color; (3) fabric; and (as discussed later) (4) accessories.

**Line, Shape, and Silhouette** Of prime importance is the cut or line of the clothing. Do the lines of an outfit flow, or are they sharp and jagged? Does the clothing follow the lines of the body, or is there some element of exaggeration, such as shoulder pads or a bustle at the back of a dress? The outline or silhouette of a costume has always been significant. There is a strong visual contrast, for instance, between the line of an Egyptian female garment, flowing smoothly from shoulder to floor, and that of an empire gown of the early nineteenth century in Europe, which featured a



horizontal line high above the waist, just below the breasts, with a line flowing from below the breasts to the feet. The silhouettes of these two styles would stand in marked contrast to a female outfit in the United

States during the early 1930s: a short outfit with a prominent belt or sash cutting horizontally across the hips.

231

(©William Ivey Long Studios)

One of the most active costume designers of recent times is William Ivey Long. Like many costume designers, he often sketches the costumes of the characters in the play, indicating the style of the clothes, the fabrics, the colors, and the silhouettes. Long developed a collage board for all the characters in the “grand finale” of the musical *Hairspray*, not only sketching the costumes themselves but—below the sketches—adding swatches of fabric indicating colors and other qualities of the fabrics. Shown here are several of the costumes taken from the full cast of the finale, giving an indication of how the final costumes were developed.

(©The Virginian-Pilot, Chris Curry/AP Images)

Shown here is famed designer William Ivey Long in front of a display of his costume sketches for *The Lost Colony*, the nation's longest-running historical drama, presented annually on Roanoke Island, on the outer banks of North Carolina.

Undergarments are an aspect of costume design often overlooked by audiences. For female costumes, one example is the hoopskirt. In *The King and I*, a musical of 1951 that was revived at Lincoln Center in New York in 2015, Anna, an English schoolteacher in Siam, wears dresses with hoop skirts several feet in diameter, which were in fashion in England in the mid-nineteenth century, the time of the play.

Other undergarments include bustles, which exaggerate the lines in the rear; and corsets, which can greatly alter posture and appearance. For example, some corsets pull in the waist and cause the wearer to stand very straight. But in the first decade of the twentieth century, women in society often bent forward because they wore a curved corset that forced them to thrust their shoulders and upper body forward.

## COSTUMES CONVEY A MESSAGE

Costume designers for musicals, fantasies, and historical plays have the opportunity to create costumes that are highly decorative as well as eye-catching but also tell a story. In the musical *Hamilton*, nontraditionally cast contemporary performers wear elaborate costumes from the Revolutionary period in American history, thus presenting an interesting juxtaposition of time and events. Shown here are two stars of the original production, Lin-Manuel Miranda (also the author and composer) and actress Phillipa Soo, with costume design by Paul Tazewell. (©Theo Wargo/Getty Images)

A costume designer will be aware of the importance of undergarments and will use them to create the appropriate silhouette and line. During the nineteenth century there were times when men wore corsets to achieve the fashionable posture of the day.

**Color** A second important resource for costume designers is color. Earlier, we saw that leading characters can be dressed in a color that contrasts with the colors worn by other characters, and that characters from one family can be dressed in colors different from those of a rival family. Color also suggests mood: bright, warm colors for a happy mood; dark, somber colors for a more serious mood.

Beyond these applications, however, color can indicate changes in character and changes in mood. Near the beginning of Eugene O'Neill's *Mourning Becomes Electra*, General Manon, who has recently returned from the Civil War, dies, and his wife and daughter wear dark mourning clothes. Lavinia, the daughter, knows that her mother was involved in her father's death, and she and her



brother conspire to murder the mother. Once they have done so, Lavinia adopts characteristics of her mother, and as an important symbol of this transformation, she puts on brightly colored clothes of the same shades her mother had worn when she was young.

**Fabric** Fabric is a third tool of the costume designer. In one sense, this is the costume designer's medium, for it is in fabric that silhouette and color are displayed. Just as important as those qualities are the texture and bulk of the fabric. What is its reflective quality? Does it have a sheen that reflects light? Or is it rough, so that it absorbs light? How does it drape on the wearer? Does it fall lightly to the floor and outline physical features, or does it hide them? Does it wrinkle naturally, or is it smooth? Ornamentation and trim can also be used. Fringe, lace, ruffles, feathers, beads—all these add to the attractiveness and individuality of a costume.

Beyond its inherent qualities, fabric has symbolic values. For example, burlap and other roughly textured cloths suggest people of the earth or of modest means. Silks and satins, on the other hand, suggest elegance and refinement—perhaps even royalty.

The connotations of fabrics may change with passing years. Two or three generations ago, blue denim was used only for work clothes, worn by laborers or by cowboys who rode horseback on a ranch. Today, denim is the fabric of choice in informal clothes for people of all incomes and all ages.

Using the combined resources of line, color, fabric, and trims, the costume designer arrives at individual outfits, which tell us a great deal about the characters who wear them and convey important visual signals about the style and meaning of the play as a whole.

## The Costume Designer's Collaborators

Once again, it is important to recognize that a number of collaborators aid in the process of costume design. Remember that the costume shop supervisor is the lead costume technician, and there are other very specific job responsibilities in a typical costume shop.

Often young professionals, beginning a career, will start as buyers for professional shops that have copies of the designers' renderings. They will scour garment districts to find fabrics that best match the designer's renderings. After fabric comes back to the shop and the muslin mock-ups are made, it will go to a cutter-draper. A costume designer's "first hand" (see below) will often build the initial costume and complete the fitting with the designer and the actor.

It is important to note that the stage manager is typically responsible for scheduling all actors' fittings to work out times that coordinate with rehearsals and also the designer's shop schedule. Once the fitting has been completed, the costume will proceed to the costume designer's *first hand*, or a lead stitcher, who completes the detailed sewing. Once construction is completed, in cases where costumes should not look brand-new, they are turned over to design assistants for the purpose of ***distressing***

> **distressing** Making a costume look weathered or worn., to make them look weathered and worn.

When costumes are completed and ready for dress rehearsals and performances, they become the responsibility of the wardrobe supervisor, who makes all decisions related to costume organization and preparation in the theatre. The wardrobe crew's responsibilities begin with backstage preparation before every performance and end when the laundry is completed following every performance. In an elaborate production, there are numerous dressers from the wardrobe crew assigned to actors, especially lead actors, during rehearsals and performances. There are other areas of specialty, and artisans integral to costume design, discussed in the next section.

## IN FOCUS: TECHNOLOGY AND COSTUME DESIGN

As in the practice of scene design, costume designers also have had their work transformed by new technologies.

Costume research is now more easily done through the Web. Designers can review historical costumes by browsing museum sites through the Internet. Photographs and images of people in period clothing can be found through web browser searches. Newspapers and magazines from different time periods are also accessible.

Designers can use software to create their sketches on their computers or tablets. Designers who still sketch by hand can also scan and save their drawings digitally, as well as manipulate them in this fashion. This also makes all of their designs mobile so that they can have them on their laptop or handheld device. In addition, designs can be e-mailed or shared through the "cloud." (This is also true for set design sketches.)

Technology has also affected the types of fabrics available and the ways in which designers and their collaborators work with them. Computers can now be used to assist in cutting and embroidering of costume materials and technology has allowed the production of fabrics that in the past might have been too expensive to use or too difficult to re-create. And laser cutting can allow for easier construction of very intricate designs.

Technology has also impacted costume designs that require ornamentation and special effects. 3D printing can be used to create hats, helmets, and other ornamental elements. A character who needs lights in his costume, such as in the Disney musical *Beauty and the Beast*, can have LED lights embedded in what he is wearing and the actor can control them with an unseen small switch. Fiber optics can be sewn into a fabric to create a costume that can be illuminated.

There are many other cutting-edge costume technologies that are still being explored, including robotics (in which there are mechanized, computer-controlled elements by the performer wearing the costume) and "intelligent" costumes that allow offstage personnel to communicate with the costumes via a wireless network in order to create special effects.

## RELATED ELEMENTS OF COSTUME DESIGN

To complete the overall artistic impact made by costumes on a production, and depending on the production's specific needs, a costume designer also relies on other related elements including makeup; hairstyles and wigs; masks; and millinery, accessories, and crafts. These additional elements can add nuance and depth to costuming.

## Makeup

A part of costume is makeup—the application of cosmetics (paints, powders, and rouges) to the face and body. With regard to age and any other special facial features, an important function of makeup is to help the performer personify and embody a character.

Theatrical makeup used to be more popular than it is today. In a modern small theatre, performers playing realistic parts will often go without makeup of any consequence, in which case, they can handle their own makeup. Anything beyond the simplest makeup, however, demands an accomplished makeup designer to plan specifically what makeup performers will wear. Historical figures are frequently incorporated into realistic plays and may demand extensive use of extremely realistic prosthetic makeup. An example on Broadway was William Gibson's one-woman play *Golda's Balcony*. Nine prosthetic noses, cast in foam latex, were required each week for the show's star who played Israeli prime minister Golda Meir.

### MAKEUP: CHANGING A FACE OR CREATING A NEW ONE

Makeup is an ancient theatre tradition. Makeup can highlight features of the face or parts of the body that might be washed out under the glare of stage lights. Makeup can also be used to alter the appearance of the face altogether. In the

photograph at the left, makeup artist Suhyun Kang applies Day of the Dead makeup on actress Morwynna Cambridge for a performance mounted in London. The photo at the right shows a makeup artist altering the skin and eyes of a performer who is to play a witch. (left: ©Terence Mendoza/Alamy Stock Photo; right: ©Paul Wood/Alamy Stock Photo)

Makeup has a long and important history in theatre, and sometimes it is a necessity—one good example being makeup to highlight facial features that would not otherwise be visible in a large theatre. Even in a smaller theatre, bright lights tend to wash out cheekbones, eyebrows, and other facial features.

Makeup is often essential because the age of a character differs from that of the performer. Suppose that a nineteen-year-old performer is playing a sixty-year-old character. Through the use of makeup—a little gray in the hair or simulated wrinkles on the face—the appropriate age can be suggested. Another situation calling for makeup to indicate age is a play in which the characters grow older during the course of the action. The musical *I Do! I Do!* with book and lyrics by Tom Jones and music by Harvey Schmidt is based on the play *The Fourposter* by Jan de Hartog. In the musical, a husband and wife are shown in scenes covering many years in their married life, from the time when they are first married until they are quite old. In order to convey the passing years and their advancing age, the actress and actor must use makeup extensively.

236

**MAKEUP FOR PERFORMERS IN KATHAKALI**

Kathakali is a traditional form of theatre that has been practiced for many years in India. It combines song, dance, and dramatic action. It also features elaborate costumes and makeup. The makeup is extremely colorful and often takes a great deal of time to apply. In the top photo, we see the makeup for a character being applied. In the bottom photograph, we see the performer in full makeup, as well as in costume. (top: ©Huw Jones/Alamy Stock Photo; bottom: ©Huw Jones/Alamy Stock Photo)

Makeup is also a necessity for fantastic or other nonrealistic creatures. Douglas Turner Ward (b. 1930), a black playwright, wrote *Day of Absence* to be performed by black actors in whiteface. The implications of this effect are many, not the least being the reversal of the nineteenth-century minstrel performances in which white actors wore blackface to create stereotypical and racist depictions of African Americans. Ward was not the first to put black actors in whiteface; French dramatist Jean Genet had part of the cast of his play *The Blacks* wear white masks.

237

A popular musical on Broadway and on tour, Stephen Schwartz's *Wicked*, portrays a green witch named Elphaba, from birth until she becomes better known as the Wicked Witch of the West. Perhaps even more amazing in *Wicked* is the makeup on the numerous flying monkeys in the production.

Asian theatre frequently relies on heavy makeup. For instance, Japanese *kabuki*, a highly stylized theatre, uses completely nonrealistic makeup. The main characters must apply a base of white covering the entire face, over which bold patterns of red, blue, black, and brown are painted. The colors and patterns are symbolic of the character. In Chinese theatre, too, the colors of makeup are symbolic: All-white suggests treachery, black means fierce integrity, red means loyalty, green indicates demons, while yellow stands for hidden cunning.

When using makeup, the human face becomes almost like a canvas for a painting. The features of the face may be heightened or exaggerated, or symbolic aspects of the face may be emphasized. In either case, makeup serves as an additional tool for the performer in creating an image of the character.

## Hairstyles and Wigs

Another important component of costume design includes hairstyles and wigs. When costume designers create their renderings, they

include characters' hairstyles as a part of the design, which will later require a hair and wig specialist as a part of the crew.

For women, hairstyles can sometimes denote period and social class. In the middle of the nineteenth century, for example, women often wore ringlets. A few decades later, in the 1890s, women wore their hair piled on top of the head in a pompadour referred to as the Gibson girl look. In the 1920s, women wore their hair marcelled, a hairstyle with waves made by a heated curling iron, sometimes slicked down close to the head. In the modern period, women wear their hair in more natural styles. But again there is tremendous variety—some women have short, curly hair; others have long hair, perhaps even down to the waist. The musical *Hairspray* featured young women in the bouffant hairdos of the 1960s.

For men, too, hairstyles are significant and sometimes symbolic. A military brush cut, an Elvis Presley–style pompadour, and a ponytail each point to a certain lifestyle, but each may be interpreted in several ways.

Audiences would actually be surprised to know how often wigs are used in theatrical productions. They may not even recognize a performer outside the theatre because such a complete visual transformation can be accomplished with the use of wigs made from real hair. For a production, hair designers fashion the wigs in the shop before dress rehearsals. A hair and wig specialist is also required backstage to care for the wigs throughout the performance process to keep the hair looking exactly as the designer envisioned it.

One of the most amazing uses of a wig on Broadway was the extraordinary design by Paul Huntley for *Jekyll and Hyde the Musical*: The actor could manipulate the character's wig instantaneously, allowing him to shift back and forth between Jekyll and Hyde within the same song.

## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. How might what you are wearing today reveal your personality, your station in life, your character? What would lead someone to make those observations?
2. If you were a character in a play, what costume would you design for yourself to tell us the most about you? What are the key elements? Why?

3. Have you ever commented on a friend's makeup, hair, or accessories? What did your comments suggest about how you characterized your friend due to these "costume" elements?
4. Find photos of famous film stars in publications or online. What does the clothing they are wearing tell you about them? Why?
5. Visit the costume shop of your university or community theatre. Are there costumes available to be pulled? Are there renderings of costumes that are under construction? What types of equipment can you find in the shop?

## WIGS AND HAIRSTYLES

Hairstyle indicates social status and other facts about a character; it provides information about when and where a play is taking place. Beyond that, hairstyles and wigs can make a comment. Shown here is a scene from Rodgers & Hammerstein's *Cinderella*. The actors are Harriet Harris, standing, as Cinderella's stepmother, with, from left, Laura Osnes as Cinderella, and Ann Harada and Marla Mindelle, who play the stepsisters, wearing elaborate wigs in hairstyles that exaggerate the norm even for the period. The hair and wig designs are by veteran Broadway designer Paul Huntley. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

## Masks

Masks appear to be as old as theatre, having been used in ancient Greek theatre and in the drama developed by primitive tribes. In one sense, the mask is an extension of the performer—a face on top of a face. Theatre masks remind us, first of all, that we are in a theatre, that the action going on before our eyes is not real in a literal sense but is a symbolic or an artistic presentation. For another thing, masks allow a face to be frozen in one expression: a look of horror, perhaps, which we see throughout a production. Masks can also make a face larger than life, and they can create stereotypes, in which one particular feature—for example, cunning or haughtiness—is emphasized to the exclusion of everything else.

Masks offer other symbolic possibilities. In his play *The Great God Brown*, Eugene O'Neill calls for the performers at certain times to hold masks in front of their faces. When the masks are in place, the characters present a facade to the public, withholding their true selves. When the masks are down, the characters reveal their inner feelings.

Neutral masks are also frequently used in actors' training, to prompt them to use more dynamic physical movement without the benefit of facial expression to express character. More often today, audiences will see half masks, like those used in the commedia dell'arte of the Italian Renaissance, as these allow for stylized character expressions but also give the actor more freedom to speak clearly and effectively.

Characters' mask designs are also incorporated into the costume renderings and are typically built by a makeup or crafts specialist in the costume shop.

## Millinery, Accessories, and Crafts

A number of the seven objectives of costume design noted at the beginning of this chapter are actually achieved through the design and use of accessories to the costumes. Accessories include items such as hats, walking sticks, jewelry, purses, and parasols. All these items instantly refer to various historical periods and also make visual statements about character and locale. Virtually every major costume shop will have a technician who specializes in millinery and crafts. Each of these pieces must be carefully designed and constructed to connect visually to the costumes and to other areas of design. It is hard to imagine a production of Shakespeare's *A Midsummer Night's Dream* without some kind of delightful donkey's headpiece or mask made

specifically for the character Bottom. Theatre design and execution in all areas, including millinery, accessories, and crafts, rely heavily on extensive details to make the visual world of the play compelling for audiences.

## COORDINATION OF THE WHOLE

Actors and actresses would have great difficulty creating a part without costumes and accessories, and in some cases without makeup or a mask. These elements help the performer define his or her role and are so closely related to the performer that we sometimes lose sight of them as separate entities. At the same time, costumes, makeup, hairstyles, and masks must be integrated with other aspects of a production, and each demands special technical skills in order to complete the visual design.

240

# photo essay

### Masks

**Masks are as old as theatre—they were part of ancient Greek theatre and early Asian theatre, and of ceremonial costumes in Africa and elsewhere. Masks can have a variety of uses: They can be highly decorative, but they can also convey the character and temperament of the actor wearing them. Here we see a variety of masks in old and new plays**.

(©Andrew Watson/Getty Images)

Khon dancers during the Phimai festival in Thailand. Khon is a traditional Thai masked dance-drama based on stories from the national epic, the *Ramakian*.

(©Peter Parks/Getty Images)

The Asaro “mud men” from the Asaro Valley in Papua New Guinea’s eastern highlands are known for the ghoulish clay masks they use in many rituals. Here they perform for visitors at the Australian Museum in Sydney in 2016.

241

(©Tristram Kenton/Lebrecht Music & Arts/The Image Works)

Venetian carnival masks are worn by actors in Shakespeare’s *The Merchant of Venice*, a production by the Habima National Theatre, in Hebrew, at Shakespeare’s Globe in London, as part of the World Shakespeare Festival, 2012.

(©T Charles Erickson)

Tristano (Pedro Pascal) and Don Bertolino Fortunato (Dick Latessa) perform the commedia play, *Pulcinella Goes to Hell*, in the Huntington Theatre Company's production of *The Miracle at Naples*, by David Grimm, directed by Peter DuBois, with costumes and masks designed by Anita Yavich.



## PLAYING YOUR PART: THINKING ABOUT THEATRE

1. Think back to the last play or film you attended. How did the costume designer use color, fabric, and/or other elements to set up visual coordination and contrast among the characters?
2. Watch a historical film, like Steven Spielberg's *Lincoln*. Are there any unique accessories employed to help establish time period? What about the hairstyles? Are wigs used?
3. How are Halloween masks like theatre masks? How are they different?
4. If you have been required to read a play this semester, how might you use color and line to define one of the leading characters?

For example, these elements are essential in carrying out a point of view in a production. Masks, for instance, are clearly nonrealistic and

signal to the audience that the character wearing the mask and the play itself are also likely to be nonrealistic. Costumes suggest whether a play is comic or serious, a wild farce or a stark tragedy. Costumes, makeup, hairstyles, and masks must also be coordinated with scenery and lighting. The wrong kind of lighting can wash out or discolor costumes and makeup. It would be self-defeating, too, if scenery were in one mood or style and the costumes in another. Ideally, these elements should support and reinforce one another, and spectators should be aware of how essential it is for them to work together.

## EVALUATING COSTUME DESIGN

There are key questions we should ask ourselves about costume design after we attend a production. By doing so, we can then assess how successful we believe the costume designer was in helping support the director's concept, the actors, and the other designers. Among these questions are:

1. What information was conveyed by the costumes about time, place, characters, and situation? How was this information conveyed to you?
2. What was the period of the costumes? What was the style? Were the costumes from a period other than the period in which the play was written or originally set? If so, how did this affect the production? Why do you think this choice was made?
3. How was color used to give you clues to the personalities of the characters and the relationships between them?
4. Did each character's costume or costumes seem appropriate for his or her personality, social status, occupation, and so on? Why or why not?
5. Did the costumes help you understand conflicts, differing social groups, and interpersonal relationships? If so, how?
6. Were makeup, wigs, unique hairstyles, masks, millinery, ornamentation, and/or special effects used with the costuming? How integrated were these elements into the overall design? Did these elements help you better understand the characters and the play?

## SUMMARY

1. The clothes we wear in daily life are a form of costume. They indicate station in life, occupation, and a sense of formality or informality.
2. Onstage, costumes—like clothes in real life—convey information about the people wearing them; more than that, these costumes are chosen consciously and are designed to give the audience important information.
3. The objectives of costume design are to set tone and style, indicate time and place, characterize individuals and groups, underline personal relationships, create symbolic outfits when appropriate, meet the practical needs of performers, and coordinate with the total production.
4. The designer works with the following elements: line, shape, and silhouette; color; fabric; and accessories.
5. Costumes can be pulled or built. When they are pulled, they are drawn from a preexisting costume collection. Building costumes means creating the complete costume: sewing and constructing the outfit in a costume shop.
6. Those working with a costume designer include a first hand (or lead stitcher) and other assistants.
7. Makeup and hairstyles are also important to the appearance of the performers and are part of the designer's concern.
8. Where called for, masks, too, are under the direction of the costume designer.
9. Often, costume, makeup, and wig assistants work with actors during a performance.

**Design Elements:** In Focus box (spotlight): ©Exactostock/SuperStock; Playing Your Part box (theatre seats): ©Ron Chapple/Getty Images

*Startling, evocative lighting is the setting and background to this contemporary dance piece titled* Listen to Your Heart! *Note the cloud effect in the background and the way it absorbs and reflects light, establishing a mood for the performance. Lighting and sound are indispensable, effective ingredients of any stage presentation.* *(©blanaru/iStock/Getty Images)*

# 11

# Lighting and Sound

Like scenery, costumes, and other elements of theatre, stage lighting and sound have counterparts in everyday life. For example, in real life the basic function of lighting is, of course, illumination—to allow us to see at night and indoors. But there are also many theatrical uses of light in daily life. Advertising signs often have neon lights or brightly colored bulbs. Restaurants feature soft lights, candles, and background music to help establish mood and atmosphere.

With the explosion of such handheld devices as digital music players and smartphones, all of us carry our own soundtracks each day. In our homes, we put spotlights on special parts of a room, such as a dining-room table. Also, in our homes we frequently use a rheostat so that we can dim lights to create a mood. What home does not have projected images available through a flat-screen HD television or the ability to change digital images in picture frames? And today some of us can control all of the lighting and sound throughout our residence with our computers, tablets, or smartphones.

## STAGE LIGHTING

Lighting was historically the last element of visual design to be incorporated into theatre production—and, ironically, it is perhaps the most advanced in terms of equipment, technology, and techniques. Most of the advances have occurred in the past 100 years. Before we look at theatre lighting today, it will be helpful to have a short historical view of its development.

### A Brief History of Stage Lighting

For the first 2,000 years of its recorded history, theatre was held mostly outdoors during the day. A primary reason was the need for illumination. The sun, after all, is an excellent source of light. Since sophisticated lighting was unavailable, playwrights used imagination—the handiest tool available—to suggest nighttime or shifts in lighting. Performers brought on torches, or a candle, as Lady Macbeth does, to indicate night. Playwrights also used language to indicate lighting.

In *The Merchant of Venice*, Shakespeare has Lorenzo say, “How sweet the moonlight sleeps upon this bank”; this is not just a pretty line of poetry but also serves to remind us that it is nighttime. The same is true of the eloquent passage when Romeo tells Juliet that he must leave because dawn is breaking.

> Look, love, what envious streaks
> Do lace the severing clouds in yonder East:
> Night’s candles are burnt out, and jocund day
> Stands tiptoe on the misty mountain tops.

Around 1600 CE, theatre began to move indoors. Candles and oil lamps were used for illumination, and the chief refinements were more sophisticated uses of these basic elements, such as those achieved in the 1770s by David Garrick, the actor-manager of the Drury Lane Theatre in London, and Philippe Jacques DeLoutherbourg (1740–1812), a French designer whom Garrick brought to the Drury Lane. DeLoutherbourg, for example, installed lighting above the stage and used gauze curtains and silk screens to achieve subtle effects with color. In 1785 an instrument known as the Argand lamp (after its inventor, Aimé Argand of Geneva) was introduced. It made use of a glass chimney and a cylindrical wick to create a steadier, brighter light.

Not until 1803, however, when a theatre in London installed gaslights, was there a genuine advance in stage lighting. With gas, which was the principal source of illumination during the nineteenth century, lighting was more easily controlled and managed. Lighting intensity, for example, could be raised or lowered. Its effectiveness, however, remained limited. In addition, the open flames of gas and other earlier lighting systems posed a constant threat of fire. Through the years there were several tragic and costly fires in theatres, both in Europe and in the United States.

In 1879 Thomas Edison invented the incandescent lamp (the electric lightbulb), and the era of imaginative lighting for the theatre began. Not only are incandescent lamps safe, but they can also be controlled. Brightness or intensity can be increased or decreased: The same lighting instrument will produce the bright light of noonday or the dim light of dusk. Also, by putting a colored film over the light or by other means, color can be controlled.

Beyond the power and versatility of electric light, there have been numerous other advances in controls and equipment over the past fifty years. Lighting instruments have been continually refined to become more powerful, as well as more subtle, and to throw a more concentrated, sharply defined beam. Also, lighting has lent itself more

successfully than other theatre elements to miniaturization and computerization.

When applied to lighting, technological developments have allowed for increasingly complex and sophisticated controls. For a large college theatre production, 200 to 300 lighting instruments may be hung around and above the stage, whereas for a large Broadway musical, there may be 800 or many more. (The Broadway musical *Wicked*, for example, uses 650 instruments.) Each of these instruments can be hooked up to a central computer board, and light settings can be stored in the computer. By pushing a single button, an operator can, in a split second, bring about a shift in literally dozens of instruments, changing, for example, focus, color, and intensity. The resulting flexibility and control are remarkable tools for achieving stage effects.



## Objectives and Functions of Lighting Design

Adolphe Appia (1862–1928), a Swiss scene designer, was one of the first to see the vast artistic possibilities of light in the theatre. He wrote: “Light is to the production what music is to the score: the expressive element in opposition to the literal signs; and, like music, light can express only what belongs to the inner essence of all vision’s vision.” Norman Bel Geddes (1893–1958), an imaginative American designer who was a follower of Appia, put it in these words: “Good lighting adds space, depth, mood, mystery, parody, contrast, change of emotion, intimacy, fear.” Edward Gordon Craig (1872–1966), an innovative British designer, spoke of “painting with light.” The lighting designer can indeed paint with light, but far more can be done. On the deepest sensual and symbolic level, the lighting designer can convey to us something of the feeling, and even the substance, of a play.

It is intriguing that today’s leading lighting designers still speak of the artistic potential and aesthetics of light in precisely the same way as these early innovators did. In a sense the art of lighting has not changed, but the innovation continues, and the technology has exploded in the last twenty years. In fact, the most serious problem in lighting for the theatre today is to prevent the technology from taking over the aesthetics of the design, which is where the greatest distinction exists between contemporary lighting technicians and earlier lighting designers.

The following are the primary functions and objectives of stage lighting:

1. Provide visibility.

2. Reveal shapes and forms.
3. Provide a focus onstage and create visual compositions.
4. Assist in creating mood and reinforcing style.
5. Help establish time and place.
6. Establish a rhythm of visual movement.
7. Reinforce a central visual image, establish visual information, or both.

An experienced lighting designer will be capable of accomplishing all these functions simultaneously and will emphasize various objectives at various times during a production to help maintain a strong physical and emotional connection between audience members and the world of the play onstage.

**Visibility** On the practical side, the chief function of lighting is illumination or visibility. We must be able, first and foremost, to see the performers' faces and their actions onstage. Occasionally, lighting designers, carried away with atmospheric possibilities, will make a scene so dark that we can hardly see what is happening. Mood is important, but seeing the performers is obviously even more important. It is true that unless you can see the actors and actresses, the lighting designer has not carried out his or her assignment; however, the accomplished designer will establish a balance that allows for visibility while meeting other design objectives effectively.

**Shape and Form** The lighting designer must enhance the visual world of the play by revealing the objects in that world as interestingly as possible. Lighting objects from the front, with lights above the audience illuminating the stage, visually washes out all three-dimensional objects onstage, making them look flat and uninteresting.

248

The designer must therefore enhance the actors and other visual elements of the world of the play with lighting and color from the side, top, and behind.

**Focus and Composition** In photography, the term *focus* means adjustment of the lens of a camera so that the picture recorded on the film is sharp and clear. In theatre lighting, *focus* refers to the fact that beams of light are aimed at—focused on—a particular area. In stage action the director and lighting designer collaborate in creating a

continually moving visual composition that always keeps the audience focused on the central action of the play. This kind of collaboration and compositional focus also allows a character to slip into position without those of us in the audience ever realizing how he got there until it is time to reveal him. Careful focus of light is integral to successful visuals onstage. Adjacent lighting and acting areas must be overlapped in focus to allow actors to move across the stage without going into and out of the edges of light beams. At the same time, the designer must control the *spill* of the light in front of and behind the actor so that it will not distract us as we watch the action of the play.

By means of focus and changes in light cues the lighting designer and director keep the audience focused on the essential action. These compositions or *looks* can vary from turning the stage into one large area to creating small, isolated areas all intended to take the audience on an interesting visual journey through the world of the play.

**Mood and Style** Theatre, as a collaborative art form by definition, combines all areas of a production to establish the mood and world of the play. Once that predominant mood is established for an audience, the individual production areas can manipulate mood throughout the play, especially through lighting and sound. A production can also effectively manipulate our reaction. For example, early in a play we may see two or three romantic moments when the stage is filled with blue moonlight; then, in a later scene the look may seem the same until the action starts and we realize that the mood has changed to a cold, dark, evil situation. Action, scenery, and words, in conjunction with light, tell us exactly what the mood is. Experienced playwrights and designers know how we can be manipulated and will often take advantage of our expectations to make our journey more interesting.

In terms of style, lighting can indicate whether a play is realistic or nonrealistic. In a realistic play, the lighting will simulate the effect of ordinary sources—table lamps, say, and outside sunlight. In a nonrealistic production or a highly theatrical musical, the designer can be more imaginative: Shafts of light can cut through the dark, sculpturing performers onstage; a glowing red light can convey a scene of damnation; a ghostly green light can cast a spell over a nightmare scene; a hard-edged spotlight can let the audience members know that what they are now seeing is not a realistic moment in a character's life.

**Time and Place** By its color, shade, and intensity, lighting can suggest the time of day, giving us the pale light of dawn, the bright light of midday, the vivid colors of sunset, or the muted light of evening.

Lighting can also indicate the season of the year because the sun strikes objects at very different angles in winter and summer. In addition, lighting can suggest place by showing indoor or outdoor light. In this manner, lighting helps reinforce the story being told.

249

### LIGHTING CREATES MOOD AND STYLE

Along with scenery and costumes, lighting is a key element in creating the mood and style of a production. Shown here is a scene where light crisscrosses the stage creating abstract shapes and illuminating the performers, as well as projecting colors that contrast the top section with that below. The scene is from a production of *Eurydice* by Sarah Ruhl, directed by Geoff Elliott at A Noise Within. The lighting was designed by Meghan Gray. (©Craig Schwartz)

**Rhythm** Since changes in light occur on a time continuum, they establish a rhythm running through a production. It is absolutely imperative that the seemingly simple lighting changes from scene to scene help establish the kind of rhythm and timing that the director needs for us to be drawn into the action. Abrupt, staccato changes with

stark blackouts might unsettle us if that is called for, and languid, slow fades and gradual cross-fades can allow us a more thoughtful transition between scenes. Does the designer fade out the previous scene slowly while the next scene is beginning, thus prompting us to think about the connection? Or does the designer make the lights fade in very slowly, prompting us to ask what is to come and pulling

252

in our attention? Either way these changes in rhythm have an effect on our interaction with and understanding of the world of the play.

250

# photo essay

## The Many Uses of Stage Lighting

**Stage lighting can be used for many purposes: to illuminate, to highlight characters or stage areas, to create mood**.

(©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

In the scene above, lighting designer Justin Townsend has used lights to highlight the couple in the center (Dashiell Eaves and Amanda Quaid) and also the single figure at the right (Eisa Davis) in a different color and mood. The lights above add framing and atmosphere. The play is Kirsten Greenidge's *Luck of the Irish* directed by Rebecca Taichman.

(©Craig Schwartz)

A scene from a production of *Desire Under the Elms* by Eugene O'Neill, directed by Dámaso Rodriguez at A Noise Within, in Pasadena, California, shows a skillful use of local front lighting: The oil lamp illuminates Abbie (Monette Magrath). Lighting by James P. Taylor; costumes by Julie Keen.

251

(©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

In *Jesus Christ Superstar*, an Andrew Lloyd Webber musical directed by Des McAnuff, lighting designer Howell Binkley has used down lighting and back lighting to isolate and highlight actor Paul Nolan in the title role.

(©Craig Schwartz)

Lighting designer Elizabeth Harper has used lighting to create a crimson sky in the Dust Bowl area of the Midwest in a production of *The Grapes of Wrath* by John Steinbeck, adapted by Frank Galati, directed by Michael Michetti at A Noise Within. Note the effective use of the light to silhouette the silent actors.

Since many lighting changes are coordinated with scene changes and changes in other production elements, it is a challenge for the lighting designer to make artistic choices that will support the director's vision, whether a change is pragmatic or solely aesthetic. Either way the importance of this synchronization is recognized by directors and designers, who take great care to ensure the proper changes —"choreographing" shifts in light and scenery like dancers' movements.

**Reinforcement of the Central Image** Lighting—like scenery, costumes, and all other elements—must be consistent with the overall style and mood of a production. Over the past thirty years there has been a dramatic change in the style of writing plays. Long, extended scenes taking place in a single location are less and less common. Today's audiences are most accustomed to film and television editing, and to shorter scenes with multiple locations. Most of our contemporary

plays tend to be written in a style that also cuts frequently from location to location; the actors may be on a bare stage with only the most essential props or suggested props to support the action. These kinds of changes in writing style prompt the lighting designer to provide more visual information than ever before about place and locale to allow for such simple staging. The wrong choices in lighting can distort or even destroy the effect of a play. At the same time, because lighting is the most flexible and the most atmospheric visual element of theatre, it can aid enormously in creating our theatre experience.

## The Lighting Designer

The person responsible for creating, installing, and setting controls for stage lighting is the lighting designer and his or her collaborators. It is important for the lighting designer to have a background in the technical and mechanical aspects of lighting as well as a broad, creative visual imagination. The ability to translate words and actions and feelings into color, direction, and intensity comes only after much training and experience.

**The Process of Lighting Design** In creating the lighting design for a production, the lighting designer first reads the script and begins to form some rough ideas and develop some feelings about the play. He or she meets with the director and other designers to discuss visual concepts. The lighting designer receives from the set designer copies of all the scenery plans and usually consults with the costume designer to learn the shape and color of the costumes.

The lighting designer will do a great deal of visual research and will also see one or perhaps several rehearsals to get the feel of the production, to see the exact location of various pieces of furniture and stage business, and to consult with the director about possible effects. Following this, the lighting designer draws a plan called a *light plot*. This includes the location and color of each lighting instrument. Also indicated is the kind of instrument called for and the area of the stage on which it is focused. When lighting instruments are moved into the theatre and hung (that is, placed on pipes and other supports), the designer supervises the focusing.

253

During technical rehearsals, the lighting designer works with the director to establish light cues; that is, instructions about when the lights go on and off. The designer also sets the length of time for light changes and the levels of intensity on the computer-controlled light

board, which sends a digital signal to the actual dimmers to adjust the lighting instrument levels. (The actual dimmers, which allow lighting intensities to be changed smoothly and at varying rates, are located in a remote offstage location.)

**Properties of Stage Lighting** When working on the design for a production, the lighting designer knows what controllable properties of light will achieve the objectives discussed above. The lighting designer can manipulate four different properties of light for any visual change onstage: intensity, color, distribution, and movement.

***Intensity***. The first property of light is brightness, or intensity. Intensity can be controlled (as noted above) by devices called dimmers, which make the lights brighter or darker. A dimmer is an electric or electronic device that can vary the amount of power going to the lights. This makes it possible for a scene at night to take place in very little light and a daylight scene to take place in bright light. Since the advent of computer control systems, lighting intensities can be set at any level between 1 percent and 100 percent of full, as opposed to levels 1 through 10 on older manual controls.

***Color***. The second property of light is color. Color is a very powerful part of lighting, and theatre lights can very easily be changed to one of several hundred colors simply by placing colored material in slots at the front of the lighting instruments. This material is usually called a gel—short for gelatin, of which it was originally made. Today, however, these color filters are generally made of plastic, such as Mylar, or acetate.

Also in recent years, color *scrollers* have been introduced. These devices typically make it possible to change up to fifteen colors for each lighting, and the scrollers are also programmed into each light cue along with intensity and timing. Color is often mixed so that the strong tones of one shade will not dominate, since such dominance would give an unnatural appearance. Colors are most often selected to support choices made by the scenic and costume designers while still including sufficient dramatic color to support the varied action of the play. Quite often scenes will call for special effects; we expect stark shadows and strange colors, for example, when Hamlet confronts the ghost of his father.

***Distribution***. The third property of light that the lighting designer can use is distribution: the position and type of lighting instrument being used and the angle at which the light strikes the performers onstage. (Another term for this property could be *direction*, that is, the source

from which the light comes, the type of instrument used, and the points on the stage at which a light beam is aimed.) In earlier days, footlights —a row of lights across the front of the stage floor—were used, primarily because this was almost the only location from which to light the front of the performers. However, footlights, which were below the performers, had the disadvantage of casting ghostly shadows on their faces. Footlights also created a kind of barrier between performers and audience. With the development of more powerful, versatile lights, footlights have been eliminated and they are now used only when a production is trying to re-create the look and style of a classic play of the eighteenth or nineteenth century.

254

## THE USE OF COLOR IN LIGHTING

One of the prime elements in stage lighting is color: It can alter and transform a stage set, changing and establishing different moods. Here we see the same set from *The Underpants* by Carl Sternheim, adapted by Steve Martin, presented at the Alley Theatre, Houston. Note the stark white of the top photograph and the pink and purple hue of the bottom photo, contrasting the mood and the tone from one visual picture to another. All this is done with light. The director was Scott Schwartz, with lighting design by Pat Collins, costume design by David C. Woolard, and set design by Anna Louizos. (both: ©T Charles Erickson)

Today, most lighting hits the stage from above, coming from instruments in front of the stage and at the sides. The vertical angle of light beams from the *front of the house* is typically close to 45 degrees; this is an excellent angle for lighting the actor's face without creating harmful shadows, and it also gives a sense of sunlight or an overhead light source found in most locations.

255

There are a wide variety of lighting instruments available today, both conventional instruments and automated moving light fixtures. They all have distinctive features, and each instrument is selected for the quality of light and the design options it allows. What visual qualities or "texture" does the light produce onstage? Is it a single shaft of light, like a single beam of moonlight through the trees or a spotlight in a nightclub?

Or is the light in a pattern, such as dappled sunlight through the leaves of trees in a forest? Are the edges of the light sharp, or soft and diffused? In conventional ellipsoidal lighting instruments, light can be shaped by special shutters that close in at the edges (very few moving lights even have that capability). All these are additional tools for the designer.

***Movement***. The last property of light the designer can work with is movement, and in fact this is where the lighting design comes to life. On one level, the eye is carried from place to place by the shifting focus of lights: follow spots moving from one person or one area to another, automated lights changing directions, a performer carrying a candle or flashlight across the stage. The subtlest and often the most effective kind of movement of light comes with shifting the audience's focus when lights go down in one area and come up in another. Lighting cross-fades like this can shift the focus from location to location and from color to color, but even within single scenes a good lighting design

will force the audience members to change their focus without even realizing it. Also, time of day, sunsets, and so on can help provide visual information for the audience.

For an example of how these properties function, consider the lighting for a production of *Hamlet*. To emphasize this play's eerie, tragic quality, with its murders and graveyard scene, the lighting would generally be cool rather than warm, but it could also have a slash of red cutting through the otherwise cool light. As for angles, if the production took place on a proscenium stage, there would be more dramatic downlighting and backlighting to give the characters a sculptured, occasionally unreal quality. In terms of movement, the lights would change each time there was a shift in locale, or a low-angle special could come on diagonally from behind the ghost of Hamlet's father. This would give a rhythm of movement throughout the play and would also focus the audience's attention on particular areas of the stage as well as support the thematic elements of the play.

**The Lighting Designer's Resources** Among the resources of the lighting designer are various kinds of lighting instruments and other kinds of technical and electronic equipment.

***Types of stage lights***. Most stage lights have three main elements: a lamp that is the source of the light, a reflector, and a lens through which the beams pass. The two basic categories of lighting fixtures are conventional lighting instruments and automated or moving light fixtures. Conventional lights are fixed instruments with a single focus and design purpose. Intelligent moving light fixtures are able to alter focus, change color, project multiple patterns, rotate the patterns at varying speeds, change the size of the beam, and give a sharp or diffused focus.

Examples of common conventional lights are the ellipsoidal reflector spotlight; Fresnel or PAR soft-edged spotlight; floodlight, strip light, and border light; and automated or moving light:

256

1. *Ellipsoidal reflector spotlight, or ERS*. This is the most widely used conventional fixture. It creates a bright, hard-edged spot. However, the edge can be softened with focus adjustment or with a different fusion filter. Lenses of different focal lengths allow for eight different standard-size beams depending on the distance from the theatre's hanging positions to the stage; this instrument is, therefore, useful from almost any position in the theatre. Clearly, it is the "workhorse" of contemporary lighting practice. It also has a special *gobo* slot for

pattern projection. A *followspot* is another typically hard-edged spotlight controlled by an operator that is designed to follow the leading performer across the stage. Originally, this type of light was created by igniting the mineral lime in front of a reflector in the back end of a long metal tube. The chemical reaction created a bright but slightly green light, which led to the common expression for someone who likes attention as “liking to be in the limelight.”

Philips Selecon Rama Fresnel (Courtesy of Philips Selecon)

2. *Fresnel soft-edged spotlight*. The most popular soft-edged spotlight is the Fresnel (pronounced “fruh-NEL”). It is a high- wattage spot, and the Fresnel lens helps dissipate the heat, but it can create only a soft-edged beam of light that can be focused down to a small spot or flooded to cover a larger stage area. The lens is named for Auguste Fresnel, who designed, for lighthouses, the first lenses that would not crack with intense heating and cooling. The concentric rings he cut into the lens allowed the lens to function properly while preventing the buildup of heat from cracking the lens after the light was turned off. Many lighting designers use this instrument for toplighting and backlighting and to cover a large stage area with a wash of color. The Fresnel is generally used in positions near the stage—behind the proscenium opening, or mounted close to the action on an arena or thrust stage. Another common soft-edged lighting instrument is the parabolic aluminized reflector (PAR), which emits an oval beam. *Barn doors*, with flaps that can cut off an edge of the beam, and *color changers/scrollers*, which increase the options from one color to fifteen colors on a single instrument, are common accessories used on both PARs and Fresnels.

Philips Selecon Pacific 2350 Ellipsoidal (Courtesy of Philips Selecon)

3. *Floodlight, strip light, and border light*. These lights bathe a section of the stage or scenery in a smooth, diffused wash of light. Floodlights are used, singly or in groups, to provide general illumination for the stage or scenery. The light from floods can be blended in acting areas, or used to “tone” settings and costumes. They are most often used to illuminate cycloramas at the rear of the stage, or ground rows along the floor of the stage.

Vari*Lite VL6 spot luminaire (Courtesy of Philips Vari-Lite)

4. *Automated or moving light (also referred to as intelligent fixture)*. The moving light is the newest and most versatile instrument of the group, although there are still only a few moving lights with an independent shutter function that can be focused in a theatre like an ellipsoidal spotlight. Automated light fixtures are able to alter focus, change color using dichroic—or two-beam—color mixing, project multiple patterns, rotate the patterns at varying speeds, change the size of the beam, and give a sharp or diffused focus. One moving light

fixture used as a special can replace numerous conventional fixtures. Most contemporary lighting designers use a combination of both types of instruments. Automated fixtures are particularly useful in elaborate musical productions and are widely used in rock concerts.

Philips Selecon Hui Flood (Courtesy of Philips Selecon)

***Lighting controls***. Lighting design is clearly the most technologically developed element of theatre. We have already considered some of the advances in this area in terms of lighting instruments. These fixtures can now be hung all over a performance space and aimed at every part of the stage. In addition, one person sitting at a console can control the elements of these lighting instruments. New technologies have also prompted a great deal of change in the design of control systems, which now allow for remarkable computer-controlled lighting along with the ability to employ traditional methods of cue changes. Lighting control systems are extremely expensive, so the change to systems that continue to evolve technologically happens only gradually for most theatre operations.

Lighting changes—or ***cues***, as they are called—are usually arranged ahead of time. Sometimes, in a complicated production (a musical, say, or a Shakespearean play), there will be from 75 to 150 or more light cues. A cue can range from a *blackout* (in which all the lights are shut off at once), to a *fade* (the lights dim slowly, changing the scene from brighter to darker), to a *cross-fade* (one set of lights comes down while another comes up) or a split cross-fade (the lights that are coming up are on a different fade count from the lights that are coming down). Thanks to computerized control, the split cross-fade is the most common.

**cues** Any prearranged signal—such as the last words in a speech, a piece of business, or any action or lighting change—that indicates to a performer or stage manager that it is time to proceed to the next line or action.

Although light board programming is complicated and somewhat time-consuming. the actual running of a show has become a fairly simple task because of well-designed computer control systems. The most critical aspect of the lighting design is the ability of the stage manager to fully understand the pacing and design aesthetic in calling the lighting and sound cues. Even the process of calling cues has been simplified in some ways by technology. In lighting for dance or for large-scale musicals it is critical to merge the lighting and sound cues. Through the use of new digital sound technology a computer-controlled sound program can interface with a computer light board and both light and sound cues can be run simultaneously with one tap of the keyboard space bar.

258

## IN FOCUS: ROCK CONCERT AND THEATRE LIGHTING

Rock music and theatre have strong connections. For example, some rock stars have created theatrical alter egos and some have acted in film, television, and even theatre. Another key connection is the influence theatre has had on rock concert lighting design and vice versa.

In the early days of touring rock performers, particularly in the 1950s and 1960s, many of the designers for their concerts were theatre trained and had the same aesthetic goals as theatre lighting design: clear illumination, mood, and slight changes of color. This was particularly true because available lighting instruments had to be hung in multiuse spaces on preexisting grids and put up and taken down quickly.

Beginning in the 1970s, with the development of computer-assisted technology and new lighting technology, rock concerts began to become performance events with lighting design becoming almost another onstage performer. Lighting designers for rock concerts used cutting-edge computer-assisted controls, new software and lighter materials to create poles for hanging multiple instruments as well as lighter instruments, more intense floodlights for color, intelligent instruments that could move, and projections and media.

A recent example of rock performance using cutting- edge technology to create lighting effects was Lady Gaga's 2017 Super

Bowl performance. Besides the intricate light plot that employed 84 intelligent Philips Vari-Lites, 300 Intel Shooting Star drones flew over Lady Gaga during her opening number creating a mechanized and computer-controlled light show. The drones were outfitted with colored LEDs and the unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) were remotely controlled to create stunning images including the American flag.

Many of the technological innovations used to create spectacular lighting designs for rock musicians were later incorporated into large-scale commercial productions. For example, some Broadway rock and juke box musicals have re-created the visual aesthetic of rock concerts. *Natasha, Pierre & the Great Comet of 1812*, which opened on Broadway in 2016, uses spectacular lighting that frequently mimics a rock concert.

For instance, Strindberg's *The Dream Play* has numerous and complex scene changes—like a dream, as the title implies—in which one scene fades into another before our eyes. At one point in the play, a young woman, called the Daughter, sits at an organ in a church. In Strindberg's words, "The stage darkens as the Daughter rises and approaches the Lawyer. By means of lighting the organ is transformed into a wall of a grotto. The sea seeps in between basal pillars with a harmony of waves and wind." At the light cue for this change, a button is pushed, and all the lights creating the majesty of the church fade as the lights creating the grotto come up. In many ways stage lighting technology has finally started to catch up with, and serve, the creative ideas that artists like Strindberg and Appia had at the start of the twentieth century.

**The Lighting Designer's Collaborators** As in every aspect of theatre, in lighting too there is collaboration. Those who work with the lighting designer include assistant designers and people who help create the light plot, as well as a master electrician responsible for the preparation, hanging, and focusing of the lights and

259

all accessories (often, if not always, electricians must climb on catwalks and ladders to remote areas above, behind, and in front of the stage). One of the newer jobs is that of the moving light programmer. Until the advent of moving lights, programming light cues had always fallen to either the lighting designer or the lead associate designer. More recently, however, the complexity of programming has grown

exponentially with automated fixtures and other digital accessories, thus requiring another technical specialty.

Large-scale musical productions, for example, are often so complex that even calling all the cues is impossible for one person to do. For that reason, all followspot cues (usually three or four followspots in a design) are typically called by the lead spot operator. In the concert industry, this gets even more complex, as there are usually a minimum of eight followspots and often as many as sixteen or more on a major tour of a rock musical production in addition to almost unimaginably complex moving light packages.

## SOUND IN THE THEATRE

Scenery, costumes, and lighting can all be described as the visual elements of theatre. Another major design element is sound. In recent years, sound has become an increasingly important aspect of theatre, with its own artistry, technology, and designers.

In 2007, the Tony Awards voted to include sound design as a category beginning with the 2008 awards. However, in 2014, the Tony Administration Committee eliminated the category. Even though the committee stated it could give a special award to a production with extraordinary sound design, there was great protest by many members of the profession reflecting how significant sound design has become in so many Broadway productions; the committee, therefore, reinstated the award for both a play and a musical for the 2017–2018 season. In other cities, sound design is recognized as a separate theatre awards category; for example, Chicago's Joseph Jefferson Award Committee recognizes sound design in Equity and non-Equity productions.

### Amplification

In the past few decades, sound amplification has become increasingly prominent in theatre. For some audience members, it has sometimes proved to be controversial as well. The intense amplification at popular music concerts along with the availability of inexpensive personal audio systems—now in digital formats—are just two of the reasons we now expect widespread sound reproduction in the theatre. As a result, large musicals, whether presented in Broadway houses or in spacious performing art centers across the country, are now extensively amplified. Most of us, accustomed to amplified sound in many other settings, take such amplification for granted.

Some critics charge, however, that amplification in theatre is sometimes overdone, with the sound too loud, as well as too mechanical and artificial. In opera the objections are even stronger. In today's theatre, those continuing to oppose amplification appear to be "purists" who want a return to past theatrical practice. It may be difficult for us in the early twenty-first century to imagine, but the great American musicals of the 1940s and the 1950s—by composers like Rodgers and Hammerstein, Cole Porter, and Irving Berlin—were all produced without any sound amplification whatsoever. Today, however, electronic amplification is a way of life in theatre, and sound design has become an indispensable part of any production.

260

## THE SIGNIFICANCE OF SOUND

There are times when sound takes over in a production. Of course, in most musical productions all the voices, as well as the instruments of the orchestra, are enhanced by sound equipment. But in many productions there are certain moments when sound is crucial. An example is the scene shown here from a production of *Uncle Vanya* by Anton Chekhov. Derek Jacobi, as Vanya, fires a gun at a professor he finds unbearable. The gunshot goes astray (perhaps on purpose), but the sound of the firing is central to the scene, underscoring Vanya's rage. Sound design was by David Van Teighem. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

We are speaking here of larger spaces: college or university theatres of approximately 400 or 500 seats, and professional theatres that might range from 800 to 2,000 seats. The issue of amplification is less pressing in smaller venues: in “black boxes,” for example, or fringe theatres in lofts, warehouses, or storefronts that seat perhaps 100 spectators. In such spaces, sound amplification is likely to be less used. (It should be noted, however, with the advent of less expensive computer-assisted sound design, such theatres may still have intricate sound effects for their productions.)

**Sound Effects** Aside from the argument about the volume or pervasiveness of voice amplification, we should recognize that sound has always been an important, and necessary, component of theatre production. One aspect of this is sound effects. In earlier years—for several centuries, in fact—various devices were developed to create such sounds.

Historically, for example, a wooden drum made from slats was used to produce the sound of wind. The drum was usually two or three feet in diameter, and covered with a muslin cloth. When the drum was turned, by means of a handle, it made a noise like howling wind. Thunder was suggested by hanging a large, thick metal sheet backstage and gently shaking it. For the sound of a door slamming, a miniature door or even a full-size door in a frame was placed just offstage and opened and shut. Two hinged pieces of wood slammed shut also simulated the sound of a closing door.



A gunshot sound could also be created with these hinged pieces of wood, as well as by firing a gun loaded with blank cartridges. Live ammunition could not be used safely onstage. In some states, blank guns were (and still are) illegal. As we shall see, recorded sound, now easily digitized, makes this issue irrelevant in the contemporary theatre.

Today, of course, the developments in computer technology and digitization, which support sound design and its playback onstage, are extensive. There are many programs available on the Internet for free download as well, so it is not difficult to get started using simple sound programs. Most often these same programs have more advanced and complex capabilities that are available for purchase. You can record and play back a myriad of sound cues; if you want to interface those sound cues through a lighting control board or projection system, for creation and alteration, then you may use sophisticated software packages such as Pro Tools, Final Cut Pro, or Garage Band. Also available are SFX and CueLab computer playback systems.

## The Sound Designer

The person responsible for arranging and orchestrating all the aural aspects of a production is the sound designer. Like his or her counterparts in visual design, the sound designer begins by reading the script, noting all the places where sound might be needed. For a large-scale musical, the designer also decides on the number and type of microphones to be used, the placement of speakers throughout the theatre, and all other aspects of sound reproduction.

After reading the script, the sound designer consults with the director to determine the exact nature of the sound requirements, including sound effects and amplification. The designer then sets about preparing the full range of components that constitute sound for a production. Encompassing anything from preshow and intermission music to any and all microphones to special prerecorded sound effects to preshow announcements about cell phones to live voice-overs, sound is an essential component of every theatre production.

## Understanding Sound Reproduction and Sound Reinforcement

One way to classify sound design is as *sound reproduction* and *sound reinforcement*. Sound *reproduction* is the use of motivated or environmental sounds. ***Motivated sounds*** would be, for instance, the noise of a car crunching on gravel, a car motor turning off, and a door slamming—a sequence that would announce the arrival of a character at a house where a scene is taking place. Motivated sounds, then, are those called for by the script. ***Environmental sounds*** are noises of everyday life that help create verisimilitude in a production: street traffic in a city, crickets in the country, loud rock music coming from a stereo in a college dormitory. Such sounds are usually heard as background.

**motivated sounds** Sounds called for by the script.

**environmental sounds** Noises of everyday life that help create a sense of reality in a production.

Sound effects are one form of sound reproduction. A sound effect can be defined as any sound produced by mechanical or human means to create for us a noise or sound associated with the play. Today, as we noted previously, sound effects are most often digitally downloaded to computers. Virtually every sound imaginable—from birds singing to dogs barking to jet planes flying—is available for digital downloading from the Internet, not only for expensive commercial, professional

productions but also for small noncommercial companies and college, university, and community theatres.

262

## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. How do you use lighting in your room or home for different circumstances? How do you change the lighting for those occasions? How is this similar to what is done in the theatre?
2. What sound technology do you use in your everyday life? How might this also be employed in the theatre?
3. If someone asked, “What is the soundtrack for your life?,” what would your response be? How does that sound reflect who you are? How is that similar to the use of sound accompanying the production of a play?
4. On a sunny day, observe how the light shines through the leaves of a tree on your campus or near your home. What mood does the light evoke in you? Why? How?
5. What is the lighting like in your favorite restaurant? What mood does it evoke in you? Why? How?
6. Watch a film and discuss how the sound enhances the film. How is underscoring used?
7. Attend a technical rehearsal at your university or community theatre. Observe the light changes. Do you see who is operating the light and sound boards? Can you identify any of the lighting instruments and where they are hung in the theatre? Ask if you may see the computer boards that operate lighting and sound.

Sound ***reinforcement*** is the amplification of sounds produced by a performer or a musical instrument. With the growth of electronics and computerization in music, more and more instruments have been amplified. At any rock concert, you can see wires coming out of the basses and guitars. In an orchestra pit in a theatre, the quieter acoustic instruments such as the guitar are miked to achieve a balance of sound with the louder instruments. In today’s Broadway theatres it is not unusual to have some members of the orchestra in a separate room in another part of the building with a television monitor showing the

conductor. In most cases, the audience would never know about this seating arrangement. The total sound can overwhelm a singer, especially one who has not been trained—as opera singers are—to project the voice into the farther reaches of a theatre. As a result, we have body mikes on the performers.

**reinforcement** The amplification of sounds produced by a performer or a musical instrument.

At first, a body mike was a small microphone attached in some way to the performer's clothing. A wire ran from the mike to a small radio transmitter concealed on the performer; from the transmitter, the sound was sent to an offstage listening device that fed it into a central sound-control system. In today's large musical productions, the microphone worn by a performer is frequently a small instrument, hardly larger than a piece of wire, worn over one ear alongside the temple or placed elsewhere near the performer's head, that carries the sound to the body transmitters.

It is now very common in large musical theatre playhouses for performers to wear this very tiny, almost unnoticeable microphone around the ear; it is also most commonly used by rock performers in concerts. Head microphones are used so that they will be as close as possible to the performer's mouth and at a constant distance away from it. (How many of us attending a musical realize that the tap dancers are frequently wearing wireless microphones near their feet, inside their dance tights?)

Still another kind of sound that must be added to the final mix is musical or other *underscoring*, which one hears between scenes or acts, and sometimes during spoken sections of a performance, to add emphasis or create mood.



## Sound Technology

In preparing the sound for a production, the designers and engineers not only must assemble all the necessary sounds but also must be certain that appropriate equipment and technology, including microphones, loudspeakers, sound recordings and other more contemporary computer and digital technologies, are correctly used onstage and in the auditorium

**Microphones and Loudspeakers** Several types of microphones are used in the theatre to reinforce sound. A *shotgun mike* is highly

directional and is aimed from a distance at a specific area. A *general mike* picks up sounds in the general area toward which it is aimed. A *body mike*, as we described earlier, is a wireless microphone attached to a performer's body or clothing. Microphones not worn by performers are placed in various locations. One position is alongside the downstage edge of the stage. Another position is hanging in the air above the stage. Any type of microphone must be hooked up to an amplifier that increases the electronic energy of the sound and sends it through the speakers.

The placement of loudspeakers is both an art and a science. It is necessary to determine the correct speakers for the size and shape of the theatre, and to position them so that they carry sound clearly and evenly into the auditorium—to the upper reaches of the balcony, to the side seats, and to areas underneath the balcony as well as the first few rows in the orchestra. Also, live sound from the performers must reach the sides and back of the theatre at the same time that it reaches those of us seated in the front. One problem in this regard is that sound travels much more slowly than light.

The speed of sound is only 1,100 feet per second—which means that for those of us seated at the back of a large theatre, sound from a speaker at the rear of the auditorium will be heard before the human voice from the stage. Developments in digital electronics have led to devices that process, sample, and synthesize sound for various effects, including delaying the electronic sound so that it arrives through a loudspeaker at the same time as the much slower live sound.

**Sound Recordings** The process of assembling sound recordings is similar for professional and nonprofessional productions. First, a list is made of all sound required. This list is usually developed by the sound designer in consultation with the director, and possibly with a composer: For a show with a great deal of sound or music, there may be both a sound designer and a music composer.

Once the list is drawn up, a master recording is made and the sounds are arranged in their order of appearance in the script. This process is called *editing* and is now done with computer assistance. In addition, sound designers and music composers can also have their digital sounds and new music captured on their tablets, smart devices, or stored online, so that they can share with the director and other collaborators.

When the production moves into the theatre, there is a technical rehearsal without performers, during which each sound cue is listened to and the volume is set. When rehearsals with the performers start in the theatre, more changes will be made. Depending on the action and

the timing of scenes, some cues will be too loud and others too soft; some will have to be made shorter and others made longer.

During an actual performance of a production using sound reinforcement, an operator must sit at a complex sound console *mixing* sound or, as is becoming the



norm, use a computerized playback system such as SFX or CueLab. In this way the operator blends all elements from the many microphones and from the master sound recording—so that there is a smooth, seamless blend of sound. Also, the operator must make certain not only that all sound is in balance but also that sound does not intrude on the performance or call attention to itself, away from the stage and the performers.

**New Technologies in Sound** As with lighting, in recent years we have seen frequent advances and breakthroughs in sound equipment and technology. The new body microphones and tiny head microphones as well as a device that delays the delivery of electronic sound have already been mentioned. There are other developments as well.

Analog reel-to-reel tape decks, which were standard, have given way to digital technology such as direct playback from a computer's hard drive. Sound is now recorded and edited at digital audio workstations, housed on personal computers as well as on tablets and even smartphones. Such stations allow easier editing of sound, more complex effects, and higher-quality sound. Digital playback systems allow very easy and precise cueing of shows, as well as greatly improved sound quality.

New sound technology has also improved the theatre experience for audience members with hearing issues through assistive listening devices (ALDs). An ALD consists of a small wireless radio receiver and either an independent earpiece or an earpiece compatible with certain hearing aids. ALDs transmit amplified sound from the stage through a sophisticated set of tiny microphones. These devices allow those audience members who need assistance to hear the dialogue spoken by performers, sound effects, as well as songs and music. The ALDs also eliminate a significant amount of the ambient noise thereby enhancing the hearing experience. (Of course, some theatres may also offer captioned and/or signed performances for those audience members with profound hearing loss.)

## SPECIAL EFFECTS IN LIGHTING AND SOUND

As in scene design, some effects of lighting and sound, separately or in combination, can seem unusual or even miraculous and add to the magic of live theatre.

There are several special lighting effects that can be used to create interesting visual pictures. One simple effect is to position a source of light near the stage floor and shine the light on the performers from below. This creates shadows under the eyes and chin and gives performers' faces a ghostly or horrifying quality. Another common special effect is ultraviolet light, a very dark blue light that causes phosphorus to glow; when the stage is very dark, or completely dark, costumes or scenery that have been painted with a special phosphorus paint will "light up."

The effect of slow motion—where the performers seem to be moving in jerks—is created by a strobe light, a very powerful, bright gas-discharge light that flashes at rapid intervals. As we saw earlier, technological advances in lighting have made it possible to create even more spectacular effects and to enhance these effects as well.

There are also a number of special sound effects. Sometimes speakers are placed completely around the audience so that the sound can move from side to side. Echoes can be created by a machine that causes reverberations in sound waves. Expanding audio technology also allows for more complex sound effects. Computerized noises and electronic music can be used to create special sounds for various situations, and digitization gives instantaneous access to any element of the sound design. Also, with computerized synthesizers, a few musicians can now replace a large orchestra.

### PLAYING YOUR PART: THINKING ABOUT THEATRE

1. During the last play you attended, what did you notice about the lighting? Were there lighting instruments throughout the theatre aimed at the stage? When the performance began, where did the beams of light appear to come from?
2. During that same production, what colors were created onstage by lighting? Did you think the colors were appropriate for the production? How did the color of the lights affect your overall experience?

3. Again, during that same production, were you able to spot sound speakers? Where were they located? During the performance, did you notice if microphones were attached to the actors? Do you think there were microphones elsewhere onstage? Can you speculate as to where they were?

Lighting and sound, therefore, like scenery and costumes, are means to an end: They implement the artistic and aesthetic aspects of a production. The colors, shapes, and lines of lighting and the qualities of sound design interact with other elements of theatre and contribute to the overall experience.

## EVALUATING LIGHTING AND SOUND DESIGN

As with the other design elements, there are key questions we should ask ourselves as we try to determine how successful the lighting and sound designers were in supporting the production we have attended. These include:

1. What information was conveyed by the lighting about time, place, characters, and situation? How was this information conveyed to you?
2. Describe the mood of the lighting. How was color and intensity used to affect your mood? What other characteristics of light were used to affect mood? Was the lighting appropriate for the mood of each scene? Why or why not?
3. Was the lighting realistic or nonrealistic? What was the direction of the light? Did it seem to come from a natural source, or was it artificial? Did this choice seem appropriate for the text?
4. Were the performers properly lit? Could their faces be seen?
5. Were light changes made slowly or quickly? How did this affect the play? Did it seem right for the type of play you attended?
6. Were there any lighting special effects? What were they? How were they used to support the play?
7. Were sound effects used in the production? How did they help support your understanding of the play?
8. Were the sound effects realistic or nonrealistic?

9. Were the performers amplified? Was that a distraction or did it seem well integrated into the production?

10. Was there original music? How did it help set the mood or help you better understand the action of the play?

266

## SUMMARY

1. Stage lighting, like other elements of theatre, has a counterpart in the lighting of homes, restaurants, and other environments in our everyday life.
2. Lighting was historically the last visual element to be fully developed for the stage but today is the most technically sophisticated. Once the incandescent electric lamp was introduced, it was possible to achieve almost total control of the color, intensity, and timing of lights. Lighting controls have also benefited from computerization, with extensive light shifts being controlled by an operator at a computerized console.
3. Lighting design is intended to provide illumination onstage, to establish time and place, to help set the mood and style of a production, to focus the action, and to establish a rhythm of visual movement.
4. Lighting should be consistent with all other elements.
5. The lighting designer uses a variety of instruments, colored gels, special accessories, and advanced dimmer controls as well as computerized control consoles to achieve effects. Electronic developments and computers have greatly increased the flexibility and control of lighting instruments and equipment.
6. Sound is taking its place alongside scenery, costumes, and lighting as a key design element.
7. Rapid advances in technology allow for sophisticated delivery in a theatre of both sound reproduction—sound effects and such—and sound reinforcement of both musical instruments and the human voice.
8. The sound designer and engineer must (a) prepare the soundtrack, (b) place microphones and speakers appropriately, and (c) mix recorded and live sounds during the performance to achieve the desired effects.

Design Elements: In Focus box (spotlight): ©Exactostock/SuperStock; Playing Your Part box (theatre seats): ©Ron Chapple/Getty Images

# Part Five

# The Theatre Today

**12 Theatre Today: Traditional, Musical, Nontraditional, and Political Theatre**

**13 Theatre Today: Diverse and Global**

## TODAY'S THEATRE: INCLUSIVE, DIVERSE, TRADITIONAL, AND EXPERIMENTAL

A landmark popular musical was *West Side Story*, based on Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet*, with direction and choreography by Jerome Robbins, music by Leonard Bernstein, and lyrics and book by Stephen Sondheim and Arthur Laurents. Shown here in a revival marking the show's fiftieth anniversary, and focusing on inclusive casting, is Karen Olivo, center, in the role of Anita. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

During the past 100 years, the world has seen unprecedented, earth-shattering changes. Discoveries and inventions have abounded, and, at the same time, war, civil unrest, unimaginable horrors, and natural disasters have marked our world.

On the positive side, we have experienced an astounding series of achievements in science, medicine, technology, communications, travel, and commerce. In medicine, for example, great strides have been made: cancer and other diseases have been cured and people enabled to live much longer. Also, in information technology worldwide communication has become instantaneous, as e-mail, smartphones, and social media, such as Facebook and Twitter, allow us to reach the other side of the world in a matter of seconds. Television has brought into our homes the triumphs and disasters of this fast-paced world, shown up-close and graphically, as they occur. Media streaming has allowed us to engage with all forms of electronic entertainments.

On the other side of the ledger, in the past 100 years we have experienced two world wars—in the second, among other things, the Nazi regime carried out the systematic and ruthless extermination of millions of people, including 6 million Jews. In the 1960s and 1970s, the Vietnam War brought a frightening number of casualties and images of horror to the American consciousness. Civil wars and genocide took place in several African countries. Terrorist attacks took place in New York City on September 11, 2001, and again in 2017; in Madrid in 2004; in London in 2005; in Boston in 2013; in Nice, France, in 2016; and in Barcelona in 2017. The costly and deadly wars in Iraq, Afghanistan, and Syria continued this pattern of despair and destruction.

In the midst of all this, the one thing missing from our instantaneous communication, from our digital media, from our social media, from the powerful images we see on television and film, is human contact—two groups of people in the presence of one another at the same time. In the performing arts, this contact consists of the performers and the audience. As the world seems to grow more impersonal and frightening, the need for human interaction becomes more important than ever. And at the forefront of contact between people is the theatre experience.

Cell phones (most with built-in digital cameras and Internet access), laptop computers, handheld electronic devices, and digital music players have become ubiquitous. (©Maridav/Shutterstock)

Today's world has seen unbelievable progress and heartbreaking tragedy. Symbolic of the latter are such things as the Arlington National Cemetery honoring those in the military who have fought and died for their country. (Source: US Army photo by Sgt. Jose Torres Jr.)

269

There are two things to be noted at the outset as we look at the state of the theatre today. The first is the astounding number of opportunities we have to attend live theatre. It is safe to say that at no time in the past have audiences in the United States, in Canada, and across the globe had as wide or varied a choice of theatrical offerings as they have today. To begin with, there is an amazing multiplicity of theatrical venues: large theatres, midsize resident professional theatres, small intimate theatres, college and university theatres, community theatres, theatres with all types of audiences and stage configurations. The various theatres house large spectacular productions, classics, new plays, performance art, ensemble creations, and avant-garde presentations.

The season of a resident professional theatre or a college and university theatre might include a classic from the past, an important

work from the early modern period (Ibsen, Chekhov, Strindberg), a play from the mid-twentieth century (García Lorca, O'Neill, Miller, Williams, Hansberry, Albee), contemporary plays from around the world, and premieres of works by young playwrights.

The second observation to be made in looking at the theatre today is the abundant variety of offerings: not only important classics from the past but every conceivable type of contemporary fare. Global theatre is theatre created throughout the world and because of today's ease of travel and communication can be originated and shared with audiences worldwide. There is also multicultural theatre, which in the United States includes theatre created by African American, Asian American, Hispanic, and Native American artists. Similarly, other countries across the globe have multicultural theatre artists. In addition there is feminist theatre, which deals with specific issues related to women, and theatre dealing with sexual orientation (the full range of LGBTQ offerings: gay theatre, lesbian theatre, and transgender theatre). While many of these types of theatre are political in nature, there is also a separate category of political theatre, which deals with various specific sociopolitical issues. On top of this, every conceivable variation of style and experimentation is available including audience immersion, innovative production techniques, and audience seating arrangements.

In the first chapter of Part Five we begin with the focus on four areas: First, traditional theatre today, which includes revivals of classics as well as modern landmark dramas; second, the American musical theatre; third, nontraditional theatre (also known as experimental or alternative theatre); and fourth, political theatre. In the final chapter we look at two types of theatre: diverse theatre (which includes multicultural, feminist, and LGBTQ theatres) and global theatre.

More and more the theatre of today encompasses subject matter and individuals that previously were ignored or prohibited. Controversial subjects, such as an intimate relationship between two women (illustrated here), have been addressed in contemporary theatre

including same-sex unions and other LGBTQ concerns. (©WayHome Studio/Shutterstock)

## MUSICAL THEATRE

During the twentieth century, American artists were important in developing musical theatre as a distinct art form, in terms of both music itself and its integration with dramatic structure. The “golden age” of book musicals was from the mid-1940s to the mid-1960s. Here we see Alfred Molina as Tevye in *Fiddler on the Roof*, a major American musical about a Jewish family

living in a Russian village facing eviction from their homeland. Opening originally in 1964, it had music by Jerry Bock and book and lyrics by Sheldon Harnick. This revival, directed by David Leveaux, opened on Broadway in 2004. (©Carol Rosegg)

271

# 12

# Theatre Today: Traditional, Musical, Nontraditional, and Political Theatre

## TRADITIONAL THEATRE

When we speak of traditional theatre we mean theatre in the tradition of Europe and America during the past 2,500 years. The patterns set and the forms established during this time span have influenced the creation of theatre to the present day and will continue to do so in the future. Beginning with the Greeks in 2500 bce and continuing through the Renaissance in western Europe, Elizabethan theatre in England, Renaissance theatre in France and Spain, late-nineteenth-century theatre in Europe and the twentieth century in the United States, the form and shape of our theatrical creations have been established and entered our mainstream. To this day, William Shakespeare remains the most frequently produced playwright in the United States. Shakespeare's episodic structure was copied by the Romantics in the early nineteenth century. The comic forms of the Greeks and Romans continue to impact our theatre today. The crisis structure devised by the classical Greeks influenced many of the early realistic playwrights. As a further testament to the continuing impact of that realistic tradition in drama, in 2017 a new play by Lucas Hnath, *A Doll's House, Part 2*, a sequel to Henrik Ibsen's drama of 1879, opened on Broadway.

272

## TRADITIONAL THEATRE IN THE UNITED STATES IN THE TWENTIETH CENTURY

Realistic, traditional theatre—following the European model of the late nineteenth century—continued to be strong in the United States with a number of outstanding playwrights emerging throughout the twentieth century. Many consider the finest American playwright of the century to be Eugene O'Neill. Shown here in a scene of confrontation from O'Neill's *The Iceman Cometh* are Brian Dennehy (left) and Nathan Lane in a production at the Brooklyn Academy of Music in 2015. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

When serious American playwrights began to emerge in the 1920s and 1930s, they followed the examples of recent European dramatists of the late nineteenth century: Henrik Ibsen of Norway, August Strindberg of Sweden, and Anton Chekhov of Russia. One of the earliest of these American dramatists, as well as possibly the most successful, was Eugene O'Neill. In the 1920s O'Neill began to write serious American dramas following the recent European examples. Later in the 1920s and early 1930s he wrote experimental, nontraditional plays, but he soon returned to the realistic, traditional mode with such powerful works as *The Iceman Cometh* (1946) and the heartbreaking *Long Day's Journey Into Night* (1956) about his own dysfunctional family.

During the 1930s, new playwrights such as Lillian Hellman and Clifford Odets (1906–1963) emerged. Hellman's play *The Little Foxes* (1939) was a chronicle of a wealthy southern family in which a ruthless, strong-minded female outmaneuvers the men around her including her

husband and two brothers. Odets wrote about working- class people during the Depression era in such works as *Awake and Sing* (1935) and *Golden Boy* (1935). In the mid-twentieth century a triumvirate of American playwrights appeared: Arthur Miller (1915–2005), Tennessee Williams (1911–1983), and Edward Albee (1928–2016). Miller, in strong, muscular language, chronicled middle-class struggles in such plays as *Death of a Salesman* (1949). Williams, in plays like *The Glass Menagerie* (1944), filled with poetic, lyrical imagery, wrote about southern families in conflict. Edward Albee, in such plays as *Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?* (1962), wrote about similar subjects but usually in trenchant dialogue, often with a bitter edge.

Two successful playwrights who came to the forefront in the 1970s and 1980s were Sam Shepard (1943–2017) and David Mamet (b. 1947). Shepard's plays, such as *Buried Child* (1979), dealt with American mythology, emphasizing the violence and degeneration of the American family. Mamet dealt with sharp-edged characters in confrontation in such plays as *Glengarry Glen Ross* (1983). A playwright of great importance later in the century was the African American dramatist August Wilson, who wrote a series of ten plays about the African American experience, one play for each decade of the twentieth century. Later, in the final chapter, we will focus on a number of African American and multicultural or minority playwrights as well as a number of women writers who continued to write in the traditional mode.

## IBSEN'S REALISTIC DRAMA

The Norwegian dramatist Henrik Ibsen was a pioneer in developing modern realistic drama. Along with playwrights such as August Strindberg and Anton Chekhov, he revolutionized the theatre of the late nineteenth century by dealing with taboo subject matter in a manner that mirrored everyday life. Much of the work of these playwrights was controversial and could not be produced in commercial theatres. Above is a scene from one of Ibsen's landmark plays, *An Enemy of the People*, in an updated version by Christopher Hampton at the Chichester Festival Theatre in England. Hugh Bonneville played Dr. Tomas Stockmann and William Gaminara was Peter Stockmann. (©Elliott Franks/eyevine/Redux)

Significant U.S. playwrights bridging the twentieth and twenty-first centuries included Horton Foote (1916–2009), John Guare (b. 1938), Lanford Wilson (1937–2001), Marsha Norman (b. 1947), Wendy Wasserstein (1950–2005), Donald Margulies (b. 1954), Jon Robin Baitz (b. 1961), David Auburn (b. 1969), David Lindsay-Abaire (b. 1971), and Joshua Harmon (b. 1983). In a similar fashion, there are playwrights across the globe who continue the tradition of realistic drama. A number of other contemporary figures, whose works have been influenced by the traditional Western dramatic forms, will be discussed later in sections on diverse and global theatres.

### A SIGNIFICANT AMERICAN PLAYWRIGHT: TENNESSEE WILLIAMS

Among the important American playwrights of the twentieth century were Arthur Miller, Tennessee Williams, Lillian Hellman, Edward Albee, Lorraine Hansberry, and August Wilson. Shown here is a scene from Tennessee Williams's play *Cat on a Hot Tin Roof* with actress Scarlett Johansson in the foreground and actor Benjamin Walker in a production at the Richard Rodgers Theatre. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

274

## THE AMERICAN MUSICAL

An indispensable component of today's traditional theatre, influenced by many earlier popular forms, is the *book musical*, a uniquely American contribution to the world of the theatre. We know that the ancient Greek theatre had a musical component, particularly in the part the chorus played, because we know that many of their passages were sung, and possibly danced as well. Much later, in the Elizabethan era in England, Shakespeare and his contemporaries often included songs in their works, particularly in comedies.

Later, in the sixteenth century, a new musical form, opera, emerged in Europe and came to full fruition two centuries later in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. Though it has similarities to drama, opera has always been more closely associated with music than with theatre. One reason is that operas are "sung-through," meaning that the music is continuous from start to finish. As further evidence of their orientation, operas are invariably identified with their composers, never with their librettists. It is always Mozart's *Don Giovanni*, not Da Ponte's, the man who wrote the libretto.

In the late nineteenth century, two Englishmen, W. S. Gilbert and Arthur Sullivan, created a series of comic operas, known as operettas. In the Gilbert and Sullivan pieces, the lyrics were as noteworthy as the music, sometimes more so, and in a step toward the modern musical the librettist, Gilbert, was always mentioned first. The Gilbert and Sullivan operettas were festive, clever, and witty with memorable light melodies and continue to be performed to this day throughout the English-speaking world.

In the United States, in the early part of the twentieth century, two types of musical entertainment were featured: vaudeville and the revue. Both were popular forms that featured skits and short blackouts alternating with musical numbers. In the 1920s, revues became increasingly sophisticated as popular composers such as Irving Berlin, Jerome Kern, and Richard Rodgers began composing songs for Broadway productions.

In 1927 a landmark musical, *Show Boat*, opened on Broadway based on a novel by Edna Ferber with music by Jerome Kern (1885–1945) and book and lyrics by Oscar Hammerstein II (1895–1960). It was an astonishing advance, both in content and in conception, over previous musicals. The story is about a boat with a theatre that sails up and down the Mississippi River, stopping at towns along the way to entertain the local residents. Such boats were a regular feature of river life in the early part of the twentieth century.

## OFF-BROADWAY, OFF-OFF-BROADWAY, AND REGIONAL THEATRE

In the second half of the twentieth century there were developments vital to the American theatre: off-Broadway, off-off-Broadway, and regional theatre. An outstanding playwright of the regional, off-off Broadway, and off-Broadway movements was Sam Shepard. Shown here is a scene from his play *Buried Child* starring actor Ed Harris. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

*Show Boat* tells a serious story, much more serious than any of its predecessors, that includes a mixed marriage between the white star of the show and a biracial singer. Accused of miscegenation, the couple is arrested and put in jail. The musical is also a depiction of the difficult life of African American stevedores working on the docks along the river. As for the music, it featured some of the most melodious and memorable songs ever written for a book musical.

Eight years after *Show Boat*, in 1935 another serious book musical appeared: *Porgy and Bess* with music by George Gershwin (1898–1937), lyrics by Gershwin's brother Ira (1896–1983), and a book by Dubose Hayward (1885–1940). Set in "Catfish Row," a black community in Charleston, South Carolina, *Porgy and Bess* deals with Porgy, a black man with disabilities who falls in love with Bess, a woman also claimed by a slick character named Crown. So forceful and complete is the musicalization of the story that *Porgy and Bess* has appeared on opera stages around the world as well as in theatres.

## OPERETTA: A FORERUNNER OF MUSICAL THEATRE

In the last quarter of the nineteenth century operetta, a form of light opera, became immensely popular in Great Britain. It was a predecessor to the American musical, which came to full maturity in the twentieth century and is the one theatrical genre originated solely by American talent. Shown here is a scene from Gilbert and Sullivan's operetta *The Pirates of Penzance* by W. S. Gilbert and Arthur Sullivan, featuring performers Victoria Joyce and Mark Wilde in a production at the London Coliseum. (©Nigel Norrington/Camera Press/Redux)

276

### *SHOW BOAT:* A LANDMARK MUSICAL

When *Show Boat* opened in 1927, it began a new chapter in the history of the American musical. The chorus line was eliminated, miscegenation (a romance between a white man and a black woman) was treated for the first time, and other problems facing African Americans were touched on. Also, it had a glorious score by Jerome Kern and Oscar Hammerstein. Shown here is a revival staged by Harold Prince. (©Anacleto Rapping/Los Angeles Times/Getty Images)

Completing the arrival of the serious book musical was the appearance in 1943 of *Oklahoma!* by Richard Rodgers (1902–1979) and Oscar Hammerstein II. Based on a play (*Green Grow the Lilacs)* by Lynn Riggs (1899–1994), *Oklahoma!*, like *Show Boat* and *Porgy and Bess*, was an integrated musical with story and songs woven inextricably together. In addition, it brought to the mix a fifteen-minute ballet choreographed by Agnes de Mille.

With the appearance of the three book musicals described above, the stage was set for an outpouring of first-rate American musicals in the years following World War II. For twenty years, from the appearance of *Oklahoma!* through the opening of *Fiddler on the Roof* in 1964, there was an outpouring of significant book musicals that remain classics to this day. Several writers who had been involved in musicals in previous decades did their best work during this period. These include Irving Berlin, with *Annie Get Your Gun* (1946), a musical

version of the life of Annie Oakley; and Cole Porter, with *Kiss Me, Kate* (1948), the story of a theatre company putting on a version of Shakespeare's *Taming of the Shrew*.

277

## THE POPULAR AMERICAN MUSICAL

*Hello, Dolly*!, with music and lyrics by Jerry Herman and book by Michael Stewart, is the quintessential popular American musical. Opening in 1964, it was not as serious as many midcentury musicals but nevertheless won ten Tony Awards and has been revived many times, most recently in 2017 starring Bette Midler as Dolly. Lighthearted and tuneful, it tells the story of a matchmaker who supposedly is looking for a wife for a wealthy widower but ends up with the man herself. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

In addition, a number of new composers, writers, and lyricists appeared on the scene and produced memorable musicals: Frank Loesser (1910–1969), who wrote the lyrics and music for *Guys and Dolls* (1950); Alan Jay Lerner (1918–1986) and Frederick Loewe (1904–1988), who wrote *My Fair Lady* (1956), a musical version of George Bernard Shaw's *Pygmalion;* and the composer Leonard Bernstein

(1918–1990) and the lyricist Stephen Sondheim (b. 1930), who, along with librettist Arthur Laurents, created *West Side Story* (1957), a modern version of *Romeo and Juliet*.

The so-called golden era of the American book musical continued through the opening in 1964 of *Fiddler on the Roof*. With music by Jerry Bock (1928–2010), lyrics by Sheldon Harnick (b. 1924), and book by Joseph Stein (1912–2010), *Fiddler* tells of a Jewish family whose father, in the year 1905, tries to uphold the traditions of the past in a small village in Russia where the community faces persecution and a pogrom. It was directed and choreographed by Jerome Robbins, who gave it an overall style and point of view that represented the best of the American musical.

278

## MUSICALS IN TRANSITION

After the impressive outpouring of original musicals in the years during and just after World War II, the musical entered a period of transition. Important new musicals continued to appear but often employing new forms: concept musicals, rock musicals, and "jukebox" musicals. An example of a musical that combines elements of a traditional musical and a concept musical was *A Little Night Music* with lyrics and music by Stephen Sondheim. Seen here is a scene from a Broadway revival starring Angela Lansbury (center). (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

One indication of changes in the musical was the opening in 1967 of *Hair*, a celebration of the informal, anti-establishment lifestyle of young people in the 1960s. *Hair*, with music by Galt MacDermot (b. 1928) and lyrics by Gerome Ragni (1942–1991) and Joseph Rado (b. 1932), had a less developed storyline and represented a radical departure from the

book musicals that had dominated the scene for the previous twenty-five years. In the 1970s and 1980s, fewer and fewer book musicals were written, though successful ones continued to appear.

In place of book musicals there were other approaches, one being the ***concept musical***, in which a production is built around an idea or a theme rather than a story. A pioneer in developing the concept musical was the composer-lyricist Stephen Sondheim. A frequent collaborator with Sondheim was the director Harold Prince (b. 1928). Two examples of Sondheim's concept musicals are *Follies* (1971) and *Assassins* (1990). The first paid tribute to the stars and music of a bygone era, and *Assassins* was an examination in songs and scenes of the motives and delusions of people who murdered American presidents. In addition to his concept musicals, Sondheim has also written more traditional musicals, such as *A Little Night Music* (1973) and *Sweeney Todd, the Demon Barber of Fleet Street* (1979).

**concept musical** A musical that is built around an idea or a theme rather than a story.

Occasionally a more serious work with elements of the established American musical also appeared to break fresh ground. Such a musical was *A Chorus Line*, which had no plot as such but presents a group of aspiring dancers telling their personal stories about auditioning for a Broadway show. *A Chorus Line*, directed by Michael Bennett (1943–1987), opened in 1975 and ran until 1990. *A Chorus Line* symbolized the ascendancy of dancers and choreographers in the musical world. Beginning with Jerome Robbins, who directed and choreographed *Fiddler on the Roof*, the "vision" of musicals was furnished more and more by choreographers who had become directors rather than by playwrights or directors. In addition to Robbins and Bennett, these included Bob Fosse, who directed *Sweet Charity* (1966) and *Pippin* (1972); Tommy Tune (b. 1939), a performer and choreographer who won nine Tony Awards; as well as Susan Stroman (b. 1954) and Kathleen Marshall (b. 1962).

## AMERICAN MUSICALS IN THE TWENTY-FIRST CENTURY

In the first two decades of the twenty-first century the American musical scene was a cross section of musicals: old and new, classic and experimental, serious and comic, aimed at the mature audience as well as the very young. An important musical of the period was *Hamilton* which opened in 2015. The production, created by Lin-Manuel Miranda, successfully combined a number of elements, including history (the story of Alexander Hamilton, a Founding Father, but with anachronistic elements); rap music; eighteenth-century costumes; modern choreography; and nontraditional casting. Seen here is Miranda in the Broadway production, playing the lead role in front of the ensemble. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

Still another trend of the 1970s and 1980s was the emergence of British composers and lyricists in the creation of musicals. The composer Andrew Lloyd Webber (b. 1948) and the lyricist Tim Rice (b. 1944) wrote *Jesus Christ Superstar* (1971) and *Evita* (1979), the story of Eva Perón of Argentina. Webber also wrote the music for *Cats* (1982), *The Phantom of the Opera* (1987), *Sunset Boulevard* (1993), and *School of Rock* (2015). Two other large-scale British musicals of the period were *Les Misérables* (1986), originally conceived in France, and *Miss Saigon* (1989). In 2008 *Billy Elliot* and in 2013 *Matilda* arrived from Britain.

The tradition of the book musical was reinvigorated in the early twenty-first century with the appearance of two musicals: *The Book of*

*Mormon*, which opened in 2011, and *Hamilton*, premiering in 2015. *Mormon*, by Trey Parker (b. 1969), Robert Lopez (b. 1975), and Matt Stone (b. 1971), is the story of two Mormon missionaries who go to Uganda in Africa and their many adventures and misadventures there. The music of the piece was greatly influenced by pop and rock music.

*Hamilton*, which opened in 2015, was written by Lin-Manuel Miranda (b. 1980), much of whose music and lyrics were influenced by rap music. Set at the time of the American Revolution and the beginning of the United States, *Hamilton* centers around Alexander Hamilton, the first Treasury secretary, as well as other figures including George Washington, Thomas Jefferson, and Aaron Burr, who killed Hamilton in a duel. The characters wear elaborate Revolutionary-style outfits, although the sung-through rap music is decidedly contemporary.

280

## IN FOCUS: THE APPEAL OF MUSICAL THEATRE

We have pointed out that the book musical is a unique American invention and accomplishment. What is it about this type of dramatic offering that has proved so enduring and appealing?

First of all, it is a combination of various elements. Musicals tend to be based on appealing, timeless stories, which have a fascination of their own. One reason for this is that often the book of a musical is based on a novel or a straight play that has proved to have an exciting, suspenseful narrative. Often there is a heroine or hero who faces severe obstacles that must be overcome. Whether it is the cockney flower girl in *My Fair Lady*, the suffering Jewish father in *Fiddler on the Roof*, the put-upon heroine of *Kiss Me, Kate*, or the mother fighting desperately for her children in *Gypsy*, the chief character faces formidable challenges over which to prevail.

Notice, too, that the backgrounds of these stories vary quite widely, ranging from a pogrom in a small Jewish village over a century ago, to a western state like Oklahoma, to the South Pacific. Also, as part of the narrative there are usually exceptional roles for star performers: the irresistible con man in *The Music Man*, the appealing rake in *Guys and Dolls*, the lonely, elderly bachelor in *Most Happy Fella*, or the indestructible matchmaker in *Hello, Dolly!* Each of these is a role that attracts star performers.

Along with the story and the appealing characters, the book musical features outstanding musical scores. The melodies are appealing, original, and often irresistible and the lyrics are inventive, clever, and poetic. Add to this dance. From ballet to vigorous tap to everything in between, dance early on became an indispensable component of musicals. Finally, it is the blend, the cohesion of these elements when a strong, inventive director pulls all these elements together into a unified whole, that results in the finished, satisfying musical.

In addition to the continuation of the book musical, the musical theatre from 1990 to the present saw five trends develop. There was, for example, an unprecedented number of major revivals of past musical successes. One reason for the increase in revivals has been the rising cost of producing musicals that has led producers to present tried and true musical classics that are considered safe investments.

A second trend has been the periodic appearance of fresh, offbeat musicals, indicating that the genre remains full of vitality. For example, *Rent* (1996), about a group of anti-establishment young people, won numerous awards, including the Pulitzer Prize and the Tony Award for best musical of the year. Another example is *Avenue Q* (2003), a lively, iconoclastic musical featuring puppets operated by onstage characters.

A third trend has been musicals based on films. This list would include *The Producers, Monty Python's Spamalot, Hairspray, Young Frankenstein, Billy Elliott, Once, Kinky Boots*, and musicals presented by the Disney organization, such as *The Lion King, Mary Poppins, Aladdin*, and *Frozen*. The fourth trend is the creation of productions out of the music of former popular stars and groups, sometimes referred to as "jukebox" musicals. The most successful of these was *Mamma Mia!* —a story taking place in the Greek islands and based on the music of the group ABBA.

The fifth trend in the inclusion of new American musicals is a focus on LGBTQ characters and issues. In the latter part of the twentieth century and the early years



of the twenty-first, a number of musicals (as well as a number of plays) have focused on the concerns of lesbians, gays, bisexuals, and transgender populations, including *La Cage aux Folles* (1983) and *Kinky Boots* (2012). *Fun Home*, which opened on Broadway in 2015 and which was given five Tony Awards, describes the coming of age of a lesbian protagonist and her relationship to her closeted gay father.

Based on the autobiographical graphic novel by writer-artist Alison Bechdel (b. 1960), it had a book by Lisa Kron (b. 1961) and music by Jeanine Tesori (b. 1961).

If the musical scene is a bit more complex than in previous periods, producing fewer musicals that might become classics, it remains nevertheless a vibrant, inventive, entertaining segment of the theatre landscape.

## NONTRADITIONAL (EXPERIMENTAL OR ALTERNATIVE) THEATRE

In the twenty-first century, as we have seen, traditional theatre remains vital and vigorous in America and across the globe. At the same time, during the twentieth century and into the twenty-first century a development that is often labeled nontraditional or alternative theatre took root and flourished. The movement also goes by other names such as avant-garde and experimental. Among other things, it offers an alternative to traditional theatre techniques and forms, as well as affording a different type of experience for theatre audiences. Nontraditional theatre is of two types: one type in terms of *content*, that is, subject matter as well as the approach to that subject matter; the other in terms of the *form of staging* or the way theatre is presented. Content is usually the work of the dramatist and staging originates with the vision of the director.

Looking at the work of the playwright, recall that in the chapter on genres we discussed the work of Samuel Beckett and Eugene Ionesco. Their plays, in which the actions and speech of their characters did not conform to traditional practice, fell under the heading of Theatre of the Absurd. Dialogue might come out in a series of non sequiturs or there might be no plot line in a traditional sense. Absurdism as an approach to theatre followed in the wake of a number of other avant-garde literary and theatrical movements that had emerged early in the twentieth century and went by such names as existentialism, futurism, surrealism, and Dadaism. In all of these movements long-standing practices in art, literature, and theatre were challenged or overthrown.

In the 1930s a dramatist and theatre critic Antonin Artaud boldly proclaimed that there should be “no more masterpieces,” meaning that texts like the plays of Shakespeare should no longer be revered but rather treated as works that could be updated, restructured, or transformed in any way that might make them more relevant to a contemporary audience. Following World War II this movement became

more widespread. In the spirit of Artaud, a central element shared by all the new experimental and avant-garde approaches to theatre was a rejection of what was called “text-based” theatre, meaning theatre based on a script written by a playwright.

In the theatre there had been antecedents to Artaud’s theories and to other theorists of the midcentury. The Russian auteur director Vselovod Meyerhold, whom we discussed in the chapter titled “The Director and the Producer,” often ignored the script altogether or used it only as a starting point. He wanted to produce spectacles and visual events in which the actors were often acrobats, or moved like automatons. He used elaborate stage machinery and other scenic elements to achieve results that reflected *his* vision, not that of a playwright.

282

## THE MODERN THEATRE EMERGES

Between 1875 and the 1950s what is known as the modern theatre came to full flower, with both realism and departures from realism. A work that has become a contemporary classic in the latter category is *Waiting for Godot*, written by Samuel Beckett. Absurdist playwrights focused on the ridiculous aspects of twentieth-century life and used absurd language, characters, and situations to dramatize their point of view. Shown here are Patrick Stewart as Vladimir and Ian McKellan

as Estragon in a 2009 London production that came to Broadway in 2013 and was directed by Sean Mathias. (©Bruce Glikas/FilmMagic/Getty Images)

Following his lead, other directors in the twentieth century developed approaches and departures in theatre productions that reflected the viewpoint of the director, not of a writer. In the chapter that discusses directors and producers, we mentioned such directorial innovators as the Polish director Jerzy Grotowski (1933–1999) and the American directors Richard Foreman and Robert Wilson. In addition, at times productions were created by a group of performers, or actors working with musicians, artists, dancers, or videographers. Instead of beginning with dialogue and a plot created by a dramatist, the new approach originated in a number of other ways: an ensemble of actors improvised material; a group of actors joined with dancers, or perhaps incorporated film or video into their presentations; a performance artist developed a one-person show; an auteur director created a piece according to his or her personal vision.

In the process, entirely new material might be utilized; or, perhaps, a classical play would be turned upside down or inside out. Frequently, too, performances took place not in a conventional theatre setting, but in an unusual or site-specific locale. One rationale for this approach is that it reflected the confused, chaotic, often irrational world in which we now live. Among the key developments that took hold in the post–World War II era were happenings, multimedia theatre, and environmental theatre, all of which were influenced by these earlier avant-garde theatre artists.

## Happenings

***Happenings*** were raw, thoughtfully crafted theatrical events first created by painters and sculptors in the late 1950s and early 1960s. With little or no theatre training, these visual artists were part of the postmodern movement when artists explored other art forms beyond their own specific practices. Unlike the misleading title, happenings were not spontaneous or happenstance. They were intentional, organized acts that explored time and space. Performances consisted of prepared activities and tasks that were choreographed and blocked. Groups of performers engaged in pedestrian (everyday) movement or stylistic gestures with *found* objects or props and performed in a sculptural set. Nonsensical sounds and spoken text were used without feeling or emotion.

**happenings** Nonliterary theatrical events, developed in the 1960s, in which the script is replaced with a scenario that provides for chance occurrences, and are performed (often only once) in such places as parks and street corners.

Given circumstances that might identify time and place were removed and the senses of sight, sound, and often, scent were evoked. There was no applause or curtain call and audiences usually consisted of forty to fifty spectators invited to the space through mailed invitations, advertising, or word of mouth. Productions were often limited to a few performances. The first happenings were performed in parks, art galleries, studio lofts, museums, storefronts, parking lots and other unique spaces.



Happenings were supposed to be an extension of everyday life, eliminating the boundary of the fourth wall between performers and audience. When a performance ended, the audience often waited in the space until a performer signaled or a brave audience member initiated an exit.

## Multimedia Theatre

***Multimedia theatre*** is a joining of theatre with other arts—particularly film, video, television, and digital media. In work of this sort, live performers interact with sequences on film, television, video, or other digital media. The idea is to fuse the art forms or to incorporate new technology into a theatrical event. A current form that combines theatre, dance, and media is called performance art that will be discussed later in the chapter.

**multimedia theatre** Use of electronic media, such as slides, film, and videotape, in live theatrical presentations.

## Environmental Theatre

The term ***environmental theatre*** was coined in the 1960s by the American director and teacher Richard Schechner (b. 1934); many characteristics of environmental theatre, however, had developed out of the work and theories of earlier avant-garde artists such as Meyerhold and Artaud. Proponents of environmental theatre treat the entire theatre space as a performance area, suggesting that any division between performers and viewers is artificial. For every production, spatial arrangements are transformed.

**environmental theatre** A type of theatre, made popular in the 1960s, that attempts to eliminate the distinction between audience and acting space and that emphasizes a multiple focus for the audience rather than a single focus.

The major influence on Schechner's theories was the Polish director Jerzy Grotowski. Works staged by Grotowski with the Polish Laboratory Theatre, originated in Wroclaw, Poland, from its founding in 1959 until 1970, had many characteristics of environmental theatre. For each production, the theatre space and the performer–audience relationship were arranged to conform to the play being presented. Grotowski called his theatre *poor theatre*, meaning poor in scenery and special effects. It relied on the performers for its impact.

Two experimental directors are Robert Wilson (b. 1944) and Richard Foreman (b. 1937). Their work is typically unified by a theme or point of view determined by the director, and their material is often organized into units analogous to frames in television or film. Stunning theatrical images containing the essence of the ideas that interest these directors are often the key to their work.

Important off-off-Broadway theatres in which avant-garde works found a home included Café LaMama, the Living Theater, the Open Theater, the Performance Group, Mabou Mines, and the Wooster Group. These theatres in New York City had counterparts all across the United States. All have experimented with physical performance techniques, improvisation, texts created by performers and directors, and environmental presentations.

Whatever the process, the result was not traditional theatre. Like their counterparts in painting, nonrepresentational theatre artists deal in images, impressions, fragments, and segments. There may be strong elements of improvisation, free association, and audience participation. Each presentation is an event, a time-based event, and it is up to the spectator to integrate its elements in some way, to determine its meaning and its impact. Another way of saying this is that viewing such theatre becomes a different kind of experience from the experience audiences are accustomed to in traditional theatre.

### AVANT-GARDE AND EXPERIMENTAL THEATRE

Aside from large professional theatres, there are many smaller theatres, in cities across the United States, such as off-off-Broadway in New York. Some of these are theatres that reflect our diverse populations. Alternative theatre also includes avant-garde and experimental theatre groups and productions. One of the foremost avant-garde directors of the past quarter century is Richard Foreman. A notable production of his—a sort of retrospective of previous work—is his *Old-Fashioned Prostitutes* (*A True Romance*) shown here with Rocco Sisto (right) and Alenka Kraigher (left) at the Public Theater in New York City. (©Karli Cadel/The New York Times/Redux)

## Postmodernism

One term used to describe the nontraditional theatre we have been discussing, and much that followed, is ***postmodernism***. According to the film critic A. O. Scott, postmodernism has several attributes: "a cool, ironic effect; the overt pastiche of work from the past; the insouciant mixture of high and low styles." Although postmodernism is difficult to define specifically, it has certain distinctive characteristics.

**postmodernism** A contemporary concept suggesting that artists and audiences have gone beyond the modernist movements of realism and departures from realism and such categories as "high art" and "popular art."

For one thing, postmodernism reflects issues of power in art. Postmodernists question the idea of an accepted “canon” of classics; they also ask why certain artists (such as playwrights) and certain groups (such as white males) should have held positions of power or “privilege” throughout theatre history. Accordingly, postmodernists rebel against traditional readings of texts, arguing that theatre productions may have a variety of “authors,” including directors and even individual audience members: they argue that each audience member creates his or her own unique reading. Postmodernist directors are noted for “deconstructing” classic dramas and trying to represent onstage the issues of power embedded in the text. When a classic is deconstructed in this way, it may serve simply as the scenario for a production.

285

## A POSTMODERN PRODUCTION

As a mark of postmodernism, theatre today is eclectic and widely diversified. Periods, styles, and theatrical intentions are often mixed or coexist side by side. One such mixture of styles and material was a staging of *Hamlet* by the Wooster Group, known for its experimental work. This Shakespearean tragedy was deconstructed by using the film of the 1964 stage production starring Richard Burton as its basis. Elizabeth LeCompte directed. (©Robbie Jack/Corbis Entertainment/Getty Images)

One of the most famous groups known for deconstuction of texts is the Wooster Group, under the artistic direction of Elizabeth LeCompte (b. 1944). In 1997, the Wooster Group presented a highly theatricalized and physical version of Eugene O'Neill's *The Emperor Jones* in a run-down theatre in the Times Square area in New York City. In 2007, it presented a version of *Hamlet* that featured various filmed scenes of *Hamlet* interspersed with live action. Postmodernists mix abstraction and realism, so that their works cannot be easily classified. Furthermore, the distinction between "high" art and popular art can no longer be clearly defined: postmodernists mix popular concerns and techniques with those of high art.

An intriguing example is the musical *The Lion King* (1997), based on a popular Disney animated film with music by the rock composer Elton John. The director of



*The Lion King*, as well as the designer of the masks and puppets, is Julie Taymor who is a designer, director, and adapter of literature for the stage and is known for her avant-garde use of puppet techniques borrowed from Asian theatres. Many elements of *The Lion King* are based on her previous work. For example, she used puppets in staging Shakespeare's *The Tempest* (1986) at New York's Theatre for a New Audience; in her frequently revived adaptation of a short story, *Juan Darien* (1988); in a production of Igor Stravinsky's opera *Oedipus Rex* in Tokyo (1992); and in a production of *The Green Bird* (1996), an eighteenth-century comedy by Carlo Gozzi. Taymor also directed a Broadway revival of David Henry Hwang's *M. Butterfly* in 2017 in which she employed some of her visual postmodern techniques.

## Performance Art

In the past three decades, a number of artists have experimented with forms that force audiences to confront certain issues: What is performance? What is theatre? What is the subject of theatrical representation? Some of these artists are also political-minded; some are not. ***Performance art*** is often the name given to recent forms that pose these questions and as well as others.

> **performance art** Experimental theatre that initially incorporated elements of dance and visual arts into performance. Since performance art often is based on the vision of an individual performer or director rather than playwright, the autobiographical monologue and solo performance have become popular performance art forms.

Performance art has important antecedents: earlier avant-garde experiments of the twentieth century, such as dada, surrealism, and happenings, which stressed the irrational and attacked traditional artistic values and forms; the theories of Antonin Artaud and Jerzy Grotowski; and popular forms, such as clowning, vaudeville, and stand-up comedy.

During the past three decades, the term “performance art” has referred to differing types of theatrical presentations. In its earliest manifestations, performance art was related on one hand to painting and on the other hand to dance. In the 1970s, one branch of performance art emphasized the body as an art object: Some artists suffered self-inflicted pain, and some went through daily routines (such as preparing a meal) in a museum or in a theatre setting. Another branch focused on site-specific or environmental pieces in which the setting or context was crucial: Performances were created for specific locations such as a subway station, a city park, or a waterfront pier.

In some of the earliest forms of performance art, story, character, and text were minimized or even eliminated. The emphasis was not on narrating a story or exploring recognizable characters but rather on the visual and ritualistic aspects of performing. This type of theatre was often the work of an individual artist who incorporated highly personal messages, and sometimes political and social messages, in the event. The overall effect was often like a continually transforming collage. As might be expected, there was, as mentioned earlier, an affinity between this kind of theatre—with its emphasis of the visual picture formed onstage—and painting. Often, stage movement in performance art was also closely related to dance, as in the work of Martha Clarke (b. 1944).

In more recent years the term “performance art” changed yet again. It is now also associated with individual artists who present autobiographical extended monologues or present one-person shows in which they portray various characters through interconnected monologues. There are also some performance artists who stage presentations that feature clowning and other popular slapstick techniques borrowed from the circus and other popular arts.

Several such artists—Karen Finley (b. 1956) is one of the most visible—became a center of controversy. These artists often support such causes as feminism and equality



for the LGBTQ communities. Often nudity and other controversial representations of sexuality or sexual orientation are used to ask audiences to reflect on their biases. Such was the case in *Alice’s Rape* (1989), in which Robbie McCauley performed nude as her great-great-

grandmother, a slave on the auction block. These performance artists are continuing a trend begun by early realistic and antirealistic dramatists, whose works challenged the social status quo and were often banned.

Two artists who began performing solo pieces in alternative spaces but later received commercial productions are Spalding Gray (1941–2004) and Bill Irwin (b. 1956). Gray, a monologist who discussed issues that ranged from his own personal concerns to politics, was reminiscent of ancient storytellers who created a theatrical environment single-handedly. Irwin's performances are mimelike, and he uses popular slapstick techniques to reflect on the contemporary human condition.

Anna Deavere Smith (b. 1952), an African American performance artist, won considerable acclaim in the early 1990s for pieces dealing with racial unrest. In her works, she portrays numerous real people she has met and interviewed. For example, her *Twilight: Los Angeles 1992* presented people affected by the uprising that followed the acquittals in the first trial of police officers charged with brutalizing Rodney King.

Other well-known monologists are Eric Bogosian (b. 1953); Danny Hoch (b. 1970); John Leguizamo (b. 1965), who focuses on Latino American issues; Mike Daisey (b. 1973); Lisa Kron (b. 1961); and Sarah Jones (b. 1973). Ping Chong (b. 1946) is an Asian American performance artist who mixes multimedia into his works.

A number of spaces have become recognized for their presentation of performance artists. These include two in New York City: PS 122, a converted public school in the East Village in Manhattan; and the Kitchen, also located downtown. In addition, many museums throughout the United States are known for presenting series of performance artists, including the Walker Museum in Minneapolis and the Museum of Contemporary Art in Chicago. The fact that performance art is most often presented in converted, found spaces or museums, again reflects the eclectic nature of the form and its relationship to earlier avant-garde movements and the visual arts.

Along with those in the United States, there are also significant performance artists in most major cities around the world, such as Issei Ogata (b. 1952) in Japan.

## POLITICAL THEATRE

Another type of theatre that could be considered nontraditional, in terms of subject matter, is political theatre, which concerns itself not with primarily exploring the aesthetics or artistic side of theatre but with political ideas, causes, and individuals. Even those political playwrights

who explore differing aesthetic approaches do so in order to reinforce their political points of view.

Political theatre can run the gamut from dramas that take a strongly partisan point of view to those with a more even-handed probing of ideas and causes. It can attack a target, espouse a cause, or engage in satire to expose what the dramatist considers a wrongheaded regime or a wrongheaded approach to a problem. Many dramatists of the past, such as George Bernard Shaw and Bertolt Brecht, have incorporated a clear political agenda into their work.

288

## IN FOCUS: THE PEOPLE WHO CREATE THEATRE

Throughout this book we have explained how live theatre is created, how it is made available to audiences by writers, performers, directors, designers and those behind the scenes. Whether it is a lavish Broadway production, a university or college production, a resident theatre presentation, a Shakespeare festival, or one of the nearly 2,000 amateur or semiprofessional annual productions across the United States, each event involves an entire cadre of individuals, seen and unseen, who make it possible. Because live theatre is a new event each and every time there is a performance, the requirement for people both onstage and behind the scenes is constant.

Among those who work behind the scenes but are also indispensable are the people engaged in management, working in the box office, and those responsible for such things as publicity and sales.

The people who participate, whether seen or unseen, may be professionals: those who have trained in university theatre departments or at theatre schools such as Juilliard in New York City, or they may be semiprofessionals or volunteers who have had training or who merely acquired expertise through experience. Regardless of their background, those working in theatre are indispensible before and during each and every live performance. When attending a theatre event it is easy to forget what it takes in manpower and preparation to make possible the production an audience is viewing.

In the United States, there was a marked increase in political drama during the period of the Vietnam War, with such plays as Megan Terry's *Viet Rock*, Barbara Garson's *MacBird*, and the musical *Hair*. In the 1970s, the militant black power movement also created a number of plays that had a strong political purpose. In recent years, there have been theatre artists who have created works dealing with the issues of the Iraq and Afghanistan wars, Middle East tensions, and mass incarceration. There are examples of political theatre across the globe.

In a reaction against the administration of George W. Bush and many of its policies, there was an outpouring of essentially political plays. To indicate the type and range of political plays presented during the Bush years, we will mention three pieces. The first was *Baghdad Burning: Girl Blog from Iraq* (2005), about everyday life in Iraq during the war; it was based on the blog of a girl living there, and actors read entries telling of both routine and horrific incidents leading to the girl's disappointment. Another was *The Treatment* (2006), Eve Ensler's dramatization of posttraumatic stress disorder as revealed in scenes between a male American war veteran and a female military psychologist. A third play was *My Trip to Al Qaeda* (2007), written by Lawrence Wright (b. 1947) based on a book by Wright, *The Looming Tower: Al Qaeda and the Road to 9/11*. There have also been recent dramas and theatre productions critical of the administration of President Donald Trump, including a controversial staging of Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar* at New York's Public Theater.

Other political plays do not deal directly with a particular party or administration, but nevertheless have a strong political component. *Nine Parts of Desire* by Heather Raffo is a powerful portrait of a cross section of Iraqi women: their problems, their plight, and their distant hopes. Another political play is *Exonerated* by Jessica Blank and Erik Jensen, which includes actual transcripts of trials and other testimony of people who had been sentenced to death but were later proved to be innocent.



Many of the plays we have discussed in the previous sections of this chapter qualify as political plays. In addition, many of the plays we will discuss when we review our diverse and global theatres in the next chapter also have a political point of view no matter what aesthetic approach the artists take. These plays speak up for the rights and for the recognition of a particular underrepresented or oppressed group. As we shall see, this is true of African American, Latino/a American, Asian American, Native American, feminist, and LGBTQ theatres and artists. It is also true of theatre created for and by underrepresented groups in nations across the world.

In this chapter we have looked at traditional theatre of various kinds: continuing the theatre established in the West, the American musical, and nontraditional and experimental forms, including political theatre. In the following chapter we will further explore our diverse and global contemporary theatre.

## SUMMARY

1. Traditional theatre is the theatre inherited from the European and British traditions: the Greeks, the Renaissance theatre in Europe, and the nineteenth-century playwrights in Norway, Sweden, and Russia that continued in the United States through the twentieth century and into the twenty-first century.
2. The musical form known as musical theatre or musical comedy was created by American composers, lyricists, and librettists. It took its place among the various categories of dramatic forms as the first type of theatre developed entirely by American writers and musicians.
3. Beginning in the early twentieth century in Europe and America a series of nontraditional approaches to theatre appeared that continued into the twenty-first century.
4. Nontraditional theatre emerged in two areas: one was from the viewpoint of the playwright and the other from the viewpoint of the director. In both cases the approach challenged traditional forms, often delivered in an illogical, circular, or absurd manner.
5. The various forms of nontraditional theatre appeared under such titles as environmental, happenings, performance art, and multimedia.
6. Many of the nontraditional forms of theatre are sometimes classified as postmodern.
7. Political theatre is another type of theatre that could be considered nontraditional. Political theatre concerns itself not with the aesthetics or artistic side of theatre but with political ideas, causes, and individuals.

**Design Elements:** In Focus box (spotlight): ©Exactostock/SuperStock

**SARAH RUHL'S *THE CLEAN HOUSE***

Shown here, on this split-level set, is a scene from *The Clean House* by Sarah Ruhl. In the play, a Brazilian maid Matilde (Vanessa Aspillaga), seen here on the floor on the lower level talking to her employer (Blair Brown), makes it clear that she does not want to be a maid but a comedienne. Much of the humor in the play comes from her over-the-top antics. *In The*

*Clean House* Ruhl also deals with women's concerns, again employing inventive dramatic scenes and provocative humor. The play was presented by the Lincoln Center Theatre in 2006, directed by Bill Rauch. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)



13

# Theatre Today: Diverse and Global

In the previous chapter we looked at various forms of traditional theatre. We then examined a truly American form of traditional theatre: the musical. Next, at the close of the chapter, we reviewed nontraditional and experimental forms of contemporary theatre and concluded with a look at political theatre.

In this chapter, we will explore two other major strands in our contemporary theatre. First, we will review diverse populations that have been historically underrepresented in the theatre in the United States. (We should note that underrepresentation of specific populations has also been true in theatres across the globe.) We will review theatre created by women, LGBTQ populations, African Americans, Latino/a Americans, Asian Americans, and Native Americans. (Of course, there are many other theatres created by diverse groups in U.S. society.) We will then turn our attention to the globalization of the contemporary theatre. We will see that there is extensive theatre across the globe and that there are theatre productions and artists who are truly multinational.

## FEMINIST THEATRE AND WOMEN PLAYWRIGHTS

Feminist theatre, as we know it, is a significant movement that began in the socially active atmosphere of the late 1960s and early 1970s. It developed alongside the more general feminist movement, which stressed consciousness-raising to make people aware of the subordinate position women had often been forced to occupy in social, corporate and political structures. Activists in this period attempted to revise cultural value systems and interpersonal relations in terms of an egalitarian ideology. In theatre, this took the form of theatre groups like the It's Alright to Be a Woman Theatre in New York, one of the first groups to translate consciousness-raising into stage performances.

292

Feminist theatre developed in multiple directions. For one thing, there was an attempt to make women writers of the past more widely acknowledged and recognized. Thus historical figures like Hrosvitha, a

nun who wrote plays in her convent at Gandersheim in Germany in the tenth century, and the English playwrights Aphra Behn (1640–1689) and Susanna Centlivre (c. 1670–1723) were brought to the forefront. In addition, attention was paid to several women playwrights who had made their mark in the early and middle twentieth century. One significant forerunner, for example, was the American playwright Rachel Crothers (1878–1958), who wrote and directed many successful plays from 1906 to 1937. All of Crothers's plays dealt with women's moral and social concerns, and most of them were set in urban high society. Crothers's plays are skillful, entertaining comedies, but she always focused on the issue of sexual equality. Other notable women playwrights earlier in the twentieth century were Susan Glaspell (1876–1948), Sophie Treadwell (1890–1970), and Lillian Hellman (1905–1984). A signal event—some would say a transformative event—occurred in 1959 when Lorraine Hansberry's play *A Raisin in the Sun* opened on Broadway, the first play written by a black female dramatist to achieve such wide acclaim. Its success became a milestone and we will discuss Hansberry's achievements more extensively later in this chapter.

The other direction for feminist theatre was the very active writing and production that emerged in the late 1960s when many female playwrights questioned traditional gender roles and the place of women in American society. In the 1970s and 1980s, in response to the women's movement, which spurred women's playwriting and women's theatre companies, there were a number of critically and commercially successful female American playwrights. Representative works include *Fefu and Her Friends* (1977) by Maria Irene Fornés, which offered insight into female friendship and the struggles women experience in a patriarchal culture; *Still Life* (1981) by Emily Mann (b. 1952); *Painting Churches* (1983) by Tina Howe (b. 1937); and three plays that won the Susan Smith Blackburn Prize, and later the Pulitzer Prize for Drama: *'Night, Mother* (1983) by Marsha Norman, *Crimes of the Heart* (1977) by Beth Henley (b. 1952), and *The Heidi Chronicles* (1988) by Wendy Wasserstein.

Although the women's movement slowed during the 1980s, women continued to write plays in increasing numbers. The playwrights who had broken new ground in the 1970s continued to write dramas, and now they were joined by other women's voices. *How I Learned to Drive* (1998) by Paula Vogel (b. 1951), about a girl's coming-of-age; and *Wit* (1998) by Margaret Edson (b. 1962), about a college professor who wrestles with a fatal illness, are examples of women's ongoing exploration of new subjects and new forms. Both plays won the Pulitzer Prize.

There are many contemporary U.S. female playwrights. Later in this chapter, we will mention four significant African American female playwrights: Suzan-Lori Parks (b. 1964), Pearl Cleage (b. 1948), Kia Corthron (b. 1961), and Lynn Nottage (b. 1964). We will also note that there are feminist Latina American, Asian American, and Native American playwrights. Among other current female playwrights whose works deal with feminist and broader social issues are Sarah Ruhl (b. 1974), Theresa Rebeck (b. 1958), Rebecca Gilman (b. 1965), Carson Kreitzer, and Amy Herzog (b. 1979). Sarah Ruhl was awarded the Susan Smith Blackburn Prize in 2004, an award given annually to a woman who writes for the English-language theatre, and was the recipient of a MacArthur "genius" grant. Ruhl's play *The Clean House*, a Pulitzer Prize finalist, concerns a Brazilian maid who turns out to be a comedian and who refuses to clean the messy house of her disorganized employers. A play by Ruhl on Broadway in 2009 was *The Next Room*. Among recent works by Herzog are *After the Revolution*, *4000 Miles*, and *Belleville*.

293

## CONTEMPORARY WOMEN PLAYWRIGHTS

An important development in recent years has been the emergence of women playwrights after many years of male domination among American dramatists. Today women playwrights are coming to the forefront in impressive numbers,

and among them is Amy Herzog. In her play *Belleville* a young couple have abandoned the stability of their life in the United States for a life in bohemian Paris where their marriage unravels, at the same time that many lessons are learned. Playing the couple in this scene at the New York Theatre Workshop are Maria Dizzia and Greg Keller (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

Theresa Rebeck, a successful writer for television, in her play *The Scene* wrote a sharp, pointed satire about today's television industry. Her play *The Water's Edge* transplanted the Greek story of Agamemnon, the returning warrior, to modern times and developed a seriocomic drama that mixes a tragic situation with amusing observations. Rebeck is also the author of *Seminar*.

Carson Kreitzer has written several plays about women who are driven to kill. One of these plays—*Self-Defense*, *or death of some salesmen*—was the story of Aileen Wuornos, a prostitute in Florida who became a serial killer. Kreitzer's *The Love Song of J. Robert Oppenheimer* concerns the soft-spoken man responsible for developing the atomic bomb.

As noted, there are many feminist theatre organizations. Some scholars estimate that more than 100 such companies have been founded in the United States; these companies include At the Foot of the Mountain, Women's Experimental Theatre, and Omaha Magic Theatre, founded by the playwright Megan Terry. One company, Split Britches, was started in 1981 by Lois Weaver, Peggy Shaw, and Deborah Margolin as an offshoot of Spiderwoman Theatre. Split Britches became well known for its production of *Belle Reprieve* (1991), which made satiric references to Tennessee Williams's *A Streetcar Named Desire* and was created collaboratively with an English gay company, Bloolips.

294

## POLITICAL THEATRE: A FEMINIST PERSPECTIVE

A well-known contemporary playwright is Sarah Ruhl. In her play *In the Next Room (*or *The Vibrator Play*), she presents a feminist point of view about the circumstances of women in the late nineteenth century when society was dominated by men, and women's feelings of sexuality were often suppressed. In such a society, sexual fulfillment for some women could be found only indirectly and infrequently. Shown here are Maria Dizzia and Michael Cerveris as patient and doctor in a scene from the play. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

Many of the feminist companies that were started in the 1970s and 1980s, at the height of the women's movement, have closed. But several still remain, including Women's Project and Productions, which was founded in 1978 by Julia Miles. Also, new feminist companies have developed in recent years. Rivendell Theatre, founded in Chicago in 1995, is, according to its mission statement, committed to presenting audiences with "artistically challenging, thought provoking plays that explore the female experience." Feminist theatre companies continue to urge audiences to reexamine their own gender biases and those of their society.

It is important to be aware, as well, that there are feminist companies and female playwrights across the globe. In England, for example, there are a number of significant female playwrights, including Caryl Churchill (discussed later), Timberlake Wertenbaker (b. 1946), Pam Gems (1925–2011), Nina Raine, Rebecca Lenkiewicz (1968), the first living female dramatist to have her original work staged at London's National Theatre, and Lucy Prebble (b. 1981). In Austria, Nobel Prize–winner Elfried Jelinek (b. 1946) writes plays about current political

issues, such as *On the Royal Road: The Burgher King* (2017), which satirizes President Donald Trump.

## LGBTQ THEATRE

As we begin to explore lesbian, gay, bisexual, and transgender theatre groups and artists, we should note that there is often an area of overlap among identities and groups. One can be a feminist writer and also be a lesbian writer. The same is true for a gay or transgender person. At the same time, gay, lesbian, and transgender theatre may each be a distinct movement.

### A PROVOCATIVE PLAY: *UNEXPLODED ORDNANCES (UXO)*

Split Britches is a well-known, well-established Lesbian theatre company founded some years ago by Peggy Shaw and Lois Weaver. One of their recent productions, *Unexploded Ordnances*, shown here, deals with below-the-radar, unknown lethal military explosives that exist in secret places. The group in the play wants to find them and expose where they might be found. In the scene shown here the General (Shaw), far left, has gathered a panel in an attempt to discover the whereabouts of these missiles and munitions. Not shown is the President (Weaver) assisting in the search. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

## A RECENT PLAY BY CARYL CHURCHILL: *LOVE AND INFORMATION*

Caryl Churchill has been the leading woman dramatist in Great Britain for the past half century, having written dozens of provocative, original dramas for the stage as well as scripts for film and television. Her recent play, *Love and Information*, consists of seven brief segments or vignettes which Churchill instructs the director to present in any sequence she or he chooses. The performers shown here are John Procaccino and Kellie Overbey in a 2014 production at the Minetta Lane Theatre in New York. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

296

## GAY AND LESBIAN THEATRE

Among the many diverse theatres that emerged in the last part of the twentieth century was theatre centering on the gay and lesbian experience. An important drama in this category was *The Normal Heart*, a largely autobiographical drama by Larry Kramer. The play, about the beginning of the AIDS crisis in the early 1980s, pits two characters against each other, one urging a full-throated confrontation with the public calling attention to the epidemic and the other taking a more measured approach. A 2011 revival of the play featured the performers shown here: Ellen Barkin, John Benjamin Hickoy, and Joe Mantello. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)

A number of plays and performers introduced gay and lesbian themes into theatre before the 1960s. For example, in the nineteenth century and the early twentieth century there was a considerable amount of cross-dressing in performances: men often appeared in "drag" and women in men's clothing, raising questions about sexual and gender roles. Also, some plays included material on this subject; one example is Lillian Hellman's *The Children's Hour* (1934), in which a presumed lesbian relationship between two schoolteachers was presented.

Though considered too stereotypical by some, the play that first brought gay life to the attention of mainstream audiences was *The*

*Boys in the Band* (1968), by Mart Crowley (b. 1935). Crowley depicted a group of men living an openly gay life. In the years that followed, complex gay characters were presented unapologetically. Plays in the 1970s and 1980s included *The Ritz* (1975) by Terrence McNally (b. 1939), Jane Chambers's *Last Summer at Bluefish Cove* (1980), and *Torch Song Trilogy* (1983) by Harvey Fierstein (b. 1954). Since then, more and more plays have dealt expressly with gay issues. In these dramas, not only are the lives of gays and lesbians presented forthrightly, but frequently a gay or lesbian political agenda is also put forward.

In addition to a general concern for gay and lesbian issues, there was a sense of urgency engendered by the AIDS crisis and gay rights issues. This led to a number of significant dramas, including *The Normal Heart* (1985) by Larry Kramer (b. 1935), *As Is* (1985) by William M. Hoffman (b. 1939), *The Baltimore Waltz* (1992) by Paula Vogel (b. 1951), Tony Kushner's two-part play *Angels in America* (1993–1994), Terrence McNally's *Love! Valour! Compassion!* (1995), and Richard Greenberg's *Take Me Out*, which won a Tony Award in 2003. The continuing push for gay rights equality, including gay marriage, is also reflected in many popular recent Broadway productions that contain gay themes and references, including Douglas Carter Beane's *The Nance* (2013) and the musical *Kinky Boots* (2013).

297

**THE FIVE LESBIAN BROTHERS' *THE SECRETARIES***

*The Secretaries* is a wild, knockabout farce written almost two decades ago by the Five Lesbian Brothers, a long-time female cooperative in New York. It is concerned with mayhem and comical intrigue among a group of secretaries and deals with lesbian subject matter. It was successfully revived in 2016 in this production at the About Face Theatre in Chicago. Directed by Bonnie Metzgar, the actors shown here are, left to right, Kelli Simpkins, Meghan Reardon, Lauren Sivak, Erin Barlow, and Sadieh Rifai. (©Michael Brosilow)

"Gender-bender" groups such as the Cockettes and the Angels of Light in San Francisco and Centola and Hot Peaches in New York are an offshoot of gay and lesbian theatre. An important company in New York was the Playhouse of the Ridiculous, founded by John Vaccaro, which developed an extraordinary writer and performer—Charles Ludlam (1943–1987). Ludlam rewrote the classics to include a good deal of wild parody and frequent cross-dressing; he also created the long-lived Ridiculous Theatrical Company.

Another important group was the Five Lesbian Brothers, a collective of five women, including the solo performance artist Lisa Kron, who were based in New York City and staged plays parodying mainstream attitudes toward gender and sexuality. Chicago's About Face Theatre, founded in 1995, has as a mission "to be Chicago's celebrated center for lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, queer and ally



(LGBTQA) arts." Though a number of groups have not survived, individual performers and playwrights in gay and lesbian theatre remain very much a focus of attention.

The twenty-first century continues to see plays dealing with issues of gay, lesbian, and transgender identity and relationships. Commercially successful plays focusing on gay characters include *Next Fall* (2009) by Geoffrey Nauffts (b. 1961), and *Significant Other* (2015) by Joshua Harmon (b. 1983). The current generation of lesbian playwrights includes KS Stevens, author of *Butch Mamas!* (2009); solo artist Carolyn Gage (b. 1952); Elizabeth Whitney, creator of *Wonder Woman! A Cabaret of Heroic Proportions!* (2009); Meryl Cohen, author of *Reasons to Live* (2012); and Lisa Kron (b. 1961). Among the emerging twenty-first-century transgender playwrights are Taylor Mac (b. 1973), who in *Hir* (2015) dramatizes a family that includes a transgender sibling; Basil Kreimendehl; Jess Barbagallo; and MJ Kaufman, whose *Sagittarius Ponderosa* (2016) explores the transgender experience. In addition, Will Davis (b. 1983) is a transgender director who has staged

works off-Broadway and was the artistic director of Chicago's American Theatre Company. In 2017, he directed a production of William Inge's 1953 play *Picnic* with transgender performers playing the leads as well as other roles.

### *HIR* AND TRANSGENDER DRAMA

*Hir*, by Taylor Mac, is a black comedy that tells the story of Isaac, a young man returning from military duty only to find chaos in the family home. The father is ailing and the mother takes this opportunity to declare war on the whole notion of patriarchy. His sister Maxine is in the process of changing gender. Shown here from a 2016 production at Playwrights Horizons are actor Tom Phelan at the left and, playing the crusading mother, Kristine Nielsen on the right. (©Sara Krulwich/The New York Times/Redux)



## DIVERSE MULTICULTURAL THEATRE

Before we discuss specific diverse, multicultural points of view in theatre, it should be noted that while many theatre artists wish to write from a specific ethnic or gender viewpoint, others who happen to be members of an underrepresented group or a specific gender group, or

who espouse feminism or a political outlook, do not want to be identified solely, or even primarily, on that basis. For instance, there are Latino/a or African American playwrights who want to be known as playwrights without any ethnic or racial identification. Also, there are people who are gay or lesbian, or who are strong feminists, but they want to be regarded chiefly, or even exclusively, as dramatists, not gay dramatists, lesbian dramatists, or feminist dramatists.

## African American Theatre

African American theatre—also referred to as *black theatre*—is a prime example of theatre reflecting the diversity of American culture and the contributions of a particular group to that culture. African American theatre is theatre written by and for black Americans or performed by black Americans. It partakes of two important traditions. One is the Western traditional theatre, in which actors like Paul Robeson (1898–1976) and writers like Lorraine Hansberry (1930–1965) have been significant. The other is a tradition that traces its origin to theatre in Africa and the Caribbean.

During the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries it was rare to see black performers on the American stage. An exception to this were the actors appearing with the African Grove Theatre—a black company founded in New York during the 1820–1821 season by William Brown (an African American) and the West Indian actor James Hewlett. The company was particularly noted for Shakespearean plays. Hewlett was the first black to play Othello, and the renowned actor Ira Aldridge (c. 1806–1867) made his stage debut with the company. Here, too, the drama *King Shotaway* (1823)—believed to be the first play written and performed by African Americans—was presented. The African Grove closed in 1827, however, after attacks by white audience members and there was little progress for African American performers for the rest to the nineteenth century.

At the turn of the twentieth century, the popular syncopated rhythms of ragtime had a strong influence on the emerging musical theatre and served as a bridge for a number of talented African Americans. Bob Cole (1864–1912) and William Johnson (1873–1954) conceived, wrote, produced, and directed the first black musical comedy, *A Trip to Coontown* (1898). The comedians Bert Williams (c. 1876–1922) and George Walker (1873–1911) and their wives joined composers and writers to produce musicals and operettas such as *In Dahomey* (1902) and *Abyssinia* (1906), in which Americans for the first time saw blacks on the Broadway stage without burnt-cork makeup, speaking without dialect, and costumed in high fashion.

The early twentieth century also saw the formation of African American stock companies. The most significant was the Lafayette Players, founded in 1914 by Anita Bush (1883–1974). By the time it closed in 1932, this company had presented more than 250 productions and employed a number of black stars. Black performers and writers were also making inroads into commercial theatre in the 1920s. Twenty plays and musicals with black themes were presented on Broadway in this decade, five of them written by African Americans, including *Shuffle Along* (1921), with lyrics and



music by Noble Sissle (1889–1975) and Eubie Blake (1883–1983). The decade also saw some black performers achieve recognition in serious drama, among them Charles Gilpin (1878–1930), Paul Robeson (1898–1976), and Ethel Waters (1896–1977). In the 1930s there were a few Broadway productions of plays by blacks, such as the folk musical *Run Little Chillun* (1933) and *Mulatto* (1935) by Langston Hughes (1902–1967).

Possibly the most significant development for black theatre during the 1930s was the Federal Theatre Project, which was meant to help theatre artists through the Depression. This project formed separate black units in twenty-two cities that mounted plays by black and white authors and employed thousands of African American writers, performers, and technicians. The Federal Theatre Project created a new generation of African American artists who would develop the theatre of the 1940s and 1950s.

In 1932, *The Great Day* by Zora Neale Hurston (1891–1960) was produced on Broadway. In 1941, Orson Welles directed, for his Mercury Theater, a dramatization of the controversial novel *Native Son* by Richard Wright (1908–1960). Other important Broadway ventures included Paul Robeson's record run of 296 performances in *Othello* in 1943, and *Anna Lucasta* (1944), adapted by Abram Hill (1911–1986).

The 1950s saw an explosion of black theatre that would continue over the next five decades. *Take a Giant Step* by Louis Patterson (b. 1922), a play about growing up in an integrated neighborhood, premiered in 1953. In 1954, the playwright-director Owen Dodson (1914–1983)—a significant figure in black theatre since the 1930s—staged *Amen Corner* by James Baldwin (1924–1987) at Howard University. Off-Broadway, the Greenwich Mews Theater began casting plays without regard to race and also produced *Trouble in Mind* (1956) by Alice Childress (1920–1994).

Possibly the most important production of the postwar era was *A Raisin in the Sun* (1959) by Lorraine Hansberry. The play is about a

black family in Chicago, held together by a God-fearing mother, at the time when the family is planning to move into a predominantly white neighborhood where they will be unwelcome. During the play, the son loses money in a get-rich-quick scheme and dashes their hopes, but later assumes responsibility for the family. Hansberry's play was directed by Lloyd Richards (1922–2006), the first black director to work on Broadway.

Richards later became head of the Yale School of Drama, where in the 1980s he nurtured the talents of the renowned African American playwright August Wilson (1945–2005), author of *Ma Rainey's Black Bottom* (1984), *Fences* (1985), *Joe Turner's Come and Gone* (1986), *The Piano Lesson* (1990), *Seven Guitars* (1995),*King Hedley II* (2000), *Gem of the Ocean* (2003), and *Radio Golf* (2005). These plays are part of an impressive ten-part series in which each individual play focuses on one decade of the twentieth century. The magnitude of Wilson's achievement has led a number of commentators to call him the most important American playwright of the late twentieth century.

From 1960 to the 1990s, there was an outpouring of African American theatre, much of it reflecting the struggle for civil rights. Amiri Baraka (b. 1934) came to theatregoers' attention in 1964 with *Dutchman*, a verbal and sexual showdown between an assimilated black male and a seductive white woman, set in a New York subway. Among other significant plays of these two decades were Adrienne Kennedy's *Funnyhouse of a Negro* (1964) and *The Owl Answers* (1969); Lonne Elder's *Ceremonies in Dark Old Men* (1969); Charles Gordone's *No Place to Be Somebody* (1969); Douglas Turner Ward's *Day of Absence* (1970); and Charles Fuller's *A Soldier's Play* (1981), which won a Pulitzer Prize for Drama.

*JOE TURNER'S COME AND GONE* IN REHEARSAL

One of the most profound of playwright August Wilson's ten-part play cycle is *Joe Turner's Come and Gone*. Set in Pittsburgh in 1910, the scene is a boarding house in which African Americans from the South find refuge on their trip from the South to a hoped-for better life in the North. Parts of the play are mystical, especially the character Bynum Walker who says everyone should find his or her "song." The scene here, from a rehearsal at the Mark Taper Forum in Los Angeles, features cast member Gabriel Brown (center) dancing in front of the other boarders, who are portrayed (left to right) by January LaVoy, Glynn Tuman, Vivian Nixon, and Keith David. (©Gary Friedman/Los Angeles Times/Getty Images)

In 1970 the Black Theater Alliance listed more than 125 producing groups in the United States. Although only a few of these survived the decade, many had a significant impact. The Negro Ensemble Company, founded in 1967, holds the contemporary record for continuous production by a professional black theatre company. The New Lafayette Theatre, which operated from 1966 until 1972, introduced the playwright Ed Bullins (b. 1935), experimented with black ritual, and published the journal *Black Theater*. Other theatres of this period were the New Federal Theatre (founded by Woodie King) and the National Black Theatre (founded by Barbara Ann Teer).

In addition to the emergence of these producing organizations, another major change in the 1970s was the presence of a larger black audience at Broadway theatres, which accounted for a significant number of commercial African American productions, such as *Don't Bother Me, I Can't Cope* (1972) and *Bubbling Brown Sugar* (1976). This trend continued in the 1980s and 1990s with such hits as *Jelly's Last Jam* (1992) and *Bring in 'da Noise, Bring in 'da Funk* (1996).

## TODAY'S THEATRE: GLOBAL AND DIVERSE

The work of the playwright Lynn Nottage is an excellent example of contemporary theatrical diversity. *Ruined*, directed by Kate Whoriskey, was jointly produced by the Goodman Theatre in Chicago and the Manhattan Theatre Club in New York. It is set in the Democratic Republic of the Congo in the year 2000 and tells the story of Sophie (Condola Phyleia

Rashad) and her horrific experiences at the hands of men. (©Liz Lauren/Richard Hein)

302

African American artists continued to make an impact on commercial and noncommercial theatre. For example, George C. Wolfe (b. 1955), author-director of *The Colored Museum* (1986), *Spunk* (1990), and *Jelly's Last Jam*, also directed both parts of the award-winning *Angels in America*. From 1993 to 2004, Wolfe was artistic director of a renowned off-Broadway facility, the Public Theater.

Another African American director, Kenny Leon (b. 1955), in 2002 founded the True Colors Theatre in Atlanta; and in 2004 and 2010 he directed revivals of *A Raisin in the Sun* and *Fences* on Broadway. In 2011 Leon staged two Broadway productions of plays by female African American authors: *The Mountaintop*, by Katori Hall (b. 1981), and *Stick Fly*, by Lydia R. Diamond (b. 1969). Suzan-Lori Parks (b. 1964), Pearl Cleage (b. 1948), and Cheryl West (b. 1956) are also contemporary African American female playwrights whose works deal with issues of racism and feminism and have been produced in regional and alternative theatres. Two additional African American female dramatists whose works are politically charged are Kia Corthron (b. 1961) and Lynn Nottage (b. 1964). Nottage won the Pulitzer Prize for *Ruined* (2008) and again for *Sweat* in 2017.

Among the current generation of African American dramatists are Thomas Bradshaw (b. 1980) and Branden Jacobs-Jenkins (b. 1985), both of whose works have been staged in off-off-Broadway, off-Broadway, and regional theatres.

## Asian American Theatre

Asian American theatre should be seen against its background: the long, important heritage of the theatres of Asia. The three great Asian theatre traditions—Indian, Chinese, and Japanese—all reached a high point of artistic excellence many centuries ago at a time when religion and philosophy were central in each culture; and this has kept the focus of traditional theatre allied to these realms, even though the societies themselves have modernized and changed. In addition, these three cultures created and sustained a form of theatre in which many

303

facets of theatrical art—acting, mime, dancing, music, and text—were combined.

It is against the backdrop of these ancient traditions that contemporary Asian American theatre developed. As early as the 1850s, puppet shows, acrobatic acts, and traditional operas were imported from China to California. For most of the nineteenth century and the first half of the twentieth century, however, Asians appeared in dramatic offerings strictly as stereotypes. In films, for instance, Asian Americans played such menial parts as cooks, spies, and vamps. Leading parts—even Asian characters—were played by whites in makeup.

With the coming of more cultural and ethnic awareness in the 1960s and 1970s, this situation began to change. In 1965 several Asian American performers and directors founded the East West Players in Los Angeles. In 1973, two more groups were formed—the Asian Exclusion Act in Seattle and the Asian-American Theatre Workshop in San Francisco—and in 1977 the director-actor Tisa Chang (b. 1945) founded the Pan Asian Repertory Theatre in New York. These groups employed Asian American performers, produced dramas from the Asian cultural heritage, and emphasized new plays written by and for Asian Americans.

A number of plays by Asian American writers were produced in the 1970s and 1980s, including a memory play by Philip Kan Gotanda (b. 1950) called *Song for a Nisei Fisherman* (1982). In 2003 the American Conservatory Theatre (ACT) premiered his play *Yoheen*, and in 2007 ACT presented Gotanda's *After the War*, an epic drama about a group of people of different nationalities living in a boardinghouse run by a former jazzman.

A playwright who came to prominence in the 1980s was David Henry Hwang (b. 1957) who wrote several plays that won wide recognition, beginning with *FOB*, produced in 1980, *The Dance and the Railroad*, produced in 1981 and in 1988, *M. Butterfly* which opened successfully on Broadway. Based on a true story, the play deals with a French diplomat who meets and falls in love with a Chinese opera singer who he thinks is a woman but turns out to be a man and a spy.

The newer generation of Asian American playwrights includes Diana Son (b. 1965), Chay Yew (b. 1965), who in 2011 became the artistic director of Chicago's Victory Gardens Theatre, Han Ong (b. 1968), and Young Jean Lee (b. 1974). Son's *The Moon Please* (2002) was produced at the New York Public Theater and Young Jean Lee has gained wide attention as a director as well as a writer. One of her plays, *Songs of the Dragons Flying to Heaven* (2006), includes video, picturing the writer being slapped repeatedly on the cheek; monologues; and a scene with Korean Americans.

There has also been a movement to have more Asian Americans employed as performers in appropriate roles. Hwang and the actor B. D. Wong, who played the Chinese opera singer in the original production of *M. Butterfly*, led a vigorous protest against the hiring of an English actor to play the leading role in the musical *Miss Saigon*. That battle was lost; but by 1996, when a revival of *The King and I* opened on Broadway, it had a large proportion of Asian American performers. The same was true for the Lincoln Center revival in 2015.

However, there continues to be concerns regarding theatres not casting Asian actors. In 2012, the La Jolla Playhouse in San Diego cast a white actor as a Chinese emperor (and had only three Asian performers) in the workshop of the musical *The Nightingale*. The Royal Shakespeare Company in London also created controversy in 2013 when Asian actors were cast only in minor roles in the classic Chinese play, *The Orphan of Zhao*.

304

## ASIAN AMERICAN THEATRE

The Vietnamese American playwright Qui Nguyen has had plays produced regionally and off-Broadway. Shown here is a scene from the New York City Center Stage's production of his best-known work *Vietgone*, which depicts the relationship between two young, in love refugees from the Vietnam War

(played by Paco Tolson and Jennifer Ikeda), while in a middle American relocation camp. (©Emon Hassan/The New York Times/Redux)

## Latino/a Theatre

Contemporary Latino/a or Hispanic theatre in the United States can be divided into at least three groups: Chicano theatre, Cuban American theatre, and Puerto Rican or Nuyorican theatre. All three address the experiences of Latinos/as living in the United States, and the plays may sometimes written in Spanish or a combination of Spanish and English, but are usually performed in English.

Chicano theatre, which originated primarily in the West and Southwest, came to prominence during the civil rights movements of the 1960s. The theatre troupe known as El Teatro Campesino ("farmworkers' theatre") grew out of the work of Luis Valdéz (b. 1940), who joined César Chavez in organizing farmworkers in California. Valdéz wrote *actos*, short agitprop pieces dramatizing the lives of workers. (The term *agitprop* means "agitation propaganda"; it was applied in the 1930s to plays with a strong political or social agenda.)

El Teatro Campesino became the prototype for other groups such as Teatro de la Gente ("people's theatre"), founded in 1967; and Teatro de la Esperanza ("theatre of hope"), begun in 1971 in Santa Barbara, California. Valdéz's play *Zoot Suit* (1978), about racial violence in Los Angeles in 1943, opened in Los Angeles to considerable acclaim and later moved to Broadway. Other plays about the Chicano experience followed, one of the most notable being *Roosters* (1987) by Milcha Sanchez-Scott (b. 1955), in which cockfighting is a metaphor used to explore Chicano concerns and family conflicts. Writers who have dealt with Chicano and wider themes include Arthur Giron (b. 1937), an American writer from Guatemala.

Cuban American theatre developed chiefly in Florida. The Federal Theatre Project of the 1930s resulted in fourteen Cuban American productions in 1936 and 1937. A highly regarded Cuban American dramatist who began to be produced in the 1970s was Maria Irene Fornés (b. 1930). Among the current generation of Cuban American writers who have emerged in the past quarter century are Manuel Martin, Mario Peña, Dolores Prida, Iván Acosta, and Omar Torres. (Torres's work is centered in Miami and New York.) Other Cuban American playwrights include Eduardo Machado (b. 1953) and Nilo Cruz (b. 1960), who won a Pulitzer Prize in 2003 for *Anna in the Tropics*.

### A MILESTONE IN LATINO/A THEATRE

A significant event in the emergence of Latino/a theatre was the 1978 production of *Zoot Suit* by Luis Valdez. It was a Brechtian-like musical based on a real event, but it was given a highly theatrical treatment. *Zoot Suit* originated in Los Angeles and moved to Broadway. Seen here is a 2017 revival at the Mark Taper Forum in Los Angeles directed by the author. (©Craig Schwartz)

*Nuyorican* is a term that refers to Puerto Rican culture, mostly in New York but elsewhere as well. Works by playwrights with a Puerto Rican orientation began to be produced in the 1960s and 1970s by groups such as the Teatro Repertorio Español; the Puerto Rican Traveling Theatre, founded by Miriam Colon; and the New York Public Theater, founded by Joseph Papp. The Nuyorican Poets' Café presented plays by a number of Hispanic writers, including an ex-convict, Miguel Piñero (1947–1988), whose *Short Eyes*, a harshly realistic portrait of prison life, proved to be very successful and won a number of awards in the 1973–1974 season. New Nuyorican playwrights have also come to prominence, including Yvette Ramírez,

Cándido Tirado, Carmen Rivera, Edward Gallardo, and Juan Shamsul Alam. Quiara Alegreia Hudes (b. 1978) won the Pulitzer Prize in 2012 for *Water by the Spoonful*, which is part of a trilogy of plays, and also authored the book for the musical *In the Heights* (2007). Lin-Manuel Miranda (b. 1980), whose heritage is Puerto Rican, is the composer of *In the Heights* as well as *Hamilton* (2015), for which he also wrote the book and won the Pulitzer Prize.

In 1971, a network of Latino/a theatres across the country was established. Current examples including Teatro Vista, established by two Cuban-born theatre artists, and Teatro Luna, organized by ten Latina women, including Mexican-born playwright Tanya Saracho (b. 1980), perform works by Latino/a artists in Chicago.

## Native American Theatre

Strictly speaking, there was no Native American theatre tradition; rather, there were spiritual and social traditions that had theatrical elements. These were found primarily in ancient rituals and communal celebrations, which were often infused with



cosmic significance. Also, unlike traditional Western theatre, these events had no audience as such: those observing were considered participants just as much as the principal performers. Many of these ceremonies and the like were outlawed by the American government in the nineteenth century. Thus the legacy of rituals and ceremonies, which had strong theatrical components—not to mention significant spiritual and cultural value—was lost or forced to go "underground."

The American Indian Religious Freedom Act of 1972 made it legal once again for certain ceremonies, such as the sun dance, to resume. The increased awareness of these rituals and celebrations contributed to the emergence of a Native American theatre. Two groups that led the way in the past three decades were the Native American Theatre Ensemble and Spiderwoman.

The Native American Theatre Ensemble, which was originally called the American Indian Theatre Ensemble, was founded by Hanay Geiogamah. (It is important to note that those familiar with Native American theatre invariably identify theatre companies and theatre artists not with the generic term *Native American theatre*, but in terms of their tribes. Thus, Geiogamah is identified as Kiowa-Delaware.) Geiogamah's organization gave its premiere performance at La Mama in New York City in 1972, and later toured widely, not only in North America but also in Europe and elsewhere.

Spiderwoman Theatre comes under the headings of both Native American theatre and feminist theatre. Founded in 1975, it is the longest continually running women's theatre in North America, as well as the longest-running Native American theatre. Three of its founding members—Lisa Mayo, Gloria Miguel, and Muriel Miguel—draw on storytelling and other theatrical traditions to celebrate their identity as American Indian women and to comment on stereotypes of women in general.

Another important Native American producing organization is Native Voices at the Autry Museum in Los Angeles. Randy Reinholz, a Native American, and his wife, Jean Bruce Scott, had developed a program presenting Native American drama at Illinois State University where they were on the faculty. In 2000, they were invited to bring their project, Native Voices, to the Autry to become a full-time, professional producing organization in Los Angeles. Since that beginning they have presented a series of readings, workshops, and full productions of a wide range of Native American dramatic writing.

What is important to note about Native American theatre today is that it is not primarily historical or ceremonial. Though elements of tribal traditions may be incorporated, the emphasis among playwrights and producers is really on contemporary work, fusing the problems and aspirations of today's Native Americans with their heritage. The challenges and preoccupations of young Native American playwrights are similar to those addressed by their American counterparts of all nationalities.

Several Native American playwrights have published single-author anthologies of their works including William F. Yellow Robe Jr. (Assiniboine); Diane Glancy (Cherokee); and E. Donald Two-Rivers (Anishinabe). Another important contemporary playwright is Bruce King (Turtle Clan, Haudenosaunee-Oneida). King and Yellow Robe are also directors who have founded their own companies in the recent past and have taught playwriting and performance at the Institute of American Indian Arts in Santa Fe, New Mexico.

## THE JOURNEY OF A NATIVE AMERICAN THROUGH TODAY'S CHALLENGING WORLD

In this drama, *Ghostlands*, Robert Owens-Greygrass (Lakota, shown here). deals with the conflicting worlds of his native heritage. Greygrass, who also wrote the piece, portrays sixteen characters through the sometimes comic but always challenging journey of Native Americans in today's world. Presented at the Autry Museum in Los Angeles, directed by Kevin Sifuentes (Hopi) in 2012. (©Craig Schwartz)

307

## A NATIVE AMERICAN WALKS THE "TRAIL OF TEARS"

Native American performer and playwright DeLanna Studi (Cherokee) and her father walked the 900-mile journey from the native American Indian territory in the southeastern United States to the Oklahoma territory—a journey known as the "Trail of Tears"—the path American Indians were forced to take on foot after an edict expelling them from their homeland in 1830. From this journey, she fashioned her play *And So We Walked* which she is seen here performing at the Portland Center Stage. (©Bert Vanderveen)

Recognition of the neglect of Native American drama took an interesting turn in the spring of 2018 when three major theatres in Oregon, that had rarely, if ever, scheduled a play by a Native American, presented plays by three such authors, all women playwrights, simultaneously. The Oregon Shakespeare Festival premiered *Manahatta*, a play by Mary Kathryn Nagle that takes the events of the 1600s when the Dutch inhabitants of Manhattan expelled and walled out the Native Americans of the Lenape tribe, forcing them to leave their native habitat; she relates that to another crisis several centuries later, namely, the financial collapse in the United States of 2008–2012. The Portland Center Stage presented *And So We Walked* by DeLanna Studi, a play that traces the journey of the playwright and her father on the "Trail of Tears," the forced immigration route of Indians from their native home in the southeastern United States to the Oklahoma territory west of the Mississippi River in the late 1830s, an event described in the accompanying photograph. The Artist's Repertory Theatre of Portland premiered *The Thanksgiving Play* by Larissa FastHorse,



a satire that challenges theatre companies who claim that they cannot find actors who are able to play the roles of Native Americans. (It is hoped that this coincidence of presentations of Native American theatre does not turn out to be a one-off event.)

There are also many Native American theatre organizations throughout the United States, including Thunderbird Theatre at Haskell Indian Nations University, founded in 1974; Red Earth Performing Arts, founded in Seattle in 1974; and the Tulsa Indian Actor's Workshop, founded in 1993. The American Indian Community House (ACH) in New York City uses its theatre space for Native American performing artists, hosting the Indian Summer Series, a month-long festival; ACH also keeps a database of native performers.

While we have discussed many multicultural theaters in the United States, there are many other companies that reflect the ever-expanding diversity of U.S. society. For example, Noor Theatre in New York City, founded by three women of Middle Eastern descent, strives to present work from the growing Middle Eastern communities in the United States. Silk Road Rising is a Chicago theatre company that presents works relevant to the Asian American and Middle Eastern American experiences and says in its mission statement that it hopes to "advance a polycultural worldview."

It should be clear that on the multicultural front, a number of diverse, ethnic theatres, many of them developing dramas very much in the mainstream of traditional theatre, have been developing an impressive body of work.

## GLOBAL THEATRE

In approaching global theatre, three points should be kept in mind. The first is that in most global cultures, theatre has a long, illustrious history. Unlike American theatre, which has a relatively short history, world theatre goes back more than 2,000 years in Europe and 1,500 years in Asia. In Europe, preceding contemporary theatre, the theatre tradition of the past begins with Greek theatre and moves through Roman, medieval, Renaissance, eighteenth-century, and nineteenth-century theatre into modern theatre. In Asia, theatre in India began perhaps 2,000 years ago and Chinese theatre a few centuries after that; Japanese theatre was established by 800 ce.

In other parts of the world—for instance, in Africa, in pre-Columbian Latin America, and in the Native American culture of North America—there are rich traditions of rituals and ceremonies imbued with theatrical elements: costumes, song and dance, and the impersonation of people, animals, and divinities.

When we look at European, Asian, and other theatres, therefore, we are looking at traditions that precede the theatre that exists in those parts of the world today. At various points in *The Theatre Experience*, we have referred to some of these theatres and to their playwrights, stage spaces, production practices, and acting companies. In this chapter, we will concentrate on contemporary, that is, more recent theatre throughout the world outside the United States, not just in Europe and Asia, but in Africa and other parts of the Americas as well.

A second point to keep in mind is that beginning around 1900, Asian and other non-European theatres were influenced by developments of modern theatre in the West: the realism introduced by Ibsen,

Strindberg, and Chekhov; and a number of departures from realism, such as expressionism. Thus in a country like Japan you have the traditional theatre of nō and kabuki alongside modern theatre.

309

The third point, and in many ways the most significant point for modern audiences, is the development of global exchanges—in communication, ideas, commerce, and the arts. Thomas Friedman, in his book *The World Is Flat*, analyzed how globalization has affected business and industry in contemporary society. One can no longer tell whether a product is made by a company of a specific country, since most major corporations are multinational. The automobile industry clearly reflects the trend toward industrial globalization, as does the personal computer industry. A car created today by a Japanese, Korean, or German manufacturer may be assembled in the United States. A tablet or smartphone may be assembled in the China for a U.S. firm, but its twenty-four-hour help desk may be located in India.

The same is true in today's theatre. Many diverse groups influence one another to create the contemporary theatrical landscape. Theatre artists travel across national boundaries to stage their works with artists of other countries. Popular works tour the world and cross-pollinate other theatrical ventures. International theatre festivals bring artists of various nationalities to interact with those in the host community.

The global nature of today's theatre can be seen in the offerings at many international theatre festivals across the globe that highlight specific national theatres as well as works created by multinational artistic and production teams. What this suggests is that we can no longer easily classify theatre productions and artists by specific national designations. Ease of travel, electronic communication, and the commerce of theatre have all led to a blurring of national theatres. Like the global economy, theatre today is a global activity. In order to bring some structure to our discussion, we will organize this chapter along traditional national boundaries. However, we will frequently point to the global interplay and impact of the various theatre artists and companies; and we will focus on only a few regional examples since it would be impossible to survey the vastness of our contemporary global theatre.

## Theatres in India, China, and Japan in the Modern Period

The Asian continent is immense and includes roughly forty countries and hundreds of ethnicities, languages, and theatre traditions. In the limited space of this book, it would be impossible to do justice to such diversity and multiplicity. Therefore, we will confine our discussion to

three Asian countries: India, China, and Japan. In all three countries, traditional theatre continues today: kathakali in India, Beijing (Peking) opera in China, and nō and kabuki in Japan. At the same time, Asian countries were influenced in the early twentieth century by Western dramatic forms, particularly the modernist traditions of realism and departures from realism.

Following World War I, there was a politicization of Asian theatres. Some theatre artists opposed Western influences and the colonial mentality. As a result, in the past half century, there has been a unique return of traditional forms blended into the sociopolitical sensibilities of Asian theatre artists. This return to traditional forms, in itself, is a rejection of colonial and postcolonial Western intrusions into the continent.

In India several changes occurred a few decades into the twentieth century, the most important of which was the advent of cinema. In India, films began to be produced in great numbers, and audiences flocked to them. These productions feature theatrical staging, lighting, costumes, and choreography and are often referred to as “Bollywood” films. The term combines Hollywood, the center of American cinema, with the Indian city Bombay (now Mumbai). At midcentury, this trend, and the effects of World War II, led to a decrease in professional theatre in many parts of India.

310

## KATHAKALI: INDIAN DANCE-DRAMA

Much Asian theatre includes a large element of dance. A prime example is kathakali, a dramatic form found in southwestern India. In kathakali, stories of strong passions, the furies of gods, and the loves and hates of extraordinary human beings are told in dance and mime. Notice the extreme makeup and stylized costumes on these dancers in Kerala, India. (©EyesWideOpen/Getty Images)

The theatre in India that emerged in the latter half of the twentieth century and continues to this day was primarily an amateur theatre. It is estimated that Calcutta has as many as 3,000 registered amateur theatre groups, Mumbai perhaps has as many as 500, and Madras at least 50. Also, some of them present professional- quality theatre. Moreover, these theatres keep alive plays written by Indian playwrights, past and present, as well as plays from other nations. There was also a strain of experimental theatre in India, led by such figures as Badal Sircar (b. 1925), whose plays reflect the experience of urban life in India.

Since the death of leader Mao Zedong in 1976 and the opening up of China to the West in the late 1970s, there has been cross-fertilization between Chinese traditions and Western drama. Theatre artists from the United States and Europe have visited and performed in China. Arthur Miller, for example, directed a production of *Death of a Salesman* in Beijing in 1983. These Western influences can be seen in plays like *The Peach Blossom Fan*, by Ouyang Yuqian (1889–1962), which tells the story of the romance between a high-class courtesan and an army general in the late Ming dynasty; and *Jesus, Confucius, and John Lennon* by Sha Yexin (b. 1939), a play about the absurdities Christ, Confucius, and Lennon encounter during their travels on the moon and around the world as representatives of God.

**BEIJING (PEKING) OPERA**

A highly formalized theatre, Beijing (or Peking) opera was developed in China in the nineteenth century. It is not like Western grand opera; rather, it is a popular entertainment filled with song, dance, and acrobatics. It makes wide use of symbols—with, for instance, a table standing for a mountain, or a blue fabric for the sea, as shown here—and is performed in highly colorful and stylized costumes like the ones we see in this performance. The production being enacted is *The Legend of the White Snake*. (©ArenaPAL/The Image Works)

Ping Chong's puppet theatre production with the Shaanxi Folk Art Theatre of Xian, China, *Cathay: Three Tales of China* (2005), is just one example of the merging of avant-garde and traditional forms in contemporary China. Although much of today's Chinese drama still remains socialist in point of view and realistic in style, there have been a number of other artists who push the boundaries of subject matter and style, fusing classical traditions with contemporary forms and issues.

312

Since the end of World War II, contemporary theatre in Japan has thrived. A number of truly gifted playwrights have emerged, chief among them Kinoshita Junji (1914–2006), whose work combined social concerns with humor and, when appropriate, with elements from

Japanese folk tradition. In the second half of the twentieth century there were three main branches of theatre in Japan. One was traditional theatre—nō, bunraku, and kabuki, of which the most active was kabuki. Despite Western influences, these three ancient theatre traditions in Japan have remained vital and active today.

A second branch of Japanese theatre consisted of various manifestations of ***shingeki***, a word that means "new theatre." Shingeki began in the late nineteenth century and in one form or another continued throughout the twentieth century. Broadly speaking, it was a modern theatre, in contrast to the traditional classic theatres. For one thing, it was more realistic than the traditional theatres. In the early twentieth century, shingeki banished the gods and the fantastic from theatre, partly because they had played such a large role in classic theatre. Later, after World War II, nonrealistic elements were admitted to shingeki dramas. Despite its changes and Western influences, shingeki remains a theatre in which the playwright is a central figure. In recent years it has included female playwrights, who were almost nonexistent in earlier times.

**shinkgeki** Modern Japanese theatre.

The third strain of modern Japanese theatre has been avant-garde or experimental theatre. A good example of this movement is the work of Tadashi Suzuki, who began his work at Waseda University in Tokyo and then developed a theatre community in the mountains at Toga, Japan. Other theatre figures created their own brand of avant-garde work, some of it paralleling that being done in the West, but some distinctly Japanese.

## Theatres in the Middle East

Although the Islamic religion has strong prohibitions against theatre, there have always been traditions of storytelling, folklore, and popular comedy throughout the Middle East. In Turkey and Egypt, for example, religious stories were often brought to life with the use of shadow puppets. Professional storytellers would also relate tales of religious or historic events to audiences, often accompanied by musical instruments. It wasn't until the nineteenth century, however, that stage theatre was



embraced as a popular means for conveying life in the Middle East. Today theatre in the Arab world is greatly affected by the politics of the region.

**TADASHI SUZUKI: INVENTIVE, ADVENTURESOME JAPANESE DIRECTOR**

Tadashi Suzuki is a recent Japanese director who has done innovative work, often combining classical Japanese theatre techniques with Western dramas. Shown here is Chieko Naito as Clytemnestra and Natsuko Ota as Nurse in the Suzuki Company at a Suzuki production of Euripides's *Waiting for Orestes: Electra*, an adaptation of the classical Greek tragedy, directed by Suzuki at the King's Theatre as part of the Edinburgh International Festival. (©Robbie Jack/Corbis Entertainment/Getty Images)

As in Asia and Latin America, the close of the nineteenth century and the beginning of the twentieth century saw a rise in Western colonial influence on the theatres of the Arab Middle East. The adaptation of historic events into plays became very popular. Three early playwrights are widely credited with the introduction of Western dramatic techniques into the Arab world: the Lebanese author Marun al-Naqqash (1817–1855), who combined drama with opera in his work, Abu Khalil al-Qabbani (b. 1851), a Syrian who came to Egypt after his theatre was closed in Damascus; and Ya'qub Sannu (1839–1912), a Jewish Egyptian dramatist.

After World War II and through the 1970s, there was significant development of professional theatrical activity throughout the Middle Eastern region, including Egypt, Iran, Syria, Lebanon, and Iraq. The theatres of these countries continued to be influenced by Western practices and artists, and a good deal of theatrical cross-fertilization occurred. Iran, for example, hosted the Shiraz Arts Festival through the 1970s until the Islamic revolution in 1979. The festival featured works by such notable Western artists as Peter Brook, Jerzy Grotowski, and Robert Wilson.

With the rise of Islamic fundamentalism and totalitarianism in many of these countries, theatrical activities have been halted, significantly curtailed, or rigidly controlled by the state. There are currently, however, a number of significant theatre artists who deal with the contemporary political turmoil of the Middle East, including the ongoing battles with Israel, particularly in Egypt and in the Palestinian territories. Three internationally recognized contemporary Egyptian playwrights are Alfred Farag (1929–2005), Lenin El-Ramley (b. 1945), and Gamal Abdel Maqsoud (b. 1942). In Jordan, the ministry of culture has sponsored annual theatre festivals, and there have also been independent festivals that bring together theatre artists from many parts of the Arab world.

Palestinian theatre has existed since the 1850s, but historians have focused most on theatrical activities since the Israeli occupation in 1967. Many companies and playwrights have created theatrical works that express the Palestinian point of view toward Israel's control of the West Bank and, until recently, Gaza.

Two productions that reflect the Palestinians' existence under Israeli occupation are *The Alley* (1992), a one-woman production written and performed by Samia Qazmouz al-Bakri, which focuses on the lives of Palestinian women since 1948; and *We Are the Children of the Camp* (2000) by al-Rowwad Theatre for Children in the Aida refugee camp near Bethlehem. This production, performed primarily by children, toured the United States in 2005. Among the other Palestinian theatre companies operating today are Ashtar Theatre and Freedom Theatre, founded in the Jenin Refugee camp in the West Bank. With the recent political upheavals in many Arab nations, which began in 2010 and known as the Arab Spring, a number of young playwrights have dramatized the emerging issues. They include Mohammad Al Attar (Syria), Kamal Khalladi (Morocco), Arzé Khodr (Lebanon), Laila Soliman (Egypt), and Elyes Labidi (Tunisia).

The civil war in Syria against the regime of President Bashar al-Assad, which began in 2011 and led to the strengthening of such terrorist organizations as ISIS and other opposition forces, also resulted in a significant number of Syrian refugees living in camps outside their country. In Jordan, the Syrian actor-director Nawar Bulbul (b. 1973), who founded Al-Khareef Theatre Troupe in Damascus but was forced into exile in 2011, began creating theatre works in 2014 for young audiences in



the Zaatari refugee camp. One of his works is an adaptation of *King Lear* in which he cast almost 100 young actors. An adaptation of the

Greek tragedy *The Trojan Women*, titled *Queens of Syria*, was performed by female refugees in 2013 in Amman, Jordan, and in 2016 in England.

Israeli theatre has also developed since the founding of the state of Israel in 1948. Israeli drama has been influenced by the eastern European origins of many of its founders as well as the Middle Eastern traditions of those Jews who left Arab nations to settle in the Jewish state. One national theatre of Israel is the Habimah, which was established in Russia in the early twentieth century and settled in what was then British-controlled Palestine in 1931. The other large national theatre in Israel is the Tel Aviv Municipal Theatre. There are many other active Israeli theatres throughout the country—in Tel Aviv, Jerusalem, Haifa, and elsewhere.

As in Europe and the United States, there are also smaller fringe theatrical groups that experiment with avant-garde techniques and performance artists. Most of the theatres in Israel receive some governmental subsidy. Israeli drama also reflects the tumultuous history of the nation. There are also alternative theatre groups and many are showcased in the annual Acco Festival for Alternative Theatre in Acre. Early drama dealt with the establishment of the state and nationalism.

Hanoch Levin (1943–1999) was a prominent playwright and director, who focused on issues of hypocrisy and self-delusion in Israel society. The most internationally recognized Israeli dramatist is Joshua Sobol (b. 1939), whose play *Ghetto* (1984) was produced throughout the world. In the 1980s, Sobol served as an artistic director with the Municipal Theatre in Haifa, frequently combining Israeli and Palestinian actors in controversial productions.

## African Theatres and Drama

Early African societies had many traditional performances connected to ceremonies and rituals that employed music, song, and dance. Colorful, exotic, symbolic costumes were also a key element of many rituals and ceremonies. African theatre artists in the twentieth century used these traditional forms and subverted forms of popular Western theatre in order to create work that reflects anticolonial struggles as well as attacks against totalitarian regimes in the newly independent African nations.

Contemporary African theatre and society are divided into English-speaking Africa; French-speaking Africa; Portuguese-speaking Africa; and Arabic-speaking Africa, which includes the northern African countries Egypt, Tunisia, Algeria, and Morocco. In the nations that were originally defined by nineteenth-century colonial powers, there are also

attempts to experiment with the indigenous languages of the peoples of this region of Africa.

In Portuguese-speaking Africa, which includes Angola, Cape Verde, Guinea-Bissau, Mozambique, and São Tomé and Principe, missionaries introduced religious drama in order to spread Catholicism. Before independence in 1975, much of the theatre in these regions was like vaudeville, although some anticolonial dramas were written as well. After independence, there was a greater focus on theatre that would arouse social consciousness, and plays followed the model of agitprop dramas; theatrical companies created collaborative works that focused on political and social issues. In Angola, for example, the National School of Theatre was founded in 1976 and staged works that focused on African liberation.



French-speaking (francophone) Africa includes areas south of the Sahara as well as some nations in northern Africa. There is a vital theatre in the sub-Saharan nations, influenced by traditional forms of storytelling and music as well as by French theatre traditions. Many of the plays written in this part of French-speaking Africa have been produced in festivals organized in Paris.

English-speaking (anglophone) Africa, which includes Nigeria, South Africa, Uganda, and Zambia, has had a significant international impact. Anglophone theatre became more highly developed in the 1950s because of the influence of universities in this region that encouraged the work of dramatists and also organized traveling theatre troupes. Among the influences on the theatre of English-speaking Africa are traditional forms, popular theatre, and the indigenous languages of the peoples; in fact, there has been considerable debate over whether theatre should be created in the language of the African peoples or in English. South Africa produced many significant playwrights and theatre companies in the 1970s, including the Market Theatre, People's Space Theatre, and Junction Avenue Theatre Company; these companies frequently produced works that questioned South Africa's apartheid.

Concern for political and social equality is at the heart of the works of the South African playwright Athol Fugard (b. 1932) and the Nigerian playwright Wole Soyinka (b. 1934), and these two authors have become the most internationally renowned of all contemporary African playwrights. Fugard, who is white, attacked apartheid in such plays as *Sizwe Banzi Is Dead* (1973) and *Master Harold . . . and the Boys* (1982). Some of Fugard's early works were written in collaboration with black actors. His works represent the racial turmoil of South Africa during apartheid and post-apartheid.

Nigerian dramatist Wole Soyinka, who is also a poet, essayist, and novelist, began his career with the Royal Court Theatre in London in the late 1950s. His politically charged works led to his arrest in Nigeria in 1967, and to two years' imprisonment. In 1973, he adapted Euripides's *The Bacchae* for the National Theatre in England. Soyinka gained international recognition in 1986, when he received the Nobel Prize in Literature. Among his best-known dramas are *Death and the King's Horsemen* (1975) and *Play of Giants* (1985).

In recent years an important group of dramatists, writing in Arabic, emerged in northern Africa. This group includes two Egyptian playwrights, Alfred Farag (1929–2005) and Lenin El-Ramli (b. 1945), considered Egypt's leading comic dramatist. The Tunisian dramatist Jalila Baccar (b. 1952) is an author, director, and actress in films and television as well as onstage, whose Tunisian company has been featured in festivals in Europe and the United States. The Algerian playwright Abdelkader Alloula (1929–1994) was his country's leading dramatist after its independence until he was assassinated by extremists in 1994. Tayed Saddiki (b. 1937) is considered the outstanding playwright in contemporary Morocco.

## Russia and Eastern Europe

A pivotal event for theatre in eastern Europe, as for so much else, was the fall of the Soviet Union in 1989–1991. From World War II until that time, theatre in Russia and the territories under its domination was a double-edged sword. On the one hand, there was state-supported theatre through much of the Soviet Union, which meant theatre was available as well as affordable. On the other hand, all theatrical activity was heavily censored and required to hew to the party line, with the result that experimentation, creativity, and protest were stifled if not eliminated altogether.

## WOLE SOYINKA: A NOBEL PLAYWRIGHT

Wole Soyinka, a remarkable playwright from Nigeria, is outspoken and has faced many hardships, including being jailed for his beliefs. Undeterred, he has continued to write plays, and in 1986 he was awarded the Nobel Prize in Literature. The scene shown here is from his play *Death and the King's Horseman* in a recent London production. (©Elliott Franks/ArenaPAL/The Image Works)

In the last two decades new theatrical energy has emerged throughout the region; at the same time, there has been a struggle for financial support. The two theatrical centers in Russia itself remain Moscow and Saint Petersburg. Three important traditional theatres are still very much a presence in Moscow: the Moscow Art Theatre, the Maly, and the theatre of Vakhtangov. Other well-known theatres include the Taganka, the theatre of Oleg Tabakov, and the first gay theatre in Russia: the Roman Viktiuk Theatre.

Among other countries formerly under Soviet domination, several have long, vibrant traditions of theatrical activity that have been rekindled. Three examples are Poland, the Czech Republic (formerly a part of Czechoslovakia), and Romania. Poland, for instance, in the twentieth century had an extremely influential pre-absurdist, experimental playwright, Ignacy Witkiewicz (1855–1939), as well as an internationally celebrated director, Tadeusz Kantor (1915–1990).

In the Czech Republic, Josef Svoboda revolutionized scene design in the mid-twentieth century. The playwright Václav Havel (b. 1936) challenged communist and Soviet authorities in his plays; as a result he was attacked and imprisoned, and his works were banned. In 1989, when the Czech Republic emerged as an independent nation, Havel

was elected president. In Romania, an auteur director, Radu Afrim, reinterprets and transforms classic texts to create extremely provocative theatre pieces. His version of Chekhov's *The Three Sisters*, for example, featured the sisters as scantily clad flash dancers.

317

## IN FOCUS: DOCUMENTARY DRAMA: A CONTINUING GLOBAL TREND

As we mentioned earlier when discussing realism, certain theatrical trends and forms from past periods continue in our contemporary, global theatre. One such form is documentary drama (sometimes referred to as theatre of fact), which has roots in the classical Greek and Elizabethan theatres and in other theatres through the early twentieth century.

Documentary drama reflects the diversity and eclecticism of our global theatre. Documentary dramas are based on historical documents, which give an air of authenticity and historical reality. The goal of documentary drama is to convince audiences that they are watching history unfold, even when the dramatists have modified the documents for dramatic or political effect.

One of the most famous documentary dramas is *The Investigation* (1965) by German playwright Peter Weiss (1916–1982), which dramatizes the war crimes trials of people who were guards at a Nazi extermination camp.

Documentary drama continues to be prevalent in the twenty-first-century global theatre. Today, docudramas—as they are sometimes referred to—are also popular as made-for-television movies.

At the same time, docudramas for the stage continue to be written. A good example is *Exonerated* (2002), a documentary about former death-row inmates in the United States who turn out to be innocent. There have also been numerous docudramas dealing with the war in Iraq, including *Black Watch* (2006), staged throughout the world by the National Theatre of Scotland. There are also examples of documentary drama from the contemporary African, Latin American, Asian, and Middle Eastern theatres.

### Western Europe, Britain, and Ireland

When we turn from theatre of the past to contemporary theatre in the nations of western Europe, countries such as France, Germany, Italy, and Spain, as well as Britain and Ireland, we find that in these countries today theatre can be divided into three categories. One category is classic theatre. Each nation has one or more theatres that continue to produce classics from the past. France, for example, has the Comédie Française in Paris, which was founded in 1680, more than 300 years ago. Britain has not one but two national theatres: the Royal Shakespeare Company and the National Theatre.

A second category of ongoing theatre in western Europe and Britain is modern theatre. It began in Europe in the late nineteenth century with the plays of Ibsen, Strindberg, and Chekhov and includes both the realistic drama of those playwrights and the many who followed them, as well as the nonrealistic drama that began at the same time and the playwrights who followed this path into such departures from realism as expressionism, surrealism, and absurdism.

A third category includes the many avant-garde and experimental works, sometimes produced by directors and sometimes by acting ensembles. It should be pointed out that in western Europe as well as Britain and Ireland, all three strands are very much alive today. What follows is a brief look at playwrights, directors, and theatre companies in this part of the world.

In Germany an important director has been Peter Stein (b. 1937), who became known in the 1970s for postmodernist productions in which he reworked classical texts to heighten ideological statements that he felt were inherent in them and to express his own political viewpoints. He often used techniques of Brecht, Artaud, and naturalism. Among German playwrights two important figures are Heiner Müller



(1929–1995) and Peter Handke (b. 1942). Müller, who began his career in communist East Germany in the 1950s, became known for the short plays he wrote in the late 1970s and 1980s—explosions of images ridiculing traditional values and institutions. His most famous play is an Artaud-like scenario, *Hamletmachine* (1977). Handke's best-known works, which often are stylized, theatrical, and minimalist, include *Offending the Audience* (1966) and *Kaspar* (1967). Handke has been criticized for his right-wing, nationalistic politics.

In France there were a host of important playwrights throughout the twentieth century. One of the best known of the newer playwrights is Yasmina Reza (b. 1959), whose plays include *Art* (1995) and *God of Carnage* (2007). Among French directors a signal figure is Ariane

Mnouchkine (b. 1939). Another director who works in France, Peter Brook (b. 1925), is emblematic of the international, global nature of today's theatre. Brook is British and began his work in Britain, but he founded a theatre in Paris some years ago and has worked there ever since.

A key Italian theatre figure is the Italian playwright Dario Fo (1926–2016), known for his satirical political comedies that attack capitalist institutions and are reminiscent of the Greek playwright Aristophanes. Fo, with his wife, the actress Franca Rame (1929–2016), ran his own theatre companies, directing and acting in



his plays. Fo won the Nobel Prize in Literature in 1997. A Spanish director who has received international acclaim is Calixto Bielto (b. 1963), who has staged radical reinterpretations of operas and texts. In 2012, he adapted Tennessee Williams's *Camino Real* for a postmodern production at the Goodman Theatre in Chicago.

## GOETHE'S FAUST

Considered by many the greatest nineteenth-century romantic drama, Goethe's *Faust* was written in two parts. It follows the pattern of episodic Shakespearean drama and deals with the temptation of Faust by Mephistopheles. Shown here is a

scene from internationally renowned director Peter Stein's full-length production staged in Germany in 2000. (©Ruth Walz)

Among the significant playwrights in England is Tom Stoppard (b. 1937), who continues to write dramas emphasizing wordplay and intellectual concerns. One of Stoppard's dramas in his long list of intellectually challenging and stimulating plays is *The Coast of Utopia*, three plays constituting a trilogy that lasts nearly nine hours and was presented in 2007 by the Lincoln Center Theatre. A significant number of "angry" playwrights in Britain continue to attack traditional political, social, and economic institutions; among the best known are David Hare (b. 1947) and Howard Brenton (b. 1942). More contemporary sociopolitically oriented British playwrights include Patrick Marber (b. 1964) and Jez Butterworth (b. 1969).

A number of female English playwrights have achieved considerable recognition, including Timberlake Wertenbaker (b. 1946) and Pamela Gems (b. 1925). Sarah Kane (1971–1999) received attention after she committed suicide. A British playwright who has achieved immense worldwide recognition for politically charged feminist plays is Caryl Churchill (b. 1938). Churchill, whose plays include *Cloud Nine* (1979), *Mad Forest* (1990), and *A Number* (2004), has received numerous awards, including the Susan Smith Blackburn Prize, which she won twice.

## CONTEMPORARY WOMEN PLAYWRIGHTS

In the past quarter century, women playwrights have emerged throughout the English-speaking world. An award for the best new play in the English language, the Susan Smith Blackburn Prize, has coincided with this development. A play that was shocking to many people—though others applauded its honesty—was *Blasted* by Sarah Kane: it includes frank depictions of rape, torture, and cannibalism. Shown here, in a scene from a production at the Avignon theatre festival, are Katharina Schuttler and Ulrich Muehe. (The playwright hanged herself in 1999, at the age of twenty-eight.) (©Anne-Christine Poujoulat/AFP/Getty Images)

320

## A POSTMODERN ENGLISH DIRECTOR

Deborah Warner is an English director who has developed a more experimental style of production and reinterpreted texts so as to focus on feminist, gender, and other sociopolitical issues. She is best known for the many productions she has directed starring the actress Fiona Shaw including Beckett's *Footfalls* (1994), T. S. Eliot's *The Waste Land* (2000), Euripides's *Medea* (2001), Brecht's *Mother Courage* (2009), and Colm Tóibín's *The Testament of Mary* (2013). Shown here

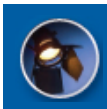
are Shaw on the left and Warner on the right. (©Bruce Glikas/FilmMagic/Getty Images)

An English director who has developed a more experimental style of production, and has reinterpreted texts to focus on feminist, gender, and other sociopolitical issues, is Deborah Warner (b. 1959). Warner began her career with an alternative London troupe, the Kick Theatre Company, which she founded in 1980, when she was twenty-one. She has since directed unique interpretations of the classics for the Royal Shakespeare Company and the National Theatre in London. She is best known for the many productions she has directed starring the actress Fiona Shaw (b. 1959), including Shakespeare's *Richard II*, Beckett's *Footfalls*, and Brecht's *Mother Courage* (2009).

Among the other successful female directors in England are Josie Rourke (b. 1980), who took over as artistic director of the Donmar Warehouse in 2012; Phyllida Lloyd (b. 1957); Vicky Featherstone (b. 1967), the first female artistic director of the Royal Court; and Emma Rice (b. 1967), the artistic director of The Globe from 2016 to 2018.

There is also a new generation of young Irish playwrights who dramatize social, political, and historical issues. One of the best known is Martin McDonagh (b. 1970), whose works include *The Beauty Queen of Leenane* (1996) and *The Cripple of Inishmaan* (1996). Conor McPherson (b. 1971) has gained international attention for *The Weir* (1997) and *The Seafarer* (2006).

321



## IN FOCUS: IVO VAN HOVE, GLOBAL DIRECTOR

A European director who has received global recognition and whose work is truly multinational is the Belgian-born postmodernist Ivo van Hove (b. 1958). Van Hove, who is gay, collaborates with his partner, the designer Jan Versweyveld (b. 1958), whom he credits as helping conceptualize his productions. Van Hove has worked across the world. He is the artistic director of Toneelgroep in Amsterdam and his productions have been staged in England, the United States, Russia, Austria, and other countries.

Van Hove has made a specialty of reinterpreting traditional texts in unique ways, often using minimalist, stripped sets that

symbolically represent issues in the action. In his production of *A Streetcar Named Desire* (1996), for example, the character Blanche DuBois spends a good part of the play naked in a bathtub.

In his production of *The Misanthrope* (2007) by Molière, van Hove not only drastically reworked the text but employed such contemporary devices as cell phones and computer notebooks. In his *Angels in America* (2007), the stage is bare and the final appearance of the angel is not a theatrical revelation but a nurse.

As with many global directors, van Hove has toured his productions and directed in other countries. In the United States, he has directed productions at the off-Broadway New York Theatre Workshop, including the earlier-mentioned *Misanthrope*, *The Little Foxes* (2010), *Scenes from a Marriage* (2013), and Enda Walsh (b. 1967) and David Bowie's *Lazarus* (2015). He directed an acclaimed, minimalist production of Arthur Miller's *A View from the Bridge* at the Young Vic in London in 2014 that moved to Broadway in 2015, as well as Arthur Miller's *The Crucible* on Broadway in 2016.

There are many theatres in England that produce new playwrights or significant revivals, some of which are government-supported, are internationally renowned and have toured productions globally. Among these are the Royal Court Theatre; the Royal Shakespeare Company; the Donmar Warehouse, now under the artistic direction of the female director Josie Rourke (b. 1980); the Almeida; and the Menier Chocolate Factory.

It should be pointed out that in all the areas of western Europe, Britain, and Ireland that we have discussed, numerous alternative theatres exist. Such theatres are also present in most major cities worldwide. In London, for example, there is an alternative to commercial theatre known as *fringe theatre*, in which many contemporary political playwrights began their careers. A British company that does site specific works is Punchdrunk, whose adaptation of *Macbeth, Sleep No More* was staged in abandoned warehouses in New York City.

## Latin American Theatres

In twentieth-century Latin America, theatre developed on many fronts: realistic drama, experimental theatre, radical sociopolitical drama, and popular forms, all existing side by side. While there have been

economic, political, and social problems, including periods of censorship and governmental repression (for example, in Chile during the dictatorship of Pinochet from 1973 to 1989), most countries in Latin America have significant theatres and playwrights. Frequently these artists have responded to the political and social turmoil in their societies.

322

## PLAYING YOUR PART: EXPERIENCING THEATRE

1. Have you ever found yourself in a circumstance in which you were interacting with individuals who spoke only another language? How did you negotiate that circumstance? How might that be similar to experiencing a theatre production that uses the unique traditions of a different nation?
2. Are there issues in contemporary American society that might be dramatized by playwrights of other nations in a fashion that would be different than the way in which a U.S. dramatist would represent the same situation? What might those differences be?
3. Read a play by a contemporary playwright from Latin America, Africa, or Asia. How is the play similar to U.S. dramas you have read? How is it different?

At the beginning of the twentieth century, for instance, many comedies were written throughout Latin America—and especially in Argentina—that dealt with the unique local customs of each of the Latin American nations. In the period between the world wars, the dramatists of Latin America were clearly influenced by such European styles as surrealism and expressionism but often touched on nationalistic issues.

Following World War II, many Latin American dramatists began to focus on the unique national issues and concerns that confronted their individual countries. Some of Latin America's most developed and politically active playwrights and theatre companies can be found today in Argentina, Brazil, Chile, Mexico, and Peru. The theatre artists of these countries have fused the popular styles of their peoples with the modernist styles of modern Western theatre, including realism, expressionism, absurdism, and performance art. The most significant postwar Latin American dramatists include the Mexican Elena Garro (b. 1920), the Chilean Alejandro Sieveking (b. 1935), the Colombian

Guillermo Maldonado (b. 1945), the Peruvian Mario Vargas Llosa (b. 1936), and the Brazilian Plinio Marcos (b. 1935).

One of the most renowned theatre artists of the era was the Brazilian playwright, director, and theorist Augusto Boal. In the 1960s, Boal created works about historical figures, theatrical and revolutionary. Because of his Marxist point of view, Boal was forced into exile. In exile, he traveled throughout South America and other parts of the world, experimenting with different types of theatre. He became internationally known for his theoretical work *Theatre of the Oppressed* (1975), which became a manifesto for revolutionary and socially conscious theatre. Four contemporary playwrights from Argentina are Daniel Veronese (b. 1955), Lola Arias (b. 1976), Rafael Spregelburd (b. 1970), and Federica León (b. 1970). Another important Argentine-based company, De La Guarda, has brought several productions to New York and elsewhere, including *VillaVilla* and *Fuerze Bruta*.

Contemporary Mexican theatre, according to the young playwright Richard Viqueira, “wants to unburden itself from the influence of European theatrical models, and is seeking to forge its own voice. The move in new writing,” he says, “more and more is away from the folkloric toward the more recognizably idiomatic.” Along with Viqueira (b. 1976), other recognized young Mexican playwrights include Javier Malpica (b. 1965); Sabima Berman (b. 1955), a political activist as well as playwright; Sylvia Peláez (b. 1965); and Alberto Villarreal (b. 1977).

## LATIN AMERICAN THEATRE: ARGENTINA

The Argentinian theatre group De La Guarda, in the piece *Fuerza Bruta (Brute Force)* has created a modern work that is part theatre, part rock concert, and part circus act. It typifies the mixing of styles and the eclecticism of much of contemporary theatre. There is no traditional stage. Performers soar through the air and, in the scene shown here, float in a transparent plastic water tank, which spectators view from below through a glass ceiling. (©Ronaldo Schemidt/AFP/Getty Images)

In Cuba, prior to the opening of relations between the United States and Cuba, the country's communist government for many years controlled most theatres. Still, a number of theatre companies have been able to present works by international playwrights and contemporary authors. These include Teatro Studio (founded in 1959), Compañia Teatral (founded in 1962), Compañia Teatral Humbert de Blanck (founded in 1992), Teatro El Publico (founded in 1992), and Argos Teatro (founded in 1996). In recent years, several Cuban

companies have toured internationally. For example, Teatro Buendia, an independent theatre that was established in 1986 and that stages adaptations of historically significant texts using Cuban contexts and music.

## Australia and Canada Since World War II

Before World War II, Australian and Canadian theatres developed commercially, presenting popular forms of entertainment that also reflected national identity.



Two Australian examples are *The Squatter's Daughter*, or, *The Land of the Wattle* (1907), and the pantomime *The Bunyip*, or *The Enchantment of Fairy Princess Wattle Blossom* (1916), which included a mythological Aboriginal character. During the same period, Australia and Canada developed "little theatres"—some professional and some amateur—that presented noncommercial, and often politically charged, works.

In Australia, three such companies were Sydney's New Theatre League, established in 1936; Melbourne's New Theatre Club, founded in 1937; and Brisbane's Unity Theatre, which also opened in 1937. Hart House Theatre, founded on the campus of the University of Toronto in 1919, was one example of the Canadian little theatre movement. It presented many of Canada's most important theatre artists in the two decades before World War II. After World War II, the Hart House became a venue for university productions, reflecting the vitality of university theatre across Canada.

Since World War II, the theatres of Canada and Australia have seen developments that parallel the complexity of international theatre. For example, in Canada in the 1950s and 1960s, many regional theatres were established. One of the most famous is the Stratford Shakespeare Festival in Stratford, Ontario. This festival, established in 1952 under the artistic direction of Tyrone Guthrie, continues to produce classics, musicals, and contemporary works, in multiple venues. The Shaw Festival, established in 1962, stages works by Shaw, his contemporaries, and works set during his lifetime. Australia also saw the development of theatres across the nation from the 1950s through the 1970s.

Both Australia and Canada, from the late 1960s through the present, saw the development of theatre companies dedicated to new works, experimentation, and innovative revivals of classics. In 1967, Betty Burstall (1926–2013) established Melbourne's La Mama theatre, based on New York's famous experimental theatre. Among the stars who have

recently appeared with the company are the film actors Geoffrey Rush (b. 1951) and Cate Blanchett (b. 1969). At the Sydney Theatre Company, founded in 1979, Blanchett was the co-artistic director for a number of years.

In Canada and Australia, there are theatres that focus on native peoples and people of African descent. For example, the Australian musical *Bran Nue Dae* (1990) dealt with Aboriginal life. Playwrights have also dramatized issues of gender and sexual orientation in these countries. Michel Tremblay (b. 1942), who was born in Montreal, focuses on working-class Canadians and gay issues. Wadi Mouawad (b. 1968) was born in Lebanon and has written plays about his displaced community in Canada. Canadian Hannah Moscovitch (b. 1978) has dealt with feminist and Jewish issues in her work. The theatre company Buddies in Bad Times, established in 1979, is committed to gay and lesbian theatre. In the 1980s, feminist theatres in Australia included Home Cooking Theatre (1981) and Vital Statistix (1984).

There are also Canadian and Australian artists who present performance art, discussed earlier, and multimedia works. The French Canadian Robert Lepage (b. 1957) is a well-known director, creator of theatrical and operatic productions, and actor. In 1993, he founded Ex Machina, a multimedia performance center in Quebec City. Lepage is probably best known for *KÁ*, the Cirque du Soleil production he staged in Las Vegas in 2005. Australia also has many contemporary performance artists, such as Mike Parr (b. 1945).

## PLAYING YOUR PART: THINKING ABOUT THEATRE

1. In what ways does the enactment of a ritual or ceremony resemble a theatrical presentation? What elements do the two events have in common? What are the differences? What do we learn about both ceremonies and theatre by observing the differences?
2. Have you ever seen a theatre presentation of a play or production from another part of the world—from Asia, eastern Europe, the Middle East, Latin America, Canada, or Australia? What struck you about the performance: the similarities to your world, or the differences?

3. What can we learn about other countries and other cultures by seeing their theatrical presentations? How does theatre compare with news accounts for providing insight into cultures and countries other than our own?

## SUMMARY

1. Feminist theatre and women playwrights came to the forefront in the 1960s and 1970s and have continued to accelerate ever since.
2. LGBTQ theatre in all its aspects became well established by the beginning of the twenty-first century.
3. Diverse theatres explores the establishment and continuing importance of theatre by and for African Americans, Asian Americans, Latino/a Americans, and Native Americans.
4. The modern era is marked by increasing globalization in theatre, with more and more communication and cross-pollination—a feature of much of modern society, including the arts.
5. A number of countries in Asia and the West have theatre traditions that stretch back hundreds, and in some cases thousands, of years
6. Asian theatre has both traditional and modern branches. In places like Japan, both types of theatre remain particularly active.
7. Theatre in India today is largely produced by numerous amateur groups.
8. Despite prohibition in Muslim countries, theatre has developed in certain Middle Eastern countries. In Israel, theatre is quite active.
9. Theatre in Africa builds on traditional forms and influences from the various colonizers.
10. Theatres in Russia and the countries of eastern Europe have long traditions, but many of these theatres were curtailed or interrupted during the years of the Soviet Union: the 1940s until 1989–1991.
11. European and British theatre continue to thrive. Both are well known for national theatres as well as active

playwrights and directors.

**12**. Latin American theatre has roots in Spanish and Portuguese drama.

**13**. Theatres in Canada and Australia remain active and vibrant.

**Design Elements:** In Focus box (spotlight): ©Exactostock/SuperStock; Playing Your Part box (theatre seats): ©Ron Chapple/Getty Images

# Plays That May Be Read Online

The following is a list of plays that are used as examples to highlight key concepts in *Theatre Experience*, 14th edition, and that can be read online. Any play in this edition that can be found on the Internet is highlighted in blue typeface. Should you want to read any of these plays, or if your teacher has assigned one, you can refer to this list and find an online version.

*Abraham and Isaac*
www.wwnorton.com/college/english/nael/noa/pdf/13BromePlay_1_12.pdf

*Adding Machine, The* (Rice, Elmer)
www.scribd.com/doc/25952449/Elmer-Rice-The-Adding-Machine

*Alchemist, The* (Jonson, Ben)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/4081

*All for Love* (Dryden, John)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2062

*All's Well That Ends Well* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1125

*Antigone* (Sophocles)
http://classics.mit.edu/Sophocles/antigone.html

*Antony and Cleopatra* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2268

*Arms and the Man* (Shaw, George Bernard)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/3618

*Bacchae, The* (Euripides)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/35173

*Birds, The* (Aristophanes)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/3013

*Blood Wedding* (Lorca, Federico Garcia)
www.poetryintranslation.com/klineasbloodwedding.htm

*Brand* (Ibsen, Henrik)
http://archive.org/details/cu31924026309199

*Busie Body, The* (Centlivre, Susanna)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/16740

*Caesar and Cleopatra* (Shaw, George Bernard)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/3329

*Candida* (Shaw, George Bernard)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/4023

*Chantecler* (Rostand, Edmond)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/10747

*Cherry Orchard, The* (Chekhov, Anton)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/7986

*Cid, The* (Corneille, Pierre)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/14954

*Clouds, The (*Aristophanes*)*
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2562

*Comedy of Errors, The* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/23046

*Country Wife, The* (Wycherley, William)
http://archive.org/details/countrywifecomed00wych

*Cymbeline* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1133

*Cyrano de Bergerac* (Rostand, Edmond)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1254

*Doctor in Spite of Himself, The* (Molière)
http://archive.org/details/dramaticworksofm01moliiala

*Doll's House, A* (Ibsen, Henrik)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2542

*Dream Play, The* (Strindberg, August)
www.archive.org/details/playsbyaugustst00bjgoog

*Electra* (Euripides) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/14322

*Electra* (Sophocles)
http://classics.mit.edu/Sophocles/electra.html

*Emperor Jones*, *The* (O'Neill, Eugene)
http://archive.org/details/emperorjones00onegoog

*Enemy of the People, An* (Ibsen, Henrik)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2446

*Eumenides, The* (*The Furies*) (Aeschylus)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/8604

*Everyman* http://archive.org/details/everyman00newy

*Every Man in His Humour* (Jonson, Ben)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/3694

*Every Man Out of His Humour* (Jonson, Ben)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/3695

*Faust* (Goethe, Johann Wolfgang von)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/14460

*Frogs, The* (Aristophanes)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/7998

*Ghosts* (Ibsen, Henrik) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/8121

*Government Inspector (The Inspector General)* (Gogol, Nikolai) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/3735

*Great God Brown, The* (O'Neill, Eugene)
*http://gutenberg.net.au/ebooks04/0400091h.html*

*Hairy Ape, The* (O'Neill, Eugene)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/4015

*Hamlet* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1524

*Heartbreak House* (Shaw, George Bernard)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/3543

*Hedda Gabler* (Ibsen, Henrik)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/4093

*Henry IV, Pt. I* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2251

*Henry IV, Pt. 2* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1117

*Henry V* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1119

*House of Bernarda Alba, The* (Lorca, Federico Garcia)
www.poetryintranslation.com/PITBR/Spanish/AlbaActI.ht

m

*Importance of Being Earnest, The* (Wilde, Oscar) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/844

*Julius Caesar* (Shakespeare, William) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2263

*King Lear* (Shakespeare, William) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2266

*King Stag, The* (Gozzi, Carlo) www.epc-library.com/freeview/F_1814.pdf

*Libation Bearers* (Aeschylus) http://records.viu.ca/~johnstoi/aeschylus/libationbearers.htm

*Life Is a Dream* (Calderon de la Barca, Pedro) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2587

*Little Clay Cart, The* (Sudraka) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/21020

*London Merchant, The* (Lillo, George) http://archive.org/details/londonmerchanto00lillgoog

*Love's Labour's Lost* (Shakespeare, William) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1109

*Lysistrata* (Aristophanes) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/7700

*Macbeth* (Shakespeare, William) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1129

*Major Barbara* (Shaw, George Bernard) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/3790

*Marriage of Figaro, The* (Beumarchais, Pierre) http://oll.libertyfund.org/?option=com_staticxt&staticfile=show.php%3Ftitle=1563&Itemid=27

*Master Builder, The* (Ibsen, Henrik) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/4070

*Measure for Measure* (Shakespeare, William) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1126

*Medea* (Euripides) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/35451

*Menaechmi, The* (Plautus)
www.perseus.tufts.edu/hopper/text?doc=Perseus:text:1999.02.0101

*Merchant of Venice, The* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2243

*Merry Wives of Windsor, The* (Shakespeare, William)
http://shakespeare.mit.edu/merry_wives/full.html

*Midsummer Night's Dream, A* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1514

328

*Misanthrope, The* (Molière)
http://archive.org/details/comedies00molirich

*Miser, The* (Molière) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/6923

*Miss Julie* (Strindberg, August)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/14347

*Mrs. Warren's Profession* (Shaw, George Bernard)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1097

*Much Ado About Nothing* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2240

*No Exit* (Sartre, Jean Paul)
http://archive.org/stream/NoExit/NoExit_djvu.txt

*Oedipus the King* (*King Oedipus*) *(Sophocles)*
http://classics.mit.edu/Sophocles/oedipus.html

*Othello* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1531

*Peer Gynt* (Ibsen, Henrik)
http://archive.org/details/peergyntadramat01ibsegoog

*Phaedra* (Phedre) (Racine, Jean)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1977

*Pirates of Penzance, The* (Gilbert, W. S., and Sullivan, Arthur) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/808

*Prometheus Bound* (Aeschylus)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/8714

*Pygmalion* (Shaw, George Bernard)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/3825

*Richard II* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1111

*Richard III* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2257

*Rivals, The* (Sheridan, Richard Brinsley)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/24761

*Romeo and Juliet* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1513

*R.U.R.* (Capek, Karel)
http://ebooks.adelaide.edu.au/c/capek/karel/rur/

*Saint Joan* (Shaw, George Bernard)
http://archive.org/details/SaintJoan

*School for Scandal, The* (Sheridan, Richard Brinsley)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1929

*School for Wives, The* (Molière)
http://archive.org/details/comedies00molirich

*Sea-Gull, The* (Chekhov, Anton)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1754

*Second Shepherds' Play, The*
www.gutenberg.org/files/19481/19481-h/19481-h.htm

*Servant of Two Masters, The* (Goldoni, Carlo)
http://gutenberg.ca/ebooks/goldonident-twomasters/goldonident-twomasters-00-h.html

*Shakuntala* (Kalidasa) www.sacred-texts.com/hin/sha/index.htm

*Six Characters in Search of an Author* (Pirandello, Luigi)
www.ibiblio.org/eldritch/lp/six.htm

*Sotoba Komachi* (Zeami)
http://etext.virginia.edu/toc/modeng/public/WalSoto.html

*Tamburlaine the Great* (Marlowe, Christopher)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1094

*Taming of the Shrew, The* (Shakespeare, William)
http://shakespeare.mit.edu/taming_shrew/full.html

*Tartuffe* (Molière) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2027

*Tempest, The* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/23042

*Three Sisters, The* (Chekhov, Anton)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/7986

*Tragical History of Dr. Faustus, The* (Marlowe, Christopher) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/779

*Troilus and Cressida* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1790

*Twelfth Night* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1526

*Two Gentlemen of Verona, The* (Shakespeare, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1108

*Uncle Vanya* (Chekhov, Anton)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1756

*Volpone* (Jonson, Ben) www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/4039

*Way of the World, The* (Congreve, William)
www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1292

*Would-Be Gentleman, The* (Molière)
http://archive.org/details/comedies00molirich

# Glossary

**Aesthetic distance** Physical or psychological separation or detachment of audience from dramatic action, usually considered necessary for artistic illusion.

**Allegory** Symbolic representation of abstract themes through characters, action, and other concrete elements of a play.

**Antagonist** Opponent of the protagonist in a drama.

**Arena** Stage entirely surrounded by the audience; also known as *circle theatre* or *theatre-in-the-round*.

**Auteur** French term for "author." When used to describe a director it suggests one who makes drastic alterations and transformations to a traditional script.

**Black box** A theatre space that is open, flexible, and adaptable, usually without fixed seating. The stage–audience configuration can be rearranged to suit the individual requirements of a given production, making it both economical and particularly well suited to experimental work.

**Blocking** Pattern and arrangement of performers' movements onstage with respect to each other and to the stage space, usually set by the director.

**Bourgeois or domestic drama** Drama dealing with problems—particularly family problems—of middle- and lower-class characters. There are serious and comic domestic dramas.

**Box** Small private compartment for a group of spectators built into the walls of traditional proscenium-arch and other theatres.

**Build** To create a costume from scratch in a costume shop.

**Burlesque** A ludicrous, comic imitation of a dramatic form, play, piece of literature, or other popular entertainment.

**Casting** Fitting performers into roles.

**Climax** The highpoint in the development of a dramatic plot.

**Comedy** In general, a play that is light in tone, is concerned with issues that point out the excesses and folly of human behavior, has a happy ending, and is designed to amuse.

**Comedy of ideas** A comedy in which the humor is based on intellectual and verbal aspects of comedy rather than physical comedy or comedy of

character. A drama whose emphasis is on the clash of ideas, as exemplified in the plays of George Bernard Shaw.

**Comedy of manners** Form of comic drama that became popular in the English Restoration, that is set within sophisticated society, while poking fun at its characters' social pretensions, usually through verbal wit.

**Comic premise** Idea or concept in a comedy that turns the accepted notion of things upside down.

**Commedia dell'arte** Form of comic theatre, originating in Italy in the sixteenth century, in which dialogue was improvised around a scenario involving a set of stock characters, each with a traditional costume, name, and often mask.

**Complication** Introduction, in a play, of a new force, which creates a new balance of power and entails a delay in reaching the climax.

**Computer-assisted design (CAD)** Designs created by computer. All features of a set design, including ground plans, elevations, and walls, can be indicated by computer, and variations and alternations can be easily created and displayed.

**Concept musical** A musical that is built around an idea or a theme rather than a story.

**Corral** Theatre building of the Spanish golden age, usually located in the courtyard of a series of adjoining buildings.

**Crisis** A point in a play when events and opposing forces are at a crucial moment, and when the course of further action will be determined. There may be a series of crises leading to the definitive climax.

330

---

**Cues** Any prearranged signal—such as the last words in a speech, a piece of business, or any action or lighting change—that indicates to a performer or stage manager that it is time to proceed to the next line or action.

**Deus ex machina** ("DEH-oos eks MAH-kih-nah") Literally, "god from a machine," a resolution device in classic Greek drama; hence, intervention of supernatural forces—usually at the last moment— to save the action from its logical conclusion. In modern drama, an arbitrary and coincidental solution.

**Director** In American usage, the person responsible for the overall unity of a production and for coordinating the work of contributing artists. The American director is the equivalent of the British producer and the French *metteur-en-scène* ("meh-TURR ahn SENN").

**Directorial concept** The controlling idea, vision, or point of view that the director feels is appropriate for the play; it should create a unified theatrical experience for the audience.

**Distressing** Making a costume look weathered or worn.

**Downstage** Front of the stage, toward the audience.

**Dramaturg (or literary manager)** On the staff of a theatre, a person who consults with and advises authors and directors, writes program notes, and

edits scripts.

**Drapers** Technicians who pattern, pin, and drape the fabric to fit the actors in a production perfectly.

**Dress rehearsal** The first full performances of a production before performances for the public.

**Emotional recall** Stanislavski's exercise that helps the performer present realistic emotions. The performer feels a character's emotion by thinking of the conditions surrounding an event in his or her own life that led to a similar emotion.

**Ensemble playing** Acting that stresses the total artistic unity of a group performance rather than individual performances.

**Environmental sounds** Noises of everyday life that help create a sense of reality in a production.

**Environmental theatre** A type of theatre, made popular in the 1960s, that attempts to eliminate the distinction between audience and acting space and that emphasizes a multiple focus for the audience rather than a single focus.

**Exposition** Information necessary for an understanding of the story but not covered by the action onstage; events or knowledge from the past, or occurring outside the play, that must be introduced so that the audience can understand the characters or plot.

**Expressionism** The attempt in drama to depict the subjective state of a character or group of characters through such nonrealistic techniques as distortion, striking images, and poetic language.

**Farce** A subclass of comedy with emphasis on exaggerated plot complications and with few or no intellectual pretensions.

**Flashback** In a narrative or story, movement back to a time in the past to show a scene or an event before the narrative resumes at the point at which it was interrupted.

**Flat** A scenic unit consisting of canvas stretched on a wooden frame often used with similar units to create a set.

**Fly loft** Space above the stage where scenery may be lifted out of sight by ropes and pulleys.

**Fourth wall** Convention, in a proscenium-arch theatre, that the audience is looking into a room through an invisible fourth wall.

**Front of the house** Portion of a theatre reserved for the audience; sometimes called simply the *house*.

**Genre** A French word meaning category. In theatre, genre denotes the category into which a play falls: for example, tragedy, comedy, or tragicomedy.

**Ground plan** A blueprint or floor plan of the stage indicating the placement of scenery, furniture, doors and windows, and the various levels of the stage, as well as the walls of rooms, platforms, and the like.

**Happenings** Nonliterary theatrical events, developed in the 1960s, in which the script is replaced with a scenario that provides for chance occurrences, and are performed (often only once) in such places as parks and street corners.

**Heightened realism** Also known as *selective realism*, refers to plays in which characters and their actions resemble real life but a certain license is allowed for other elements in the play.

**Heroic drama** Serious but basically optimistic drama written in verse or elevated prose, with noble or heroic characters in extreme situations or unusual adventures.

**Imitation** To simulate or copy behavior observed in real life.

**Immersive theatre** In immersive theatre, audience members play an active role in some way, often moving through a performance space, sometimes even choosing where they should go within that space and what they should see and do. Many such productions use transformed, redesigned spaces as well as requiring audience members to engage in a complete sensory experience (touch, smell, even taste of foods and drink).

331

---

**Incongruity** In comedy, incongruity usually refers to a character's inappropriate behavior or actions for a specific circumstance resulting in our laughter.

**Magic if** Stanislavski's acting exercise that requires the performer to ask, "How would I react *if* I were in this character's position?"

**Managing director** In nonprofit theatre organizations, the individual who controls resources and expenditures.

**Mediated arts** The mediated arts, which include radio, film, television, digital streaming, and the like, are performances captured or recorded through the use of other types of media.

**Melodrama** Dramatic form made popular in the nineteenth century that emphasized action and spectacular effects and also used music to underscore the action; it had stock characters, usually with clearly defined villains and heroes.

**Motivated sounds** Sounds called for by the script.

**Multifocus theatre** An environment in which there is more than one playing area.

**Multimedia theatre** Use of electronic media, such as slides, film, and videotape, in live theatrical presentations.

**Musical theatre** A type of theatre that integrates songs, spoken dialogue, acting, and dance. The story and emotions are underscored and enhanced by the music and dance, which are fully integrated into the plot.

**Naturalism** Attempts to put onstage exact copies of everyday life; sometimes also called slice-of-life drama.

**Nonrealism (or departures from realism)** All types of theatre that depart from observable reality.

**Obstacle** That which delays or prevents the achieving of a goal by a character. An obstacle creates complication and conflict.

**Orchestra** A circular playing space in ancient Greek theatres; in modern times, the ground-floor seating in a theatre auditorium.

**Pantomime** A form of theatrical presentation that relies on dance, gesture, and physical movement without speech.

**Performance art** Experimental theatre that initially incorporated elements of dance and visual arts into performance. Since performance art often is based on the vision of an individual performer or director rather than playwright, the autobiographical monologue and solo performance have become popular performance art forms.

**Platform stage** Elevated stage with no proscenium.

**Plot** As distinct from story, patterned arrangements of events and characters in a drama, with incidents selected and arranged for maximum dramatic impact.

**Postmodernism** A contemporary concept suggesting that artists and audiences have gone beyond the modernist movements of realism and departures from realism and such categories as “high art” and “popular art.”

**Previews** Tryout performances of a production before an audience, preceding the official “opening” performance.

**Producer** In American usage, the person responsible for the business side of a production, including raising the necessary money. (In British usage, a producer for many years was the equivalent of an American director.)

**Prop** Properties; objects that are used by performers onstage or are necessary to complete a set.

**Proscenium** (“pro-SEEN-ee-um”) Arch or frame surrounding the stage opening in a box or picture stage.

**Protagonist** Principal character in a play, the one whom the drama is about.

**Pull** To choose a costume from an inventory owned by a theatre company or costume warehouse.

**Rake** (1) To position scenery on a slant or at an angle other than parallel or perpendicular to the curtain line. (2) An upward slope of the stage floor away from the audience.

**Realism** Broadly, an attempt to present onstage people, places, and events corresponding to those in everyday life.

**Reinforcement** The amplification of sounds produced by a performer or a musical instrument.

**Rendering** A complete drawing of a set, usually in color.

**Ritual** Ceremonial event, often religious, that takes place in a prescribed sequence.

**Role playing** In everyday life, the acting out of a particular role by copying the expected social behavior of that position.

**Romanticism** Nineteenth-century dramatic movement that imitated the episodic structure of Shakespeare, and thematically focused on the gulf between human beings' spiritual aspirations and physical limitations.

**Satire** Comic form, using irony and exaggeration, to attack and expose folly and vice.



---

**Scrim** Thin, open-weave fabric that is nearly transparent when lit from behind and opaque when lit from the front.

**Shinkgeki** Modern Japanese theatre.

**Site-specific companies** Theatre groups that create productions for specific nontheatre locations.

**Slapstick** Type of comedy, or comic business, that relies on ridiculous physical activity—often violent in nature—for its humor.

**Soliloquy** Speech in which a character who is alone onstage speaks inner thoughts aloud.

**Spine** Also known as *main action*, the spine is determined by the goal or primary objective of all the characters in a play, both collectively and individually.

**Stage house** Stage floor and the space around it to the side walls, as well as the space above it up to the grid.

**Stage left** Left side of the stage from the point of view of a performer facing the audience.

**Stage right** Right side of the stage from the point of view of a performer facing the audience.

**Stitchers** Technicians who sew all of the costumes for a production.

**Stock characters** Two-dimensional, stereotypical characters.

**Subplot** Sometimes referred to as parallel plot, a secondary plot that reinforces or runs parallel to the major plot in an episodic play.

**Superobjective** What the character wants above all else during the course of the play.

**Symbol** A sign, a visual image, an object, or an action that signifies something else; a visual embodiment of something invisible. A single image or sign stands for an entire idea or larger concept—a flag is a symbol for a nation; a logo is a symbol for a corporation.

**Technical director** Staff member responsible for scheduling, construction, and installation of all equipment; he or she is responsible for guaranteeing that designs are executed according to the designer's specifications.

**Technical rehearsal** A rehearsal that focuses on running through the production with scenery, props, lighting, costumes, and sound for the first time.

**Theatre of the absurd** Twentieth-century plays expressing the dramatists' sense of absurdity and futility of human existence through the dramatic techniques they employ.

**Thrust stage** Stage space that thrusts into the audience space; a stage surrounded on three sides by audience seating.

**Tragedy** A serious drama in which there is a downfall of the primary character.

**Tragicomedy** During the Renaissance, a play having tragic themes and noble characters but a happy ending; today, a play in which serious and comic elements are integrated. Many plays of this type present a comic or ironic treatment of a serious theme.

**Turntable** A circle set into the floor of a stage that is rotated mechanically or electronically to bring one set into view as another disappears.

**Upstage** At or toward the back of the stage, away from the front edge of the stage.

**Wagon stage (or, Wagon)** Low platform mounted on wheels or casters by means of which scenery is moved on- and offstage.

**Well-made plays** Type of play popular in the nineteenth century and early twentieth century that combines apparent plausibility of incident and surface realism with a tightly constructed, highly causal, and contrived plot.

# Notes

## Chapter 1

1 Source: Walter Kerr, “We Call It ‘Live Theatre,’ but Is It?” *New York Times*, January 2, 1972.
2 Jean-Claude van Itallie, *The Serpent: A Ceremony*, written in collaboration with the Open Theater, Atheneum, New York, 1969, p. ix.
3 www.theguardian.com/culture/2003/may/02/artsfeatures.
4 Bernard Beckerman, *Dynamics of Drama: Theory and Method of Analysis*, Knopf, New York, 1970, p. 129.

## Chapter 3

1 Michael Gioia, “How the Great Comet Transformed the Imperial Theatre into an Immersive Russian Supper Club,” *Playbill*, December 1, 2016.
2 “Mimi Lien on the Set Design of ‘The Great Comet of 1812,’” interview conducted and edited by Victoria Myers, *The Interval*, January 4, 2017.
3 Material on the proscenium, arena, and thrust stages was suggested by a booklet prepared by Dr. Mary Henderson for the educational division of Lincoln Center for the Performing Arts.
4 Antonin Artaud, “The Theater and Its Double,” Grove, New York, 1958, pp. 96–97.

## Chapter 4

1 Konstantin Stanislavsky, *An Actor Prepares*, Theatre Arts, New York, 1948, p. 73.
2 Konstantin Stanislavsky, *An Actor Prepares*, Theatre Arts, New York, 1948.
3 Christopher Marlowe, *Doctor Faustus* (1592).
4 Jean Benedetti, *Stanislavski*, Routledge, New York, 1988, p. 217.
5 www.backstage.com/advice-for-actors/professional-tips/how-has-technology-changed-your-acting-career/.
6 David Bridel, “In the Beginning Was the Body,” *American Theatre*, January 2011.

## Chapter 5

1 Robert Viagas, “Playwright Katori Hall Expresses Rage over ‘Revisionist Casting’ of *Mountaintop* with White Dr. Martin Luther King,” *Playbill*,

November 9, 2015.

## Chapter 8

1 Horace Walpole, letter to Anne, Countess of Ossory, August 16, 1776.
2 William Shakespeare, *King Lear* (1606), act V, scene 2.
3 William Shakespeare, *Antony and Cleopatra* (1606), act IV, scene 5.
4 Oscar Wilde, *Lady Windemere's Fan* (1893).
5 Terry Pinkard, *German Philosophy 1760–1860: The Legacy of Idealism*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, 2002, p. 354.
6 Albert Camus, *Le Mythe de Sisyphe*, Gallimard, Paris, 1942, p. 18.
7 From *Waiting for Godot* by Samuel Beckett. Copyright 1954 by Grove Press; renewed copyright 1982 by Samuel Beckett.

## Chapter 9

1 Robert Edmond Jones, *The Dramatic Imagination*, Theatre Arts, New York, 1941, p. 25.

# Index

About Face Theatre, 297–298
*Abraham and Isaac*, 16
Absurdist plots, 192
*Abyssinia*, 299
Accessories and costumes, 239
Acting. *See also* Actors
  believable characters, 74, 79–82
  challenges of, 73–74, 76
  classical, 76–77
  in daily life, 68–69, 71–73
  performances, evaluating, 92–93
  personal roles and, 72
  physical, 82, 83–89
  profession of, 83
  realistic, 18, 74–78, 79
  role playing and, 71–72
  stage, 71–94
  Stanislavski system, 74–78
  synthesis and integration of, 90–92
  training for special forms of, 89
*Acting One* (Cohen), 82
Action onstage, Stanislavski technique of, 78
*The Actor at Work* (Benedetti), 82
Actors. *See also* Acting
  audience, relationship with, 7–8, 9–10
  audience and, 2, 3, 13–15, 71, 83
  body mikes on, 262
  and costumes, 229–230
  and directors, working with, 108–115
  fascination of, to audiences, 93
  range of, 80–81
  social status of, 76–77
  technology and, 83
Actors' Equity Association (AEA), 115

Actors Studio, 79
*Actos*, 304
Adapted spaces, 61
*The Adding Machine* (Rice), 101
Adler, Stella, 79
Aeschylus, 30, 31, 76, 128, 174
  as director, 102
Aesthetic distance, 13
African American stock companies, 299
African American theatre, 299–302
  audience background for, 27
  regional theatres of, 34
  traditions of, 299
African Grove Theatre, 299
African theatre, 240, 314–315
Afrim, Radu, 316
*After the Revolution* (Herzog), 292
*After the War* (Gotanda), 303
Age of enlightenment, 141
*Agitprop* plays, 12, 304
*Aladdin*, 49, 51
al-Bakri, Samia Qazmouz, 313
Albee, Edward, 18, 161, 165, 272
*Alchemist* (Jonson), 164
Aldridge, Ira, 299
*Alice's Rape* (McCauley), 287
Allegory, 100, 101
*The Alley* (al-Bakri), 313
*All My Sons* (Miller), 177
Alloula, Abdelkader, 315
*All's Well That Ends Well* (Shakespeare), 189
Al-Naqqash, Marun, 313
Al-Qabbani, Abu Khalil, 313
Alternative theatre, 34–35, 281–287. *See also* Avant-garde and experimental theatre
Amateur theatre, 36
*Amen Corner* (Baldwin), 300
American contemporary theatre. *See* Contemporary theatre
*An American in Paris*, 212
American Indian Religious Freedom Act, 306
American Repertory Theater (A.R.T.), 96–97
*American Theatre* magazine, 87
Amphitheatre, Greek, 54
Amplification of sound, 259–261
Anachronism, 16
Ancient Greek theatre. *See* Greek theatre

*And So We Walked* (Studi), 307
*Angels in America* (Kushner), 16, 302, 321
  nonrealism of, 18
*Anna in the Tropics* (Cruz), 305
*Annie Get Your Gun*, 276
Antagonists, 131, 166
*Antigone* (Sophocles), 134, 166
*Antony and Cleopatra* (Shakespeare), 147, 158
Appia, Adolphe, 247, 258
Arena stage, 46, 51–53
Argand, Aimé, 246
Argand lamp, 246
Argentinian theatre, 323
Aristophanes, 31, 181
  comic premises of, 182
  nonhuman characters of, 165
Aristotle, 137, 174
*Arms and the Man* (Shaw), 188
*Arsenic and Old Lace* (Kesselring), 172, 182
Artaud, Antonin, 281
  theatre space and, 58–59, 61
*Art* (Reza), 318
Arumugam, Vaneshran, 21
Asaro “mud men,” 240
Asian American theatre, 302–304, 308
Asian theatre, 309–312
  actor training for, 86, 87
  Chinese theatre, 58, 237, 310–311
  demands of, 76, 77
  heroic drama of, 178
  Indian theatre, 309–310
  Influence of, on the West, 133
  Japanese theatre, 58, 77, 91, 171, 312
  make up in, 237
  masks in, 240
  movement and gestures in, 86, 87
  puppetry in, 302–303, 311
Aspillaga, Vanessa, 290–291
*Assassins*, 278
Assistive listening devices (ALDs), 264
*Athalie* (Racine), 77



Atmosphere. *See* Scenery; Sound; Stage lighting; Theatre spaces
Audience, 1–25
  actors, relationship with, 2, 83

background of, 27–32
character types and, 166
composition of, 11
criticism, relation to, 40
direct action of, 13–15
directors as eye of, 110–112
dramaturg for, role of, 40
expectations of, 27, 32–36
group experience of, 10–11
imagination of, 15–19
judgment of, 40
participatory and immersive theatre, 14–15
and physical arrangement of theatres, 45–46
role of, 5–24
scenery, view of, 201
sound, view of, 201
stage lighting, view of, 201
transitory and immediate theatre, 8–9
Auditions, 108–109
Aural designers, 199, 261
Australian theatre, 323–324
Auteur directors, 105–106, 107, 125
Automated light fixtures, 256–257
Avant-garde and experimental theatre, 38, 284. *See also* Nontraditional theatre
European, 317
Japanese, 312
special techniques for, 89, 92
staging of, 58–59, 214
structure in, 154–156
*Avenue Q*, 15, 91, 280
*Awake and Sing*, 110, 272

Baccar, Jalila, 315
*Bacchae* (Euripides), 165
*Backstage* magazine, 83, 88
*Baghdad Burning: Girl Blog from Iraq*, 288
Baker, Annie, 14
Balance of forces in plays, 132
Balconies in theatres, 47
*The Bald Soprano* (Ionesco), 192
Baldwin, James, 300
Baraka, Amiri, 300
Barbagallo, Jess, 298
Barn doors, 256
*Battlefield*, 104
Bean, Richard, 186

Beane, Douglas Carter, 297
Beats, Stanislavski technique of, 78
*Beauty and the Beast*, 18, 234
Bechdel, Alison, 281
Beckerman, Bernard, 8
Beckett, Samuel, 89, 90, 153–154, 191, 193, 282
  nontraditional work of, 281
Bedroom farce, 185
Behn, Aphra, 292
Beijing opera, 133, 309
Bel Geddes, Norman, 247
Believable characters, 74, 79–82
*Belle Reprieve*, 293
*Belleville* (Herzog), 293
Benedetti, Robert, 79, 82
Bennett, Michael, 278
Berlin, Irving, 274, 276
Berman, Sabima, 322
Bernstein, Leonard, 267
Bibiena, Giuseppe di, 49
Bibiena family, 47–49
Bielto, Calixto, 319
*The Big Bang Theory*, 184
Binkley, Howell, 251
Biomechanics, 85
*The Birds* (Aristophanes), 165, 182
*The Birthday Party* (Pinter), 190
Black boxes, 46, 63–64, 260
Blackout, 257
*The Blacks* (Genet), 236
Black theatre. *See* African American theatre
Black Theatre Alliance, 301
*Black Watch*, 317
Blanchett, Cate, 324
Blank, Jessica, 288
*Blasted* (Kane), 319
Blocking, 109
Blogs, 37
*Blood Wedding* (Garcia Lorca), 204–205
*Bloody, Bloody Andrew Jackson*, 220
Boal, Augusto, 12, 13, 322
Bock, Jerry, 271, 277
Body mikes, 262, 263, 264
Body movement, 83–89
Body movement exercises, 85
Bogart, Anne, 87, 107

Bollywood films, 309–310
Bolton Theatre, 48
Book musicals, 274
*The Book of Mormon*, 279
Border lights, 256
Bourgeois drama, 178–180
*The Bourgeois Gentleman*, 138
Boxes in a theatre, 47
*The Boys from Syracuse*, 184
*The Boys in the Band* (Crowley), 296
Bradshaw, Thomas, 302
*Brand* (Ibsen), 128, 152
*Bran Nue Dae*, 324
Brantley, Ben, 34
Bread and Puppet Theatre of San Francisco, 91
Breathing exercises, 84
Brecht, Bertolt, 145, 194, 287
  Asian theatre influence on, 133
  and narrators, use of, 164–165
  theory of storytelling of, 28–29
Brenton, Howard, 319
Breuer, Lee, 107
Bridel, David, 87
*Bring It On: The Musical*, 73
British theatre, 319–320, 321
Broadway theatres, 33, 47
Brook, Peter, 207, 318
  profile of, 104
Brooklyn Academy of Music, 20
Brooksher, Rebecca, 170–171
Brown, Blair, 290–291
Brown, William, 299
Built costumes, 230
Bulbul, Nawar, 313–314
Bullins, Ed, 301
Bunraku puppets, 77, 91
*Buried Child* (Shepard), 272, 275
Burlesque, 181, 185
Burstall, Betty, 324
Burton, Kate, 111
Bush, Anita, 299
Bush, George W., 288
*Bus Stop* (Inge), 206
Butterworth, Jez, 319

Cabarets, 35

*Caesar and Cleopatra* (Shaw), 225
Calhoun, Jeff, 88
Camera point of view, 136–137
*Camino Real* (Williams), 319
Camus, Albert, 190
Canadian theatre, 324
Čapek, Karel, 165
Carl, Patrick, 208
*Carousel*, 124
Carroll, Tim, 84
Case, Sue-Ellen, 137
Casting, 108–109
  color blind and nontraditional, 110
  against type, 108
Casting director, 109
*Cathay: Three Tales of China*, 311
*Cat on a Hot Tin Roof* (Williams), 110, 146, 274
*Cats*, 279
*The Caucasian Chalk Circle* (Brecht), 133, 164–165
Centering, 88
Centlivre, Susanna, 292
Central image
  directorial concept and, 102–105
  lighting and, 252
  stage design and, 208
Century of progress, 141
Ceremonies, as theatre, 68
Chang, Tisa, 303



*Chantecler* (Rostand), 165
Characters, 157–168
  audience and, 166
  believability of, 74, 79–82
  and climactic drama, 147
  comedy of, 183–184
  contrasting, 166–167
  costumes indicating relationships among, 225–228
  with dominant traits, 163, 164
  extraordinary, 157–160
  juxtaposition of, 166–167
  minor, 164
  narrators or chorus as, 164–165
  nonhuman, 165, 228
  orchestration of, 167–168
  realistic *vs*. nonrealistic, 18

representative or quintessential, 160–162
stock, 157, 162–164
superobjective of, 78, 90
symbolic, 228
in theatre of the absurd, 193–194
*Charley's Aunt* (Thomas), 67
*Charlie and the Chocolate Factory*, 49
Chavkin, Rachel, 46
Chekhov, Anton, 78, 208, 273
balance of forces in, 132
dramatic structure of, 152, 153
orchestration of characters of, 167, 168
and realism, 74
scene design of, 197
sound design of, 260
tragedy and comedy of, 190, 192
*The Cherry Orchard* (Chekhov), 78, 111, 132, 153
scene design of, 197
Chicano theatre, 304
*The Children's Hour* (Hellman), 296
Children's theatre, 35
Chinese theatre, 58, 237, 310–311
Chong, Ping, 311
Choreography, in musical theatre, 278–279
Chorus, 164–165
*A Chorus Line*, 278
Christie, Bunny, 197, 204
Churchill, Caryl, 295, 319–320
*The Cid* (Corneille), 178
*Cinderella*, 238
*Circle Mirror Transformation* (Baker), 14
Circle of attention, 75
Circle theatre, 46
*CiVil WarS: A Tree Is Best Measured When It Is Down*, 156
Cixous, Hélène, 137
Clarke, Martha, 286
Classical acting, 76–77
Cleage, Pearl, 302
*The Clean House* (Ruhl), 290–291, 292–293
Cleopatra, 160
Climactic structure, 135–136, 145–152
acts in, 147
construction of, 147
and episodic structure, combining with, 152–153
episodic structure *vs.*, 151
plot in, 146–147

segments or acts in, 147
Climax of play, 135–136, 146
Close-up point of view, 136–137
*Cloud Nine* (Churchill), 319–320
*The Clouds* (Aristophanes), 182
Clurman, Harold, 19
*The Coast of Utopia* (Stoppard), 319
Cohen, Robert, 79, 82
Cole, Bob, 299
Coleridge, Samuel Taylor, 24
Collaboration in theatre, 124
in costume design, 233–234
in lighting design, 258–259
of scene design, 217–220
Collective mind, 10
College and university theatre, 35–36
Collins, Pat, 254
Color
in costume design, 232–233
of light, 253, 254
in scene design, 210
Color-blind casting, 110
Color changers/scrollers, 256
*The Colored Museum* (Wolfe), 302
*The Color Purple*, 208, 209
Comedy, 171, 181–188
of character, 183–184
characteristics of, 181–182
forms of, 185–188
photo essay of forms of, 186
plot complications in, 184–185
techniques of, 183–185
*A Comedy of Errors* (Shakespeare), 184
Comedy of ideas, 188
Comedy of manners, 187–188
Comedy of menace, 190
Comic opera, 274
Comic premise, 182
*Commedia dell'arte*, 162, 163, 184, 239
Commercial producers, 117–118
responsibilities of, chart of, 118
Community theatre, 36
Complications, 134–135
Composition, in scene design, 209
Computer-assisted design (CAD)
in costume design, 230

in scenery design, 216, 217, 218
Computers, for scene changes, 213
Concentration, Stanislavski technique of, 75, 78
Concept, directorial, 101–105
and central image, 102–105
period, 101
and purpose, 105
Concept musical, 278
Congreve, William, 102, 152, 188
Consciousness raising, 72
*The Constant Prince*, 61
Contemporary theatre, 291–324. *See also* Diverse multicultural theatre; Global theatre; Musical theatre
Asian American, 302–304, 308
feminist, 137, 194, 269, 291–294
gay and lesbian, 296
Latino/a, 304–305
LGBTQ theatre, 194, 280–281, 294–298
Native American, 305–306
nontraditional, 281–287
performance art, 286–287
political, 287–289
special techniques used in, 28–29
Contentless Scene of Robert Cohen, 82
Contrast in episodic drama, 150
Contrasting characters, 166–167
Copeau, Jacques, 85, 86
Corneille, Pierre, 82, 178
*Corrales* (Spanish stages), 55, 56
Corthron, Kia, 302
Costume design, 198–199
collaboration in, 233–234
color in, 232–233
elements related to, 234–239
evaluating, 242
fabric in, 233
line, shape, and silhouette, 230–232
objectives of, 223—224
process of, 224–230
technology and, 234
work of, 230
Costumes, 223–242
actors' requirement for, 229–230
consistency in, 230
coordination of, 239–242
line of, 230–232

realistic *vs*. nonrealistic, 18
relationships among characters, indicating, 225–228
role of, 198–199
status and personality of, 225
for symbolic and nonhuman characters, 228
time and place of, 224–225
tone and style, establishing, 224
Counterpoint, 164
Coward, Noël, 187, 188
Crafts and costumes, 239



Craig, Edward Gordon, 247
Created and found spaces, stage design in, 58–63
*Crimes of the Heart* (Henley), 292
Crisis, characters involved in, 135–136
Crisis structure, 145. *See also* Climactic structure
Critics/criticism, 36–39
audience's relationship to, 40
criteria for, 38–39
fact and opinion in, 37–38
reviewers as, 37
Cross-fade, 257
Crothers, Rachel, 292
Crowley, Mart, 296
*The Crucible* (Miller), 101, 129, 179
Cruden, Damian, 201
Cruz, Nilo, 305
Cuban American theatre, 305
Cuban theatre, 323
Cues, lighting, 257
Culture, modern theatre and, 30–32
Cunningham, Merce, 87
*The Curious Incident of the Dog in the Night-Time*, 204, 212, 214
Czech Republic theatre, 316

Dance, 6, 240, 310, 311
demand of, 88
in musical theatre, 280
performance art and, 286
*The Dance and the Railroad* (Hwang), 303
Da Ponte, Lorenzo, 274
Darwin, Charles, 32
Davies, Howard, 197
Davis, Will, 298
*Day of Absence* (Ward), 236
*Death and the King's Horseman* (Soyinka), 315, 316

*Death of a Salesman* (Miller), 161, 179, 272, 311
Deconstruction of the text, 106
de Hartog, Jan, 235
DeLoutherbourg, Philippe Jacques, 246
de Mille, Agnes, 276
Dennehy, Brian, 272
Departures from realism. *See* Nonrealism
Design, role of, 198
Design concept, scenery, 207–208
Designer/front elevations, 218
Designers, 198–199. *See also* Costume design; Lighting designers; Scene designers
*Desire Under the Elms* (O'Neill), 250
*Deus ex machina*, 147
Dialectic, 164
Diamond, Lydia R., 302
*Diapolyekran*, 211
Dimmers, 253
Dinner theatres, 35
*Dionysus in 69*, 58
Direct action, 13–15
Directorial concept, 101–105
Directors, 97–116
  as audience's eye, 110–112
  auteur directors, 105–106, 125
  casting and, 108–109
  dramaturg and, 105
  dress rehearsals and, 113
  duties of, chart of, 116
  evaluating, 121
  evolution of, 102
  movement, pace, rhythm and, 112
  in noncommercial theatres, 118–119
  and performers, 67–94
  physical production and, 108
  postmodern, 106–107
  power and responsibility of, 115–116
  previews and, 113–114
  production managers and, 119–121
  rehearsals and, 109–110
  scripts and, 98–105
  stage managers and, 114–115
  technical rehearsals and, 112–113, 114
  traditional, 98–105
Distressing costumes, 233
Diverse multicultural theatre, 299–308

African American theatre, 27, 34, 299–302
Asian American theatre, 302–304, 308
Latino/a theatre, 304–305
Middle Eastern theatre, 308, 312–314
Native American theatre, 305–308
*The Doctor in Spite of Himself* (Molière), 183
Docudramas, 23, 317
Documentary dramas, 194, 317
Dodson, Owen, 300
*A Doll's House* (Ibsen), 131, 152, 160–161
*A Doll's House, Part 2* (Hnath), 271
Domestic comedy, 187
Domestic drama, 172, 178–180
Dominant trait characters, 163, 164
Donahue, Mike, 128
*Don Giovanni*, 274
Doran, Gregory, 103
*Doubt* (Shanley), 18
Dowling, Joe, 208
Downstage, 50
Doyle, John, 208, 209
Drama
bourgeois, 172, 178–180
comedy, 171, 181–188
domestic, 178–180
heroic, 175–178
melodrama, 180
nature of, 128–129
theatre of the absurd, 190–194, 281
tragedy, 139–141, 172–175
tragicomedy, 188–190, 192
Drama therapy, 14
Dramatic characters. *See* Characters
Dramatic structure, 145–157
climactic, 145–147
patterns as, 153–154
rituals as, 145, 153, 155
Dramatists, 125. *See* Playwrights
Dramaturg, 39–40, 105
Drapers, 229
*The Dream Play* (Strindberg), 18, 258
Dress rehearsal, 113
Dromgoole, Dominic, 150, 151
*Duchess of Malfi* (Webster), 173
Dürrenmatt, Friedrich, 193
*Dutchman* (Baraka), 300

East West Players, 303
Edison, Thomas, 246
Editing sound, 263
Edson, Margaret, 18, 292
Egyptian theatre, 312–313
Einstein, Albert, 32
*Einstein on the Beach*, 20, 156
*Electra* (Aeschylus), 128
*Electra* (Euripides), 128
*Electra* (Sophocles), 18, 128, 166, 178
Elizabethan theatre. *See also* Shakespeare, William
  costumes in, 225
  culture and, 30
  demands of, 77
  music of, 274
  stage design of, 202
  tragic drama in, 140
  women in, 31
Elizabethan thrust stage, 44–45, 56–57
Elizabeth I (queen of England), 30, 160. *See also* Elizabethan theatre
Elliott, Geoff, 249
Ellipsoidal reflector spotlights (ERSs), 256
El-Ramli, Lenin, 315
El Teatro Campesino, 304
*Emotional Creature* (Ensler), 29
Emotional recall, 79
Empathy, 13
*The Emperor Jones* (O'Neill), 107, 285
*The Encounter* (McBurney), 107
*An Enemy of the People* (Ibsen), 273



---

*En Route* (One Step at a Time Like This), 15
Ensemble playing, Stanislavski technique of, 78, 79
Ensler, Eve, 29, 288
Environmental sounds, 261
Environmental theatre, 283
Environment of a theatre, 45–46
Epic theatre, 194
Epigrams, 183
Episodic dramatic structure, 145, 147–152
  and climatic structure, combining with, 152–153
  climatic structure *vs.*, 151
  juxtaposition and contrast in, 150, 151
  overall effect of, 152
Esslin, Martin, 190

*The Eumenides* (Aeschylus), 31
Euripides, 30, 76, 128, 165
*Eurydice* (Ruhl), 249
*Everyman*, 100, 101, 165
*Evita*, 279
Executive directors, 118
Exercises
  body and voice, 85
  breathing, 84
Existential characters, 191, 193
*Exit the King* (Ionesco), 191
*Exonerated* (Blank and Jensen), 288, 317
Expectations of the audience, 27, 32–36
Experimental theatre. *See* Avant-garde and experimental theatre
Exposition, 146
Expressionism, 101, 194
Extraordinary characters, 157–160
  photo essay of, 158–159

Fabric in costume design, 233
Facebook, 37, 83
Fact-based theatre, 22–24
Facts, in criticism, 37–38
Fade, 257
Farag, Alfred, 315
Farber, Yael, 22
Farce, 184, 185, 203–204
FastHorse, Larissa, 307–308
*Faust* (Goethe), 160, 206, 318
Federal Theatre Project, 300
*Fefu and Her Friends* (Fornés), 37–38, 137, 292
*Feminism and Theatre* (Case), 137
Feminist theatre, 137, 194, 269, 291–294
*Fences* (Wilson), 161–162, 302
Ferber, Edna, 274
Fichandler Stage, 53
*Fiddler on the Roof*, 270–271, 276, 277, 280
Films
  in India, 309–310
  musicals based on, 280
  point of view in, 136–137
  and television, 6–7
  theatre *vs.*, 7–8
*Finding Neverland*, 96–97
Finley, Karen, 286–287
First hand to the costume designer, 233

Five Lesbian Brothers, 297
Flashbacks, 16
Flat, 213, 214
Floodlights, 256
*Flower Drum Song*, 110
Fly loft, 213
Fo, Dario, 318–319
*FOB* (Hwang), 303
Focus and composition of stage lighting, 248
*Follies*, 278
Followspot, 256, 259
Footlights, 253–254
*Forbidden Broadway*, 185–187
Foreman, Richard, 155, 156, 283, 284
  as auteur director, 106, 107
Fornés, Maria Irene, 37–38, 137, 292, 305
Forum Theatre, 12
Fosse, Bob, 279
*The Fourposter* (de Hartog), 235
*4000 Miles* (Herzog), 293
Fourth wall, 46, 47
Frayn, Michael, 184
French theatre, 318
Fresnel, Auguste, 256
Fresnel soft-edged spotlight, 256
Freud, Sigmund, 32
Friedman, Thomas, 309
Fringe theatre, 321
*The Frogs* (Aristophanes), 31, 165
Front of the house, 47, 119
  lighting of, 254
Fry, Stephen, 84
*Fuerza Bruta (Brute Force)*, 323
Fugard, Athol, 314
*Fun Home*, 281
Fywell, Tim, 223

Gaines, Barbara, 227
Galati, Frank, 251
Garcia Lorca, Federico, 175, 204–205, 207
Garrick, David, 246
Garson, Barbara, 288
Gattelli, Christopher, 88
Gay and lesbian theatre, 296
Gehry, Frank, 125
Geiogamah, Hanay, 306

Gels and stage lighting, 253
Gender-bender groups, 297
General mike, 263
Genet, Jean, 236
Genres, theatrical
  additional forms, 194
  bourgeois drama, 178–180
  comedy, 171, 181–188
  domestic drama, 178–180
  heroic drama, 175–178
  melodrama, 180
  theatre of the absurd, 190–194, 281
  tragedy, 139–141, 172–175
  tragicomedy, 188–190, 192
  types of, 171–172
George II, duke of Saxe-Meiningen, 102
German theatre, 317–318
Gershwin, George, 275
Gershwin, Ira, 276
*Ghetto* (Sobol), 314
*Ghostlands* (Owens-Greygrass), 307
*Ghosts* (Ibsen), 18, 146, 152
Gibson, William, 235
Gilbert, W. S., 274, 275
Giron, Arthur, 305
Given circumstances of Stanislavski, 75
Glaspell, Susan, 292
*The Glass Menagerie* (Williams), 22, 75, 164, 179, 272
*Glengarry Glen Ross* (Mamet), 272–273
Global theatre, 269, 308–324
  in Africa, 240, 314–315
  in Canada and Australia since World War II, 323–324
  documentary dramas, 317
  in India, China, and Japan, 309–312
  in Latin America, 321–323
  in Middle East, 308, 312–314
  overview of, 308–309
  in Russia and eastern Europe, 315–316
  in western Europe, Britain and Ireland, 317–321
*God of Carnage* (Reza), 318
Goebbels, Heiner, 83
Goethe, Johann Wolfgang von, 160, 178, 206, 318
Gold, Sam, 14
*Golda's Balcony* (Gibson), 235
*Golden Boy* (Odets), 177, 272
Goldini, Carlo, 186

Goldsmith, Oliver, 171, 188
Goldstein, Jess, 225
*Good Woman of Setzuan* (Brecht), 133
Gotanda, Philip Kan, 303
Gozzi, Carlo, 286
*The Grapes of Wrath* (Steinbeck), 251
Gray, Meghan, 249
Gray, Spaulding, 287
*The Great Day* (Hurston), 300



*The Great God Brown* (O'Neill), 239
Greek theatre, 131, 171, 271
  amphitheatre of, 54
  chorus in, 164, 165
  climactic structure of, 145, 147
  culture and, 30
  demands of, 76, 77
  heroic drama of, 178
  masks in, 76, 171, 240
  music of, 274
  stage design for, 47, 51, 55, 202
  tragic drama in, 140, 141, 173
  women in, 31
*The Green Bird* (Gozzi), 286
Greenidge, Kirsten, 250
Grimm, David, 241
Grotowski, Jerzy, 87, 106, 283
  dramatic structure and, 154
  theatre space and, 58, 59, 61
Ground plan, 210
Groups, psychology of, 10–11
Guare, John, 71
Guerrilla theatre, 61
Guthrie, Tyrone, 324
Guthrie Theater, 64
*Guys and Dolls*, 280
Gwynn, Nell, 77
*Gypsy*, 280

Hagen, Uta, 79
*Hair*, 278, 288
*Hairspray*, 231, 237
Hairstyles in costume design, 237, 238
Hall, Katori, 110, 302
Hall, Michael C., 92
Hall, Peter, 165

Hallinan, Frank, 114
*Hamilton*, 33, 110, 232, 279–280, 305
*Hamletmachine* (Müller), 318
*Hamlet* (Shakespeare), 102, 134, 140, 255, 285
  conflict in, 135, 136
  juxtaposition of scenes in, 151
  nonrealism of, 18, 21
  spine of, 99
  staging of, 102–105
  theatrical genres and, 171, 188
Hammerstein, Oscar II, 274, 276
Handke, Peter, 318
Hand puppets, 91
Hansberry, Lorraine, 20, 179, 299
  *A Raisin in the Sun*, 18, 20, 292, 300
Happenings, 282–283
*Happy Days* (Beckett), 89, 90
Hard flat, 213
Hare, David, 319
Harnick, Sheldon, 271, 277
Harper, Elizabeth, 251
Hart, Lorenz, 184
Havel, Václav, 316
Hawkins, Corey, 70–71
Hayward, Dubose, 276
*Hedda Gabler* (Ibsen), 123, 146, 167
*The Heidi Chronicles* (Wasserstein), 292
Heightened realism, 100–101
Hellman, Lillian, 127, 272, 292, 296
*Hello, Dolly!*, 277, 280
Hemesath, Matthew, 226
Henley, Beth, 292
*Henry IV, Part I* (Shakespeare), 188
Herman, Jerry, 277
Heroes, tragic, 173, 174
Heroic drama, 172, 175–178
Heroines, tragic, 173, 174
Herzog, Amy, 293
Hewlett, James, 299
Hilferty, Susan, 228
*Hir* (Mac), 298
Hispanic theatre, 304–305
Hitchcock, Alfred, 213
Hnath, Lucas, 271
Hoffman, Constance, 165
Hoffman, Miranda, 206

Hollywood flat, 213
Honeyman, Janice, 145, 227
Hope, Roxanna, 123, 146
House, in a theatre, 47
*The House of Bernarda Alba* (Garcia Lorca), 175, 205, 207
Howe, Tina, 292
*How I Learned to Drive* (Vogel), 292
Hrosvitha, 292
Hudes, Quiara Alegreia, 305
Hughes, Ted, 104
Human beings, theatre's focus, 9
Hunt, Helen, 164
Huntley, Paul, 237, 238
Hurston, Zora Neale, 300
Hwang, David Henry, 286, 303

Ibsen, Henrik, 106, 123, 273
  character traits in plays of, 128, 167
  climactic drama of, 146
  *A Doll's House*, 131, 160
  episodic drama of, 152
  *Ghosts*, 18
  *Hedda Gabler*, 146
  and realism, 74
*The Iceman Cometh* (O'Neill), 179, 272
*I Do! I Do!*, 235
Illusion, creation of, 15
*The Illusion* (Corneille), 82
*The Imaginary Invalid* (Molière), 163
Imaginary worlds of theatre, 19–24
  realistic *vs*. nonrealistic elements, 20–22
  stage reality, 22–24
Imagination of the audience, 15–19
  metaphors, 17–19
  symbols, 17
Imitation, acting as, 68, 71
Immersive theatre, 14–15
*The Importance of Being Earnest* (Wilde), 183
*The Impromptu of Versailles* (Molière), 102
Improvisation, 155
Incentive in plays, 132
Incongruity, 183
*In Dahomey*, 299
*Indecent* (Vogel), 153
Indian theatre, 309–310
Indonesian rod puppets, 91

Inge, William, 206, 298
Inner truth, 78
Integration, 90–92
Intensity of stage lighting, 253
International Centre for Theatre Research, 104
*In the Heights*, 110, 216, 305
*In the Next Room (or the Vibrator Play)* (Ruhl), 294
*The Investigation* (Weiss), 317
Invisible Theatre, 12
Ionesco, Eugene, 165, 191, 192, 281
Irish theatre, 320–321
Irving, Henry, 77
Irwin, Bill, 287
Israeli theatre, 314
Italian theatre, 318–319

Jacobs, Sally, 207
Jacobs-Jenkins, Branden, 302
Janney, Allison, 70–71
Japanese theatre, 58, 171, 312
  kabuki in, 77, 237, 309, 312
  puppetry of, 77, 91
*Jekyll and Hyde the Musical*, 237
Jelinek, Elfried, 294
*Jelly's Last Jam* (Wolfe), 302
Jensen, Erik, 288
*Jesus, Confucius, and John Lennon* (Yexin), 311
*Jesus Christ Superstar*, 251, 279
*Joe Turner's Come and Gone* (Wilson), 301
John, Elton, 285
Johnson, Philip, 48
Johnson, William, 299
Jones, Robert Edmond, 203
Jones, Tom, 235
Jonson, Ben, 30, 157, 164
Jordan, Jeremy, 96–97
*Journey to the West*, 86
*Juan Darien*, 286
Jukebox musicals, 280
*Julius Caesar* (Shakespeare), 103, 225, 288
Junji, Kinoshita, 312
Juxtaposition
  of characters, 166–167
  in episodic drama, 150, 151
  in musical theatre, 156

Kabuki, 77, 237, 309, 312
Kall, Thomas, 33
Kane, Sarah, 319
Kang, Suhyun, 235
Kani, Atandwa, 144–145
Kani, John, 21, 103
Kantor, Tadeusz, 316
*Kaspar* (Handke), 318
Kathakali, 236, 309, 310
Kaufman, MJ, 298
Kaur, Lynn Japjit, 22
Keen, Julie, 250
Kenny, Mike, 201
Kern, Jerome, 274, 276
Kerr, Walter, 7
Kesselring, Joseph, 172, 182
Khon dancers, 240
Kierkegaard, Søren, 190
Kinetic stage, 211
King, Bruce, 306
King, Rodney, 287
*The King and I*, 110, 232, 303
*King Lear* (Shakespeare), 28, 107
  episodic structure in, 148–149
  subplot of, 150
  tragedy of, 140, 141, 173
*King Shotaway*, 299
*Kinky Boots*, 281, 297
Kinney, Terry, 131
*Kiss Me, Kate*, 277, 280
Kitchen (performance space), 34
Kopit, Arthur, 139
Kraigher, Alenka, 107
Kramer, Larry, 296, 297
Kreimendehl, Basil, 298
Kreitzer, Carson, 293
Kron, Lisa, 297
Kurt, Stefan, 155
Kushner, Tony, 16, 18, 82

*La Cage aux Folles*, 281
*The Ladies of the Camellias*, 225
Lafayette Players, 299
Lane, Nathan, 272
Language
  realistic *vs*. nonrealistic, 18

in theatre of the absurd, 193
Lansbury, Angela, 278
*Laterna magika*, 211
Latin American theatre, 321–323
Latino/a theatre in the United States, 304–305
Lauan, 213
“The Laugh of the Medusa” (Cixous), 137
Laurents, Arthur, 267
Layout, physical, 210
Lebow, Will, 130
LeCompte, Elizabeth, 107, 285
Lecoq, Jacques, 85–86
Lee, Young Jean, 303
Lenkiewicz, Rebecca, 294
Lennox, Amy, 92
Leon, Kenny, 27, 302
Lepage, Robert, 324
Lerner, Alan Jay, 157
*Les Liaisons Dangereuses*, 222–223
*A Letter to Queen Victoria*, 89, 156
Leveaux, David, 271
Levin, Hanoch, 314
LGBTQ theatre, 194, 294–298
musicals of, 280–281
Lien, Mimi, 46
*Lies Like Truth* (Clurman), 19
Light boards, 257–258
Lighting. *See* Stage lighting
Lighting controls, 257–258
Lighting design, 199. *See also* Stage lighting
objectives and functions of, 247–252
process of, 252–253
special effects in, 264–265
Lighting designers, 252–259
collaborators for, 258–259
resources for, 255–258
Light plot, 252
Lillo, George, 178
Lin, Maya, 17
Lincoln, Abraham, 134
Line
of costumes, 230–232
in stage design, 209
Linney, Laura, 126–127
*The Lion King*, 49, 228, 285–286
nonrealism of, 18

*Listen to Your Heart!*, 244–245
Literary manager, 39–40, 105
*Little Foxes* (Hellman), 126–127, 272
*A Little Night Music*, 278
Live theatre, defined, 5
Living Theater, 154
Llewellyn, Olivia, 222–223
Lloyd Webber, Andrew, 251, 279
Locales
  and climactic drama, 147
  establishing, 207
Loewe, Frederick, 157
*The London Merchant* (Lillo), 178
Long, William Ivey, 231
*Long Day's Journey into Night* (O'Neill), 132, 175, 176, 179, 272
Lope de Vega, 147
Lopez, Robert, 279
*The Lost Colony*, 231
Loudspeakers, 263
Louizos, Anna, 216, 254
Louw, Illka, 227
*Love and Information* (Churchill), 295
*Love's Labour's Lost* (Shakespeare), 44–45
*The Love Song of J. Robert Oppenheimer* (Kreitzer), 293
*Love! Valour! Compassion!* (McNally), 18
*Luck of the Irish* (Greenidge), 250
Ludlam, Charles, 297
Lyricists, 279
*Lysistrata* (Aristophanes), 182

Mabou Mines, 154
Mac, Taylor, 298
*Macbeth* (Shakespeare), 60, 132, 207, 228
  acting in, 75
  comedy in, 188
  direction of, 105
  episodic drama of, 150
  fantasy in, 16, 18
  tragedy of, 141
*MacBird* (Garson), 288
MacDermot, Galt, 278
MacDonald, Karen, 130
Macy, William H., 79, 82
*Mad Forest* (Churchill), 320
Madison Square Garden, 63
Magic *if*, 78

Magrath, Monette, 250
*The Mahabharata*, 104
Main action, 99
Makeup, 234–237
  for fantastic or other nonrealistic characters, 86, 236–237
  realistic *vs*. nonrealistic, 18
Malaprops, 183
Mamet, David, 79, 82, 272–273
*Mamma Mia!*, 280
Managing directors, 117, 118–119
*Manahatta* (Nagle), 307
Mandela, Nelson, 103
Mann, Emily, 292
Manteghi, Serena, 200–201
*Marat/Sade*, 104
Marber, Patrick, 319
Marionettes, 91
Mark Taper Forum, 59, 305
Marlowe, Christopher, 30, 76, 158, 160
Martin, Nicholas, 111, 170–171, 206
Martin, Steve, 254
Marx, Karl, 32
Mary, Queen of Scots, 160
Masks, 239–242
  in Asian theatre, 240
  in Greek theatre, 76, 171, 240
  photo essay of, 240–241
Mass, in scene design, 209
*The Matchmaker* (Wilder), 110
*Matilda*, 215
Maxwell, Richard, 34
Mayo, Lisa, 306
*M. Butterfly* (Hwang), 286, 303



McBurney, Simon, 107
McCauley, Robbie, 287
McDonagh, Martin, 320–321
McGuire, Joshua, 151
McKintosh, Peter, 213
McNally, Terrence, 18
McPherson, Conor, 8, 321
*Measure for Measure* (Shakespeare), 150, 188
Mediated arts, 6–7
Medieval drama
  morality plays, 100, 101

mystery and morality, 16
stage design for, 55, 202
women in, 31
Medium point of view, 137
Mei Lanfang, 133
Meir, Golda, 235
Meisner, Sanford, 79
Melodrama, 172, 180
*The Menaechmi* (Plautus), 184
*The Merchant of Venice* (Shakespeare), 241, 246
Metaphors
functions of, 17–19
stage design and, 208
for theatrical productions, 102–105
Metteur-en-scène, 97
Meyerhold, Vsevolod, 106, 281–282
body movement exercises of, 85
Michetti, Michael, 251
Mickey, Susan E., 227
Microphones, 263
Middle Eastern theatre, 308, 312–314
*A Midsummer's Night's Dream*, 1, 104, 171, 207, 239
Miguel, Gloria, 306
Miguel, Muriel, 306
Miller, Arthur, 84, 106, 177, 272, 311
*The Crucible*, 101, 129
*Death of a Salesman*, 161
domestic drama of, 179
*The Price*, 131
Miller-Stephany, John, 67, 114
Millinery and costumes, 239
Mime, in Roman theatre, 77
Mimicry, as acting, 68, 71
Minor characters, 164
*The Miracle at Naples* (Grimm), 241
Miranda, Lin-Manuel, 33, 232, 279, 305
*The Misanthrope* (Molière), 227, 321
*The Miser* (Molière), 35
*Miss Julie* (Strindberg), 131
*Miss Saigon*, 110, 303
Mixing sound, 263–264
Mnouchkine, Ariane, 318
Modern drama, 106
Modern theatre, 268–269. *See also* Contemporary theatre
culture and, 30–32
emergence of, 282

European, 317
musical theatre, 274–281
nontraditional theatre, 281–287
tragedy and, 174–175
tragicomedy and, 188–190
variety of experiences in, 32–36
Modern tragedy, 174–175
Modern tragicomedy, 189–190
Molière, 138, 181, 227, 321
burial of, 77
college and university theatre, 35
comedy of, 183, 187
as director, 102
and dominant trait characters, 163, 164
Molina, Alfred, 270–271
Monologists, 286–287
Monzaemon, Chikamatsu, 91
Mood
lighting and, 248, 249
stage design and, 205
*The Moon Please* (Son), 303
Morality plays, 100, 101
Moscovitch, Hannah, 322
*Most Happy Fella*, 280
Motivated sounds, 261
Motivation in plays, 132
Mouawad, Jerry, 130
Mouawad, Wadi, 324
*The Mountaintop* (Hall), 110, 302
*Mourning Becomes Electra* (O'Neill), 232–233
Movement
in Asian theatre, 86, 87
director's role in, 112
lighting and, 255
Movie flat, 213
Moving light, 256–257
Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus, 274
*Mrs. Warren's Profession* (Shaw), 188
Müller, Heiner, 317–318
Multicultural theatre, 194, 269. *See also* Diverse multicultural theatre
Multifocus theatre, 62–63
Multimedia theatre, 63, 283
Muppets, 91
Musical revues, 154, 274
Musical theatre, 194, 274–281
appeal of, 280

coordination in, 89
films, based on, 280
jukebox, 280
juxtaposition in, 156
LGBTQ characters and issues in, 280–281
offbeat, 280
opera and operettas, 6, 274, 275
from 1920s and 1930s, 274–276
from 1940s and 1950s, 276–277
from 1960s through 1980s, 277–278
from 1990s to present, 279–280
revivals in, 280
scene design of, 212
sound amplification in, 259–260
structure in, 156–157
training for, 88, 89
*The Music Man*, 280
*My Fair Lady*, 156–157, 280
*The Myth of Sisyphus* (Camus), 190
*My Trip to Al Qaeda* (Wright), 288

Nagle, Mary Kathryn, 307
*The Nance* (Beane), 297
Narrative, abandonment of, 107
Narrators, 164–165
*Natasha, Pierre & the Great Comet of 1812*, 45–46, 220, 258
National Theatre, 317
Native American theatre, 305–308
Native American Theatre Ensemble, 306
*Native Son* (Wright), 300
Native Voices, 306
Naturalism, 99–100
Natural laws, suspension of in comedy, 181–182
Negro Ensemble Company, 301
Neighborhood theatre, 61
*Neutral Hero* (Maxwell), 34
New Lafayette Theatre, 301
*Newsies*, 88
*The Next Room* (Ruhl), 293
Nguyen, Qui, 304
Nicolao, Stefano, 229
Nielsen, Kristine, 170–171
*'Night, Mother* (Norman), 130, 292
*The Nightingale*, 303
*Nine Parts of Desire* (Raffo), 288
Nixon, Cynthia, 126–127

*No Exit* (Sartre), 130
*Noises Off* (Frayn), 184
Noncommercial theatres, producers in, 118–119
Nonhuman characters, 165, 228
Nonrealism, 19–22, 101
  realism and, 18, 20, 21–22
  scene design for, 206–207
Nonsense, 191
Non sequitur, 155, 191
Nontheatre buildings, staging in, 61
Nontraditional casting, 110
Nontraditional theatre, 281–287. *See also* Avant-garde and experimental theatre
  environmental theatre, 283
  happenings, 282–283
  multimedia theatre, 283
  performance art, 286–287
  postmodernism, 284–286
Nonverbal theatre, 154–155
Noone, James, 206
*The Normal Heart* (Kramer), 296–297



Norman, Marsha, 130, 292
Nottage, Lynn, 30, 129, 302
*A Number* (Churchill), 320
*Nuyorican*, 305

O'Brien, Barret, 128
Observation, Stanislavski technique of, 75
Observed theatre, 13
Obstacles, 134–135
Odets, Clifford, 177, 272
*Oedipus Rex* (Sophocles), 159
*Oedipus Rex* (Stravinski), 286
Off book rehearsals, 109
Off-Broadway theatre, 34–35, 275
*Offending the Audience* (Handke), 318
Off-off-Broadway theatre, 34–35, 275
Offstage, 50
Ogata, Issei, 287
*Oh Dad, Poor Dad, Mama's Hung You in the Closet, and I'm Feelin' So Sad* (Kopit), 139
*Oklahoma!*, 276
*Old-Fashioned Prostitutes (A True Romance)* (Foreman), 107, 156, 284
*Old Hats*, 186
Olivo, Karen, 267

*Once*, 220
O'Neill, Eugene, 107, 175, 272, 285
  costumes in, 232–233, 239
  domestic drama of, 179
  family conflict in, 132, 176
  staging of, 250
*One Man, Two Guvnors* (Bean), 186
One Step at a Time Like This, 15
*On the Royal Road: The Burgher King*, 294
Opening scenes, structure in, 134, 135
Open Theater, 154
Operas, 6, 274
Operettas, 274, 275
Opinions, in criticism, 37–38
Opposition in plays, 131–132
Orchestra, 47, 54
Orchestration, of characters, 167–168
*Orghast* (Hughes), 104
*The Orphan of Zhao*, 303
Oscar, Pall, 4–5
*Othello*, 24, 139, 166
*Our Town* (Wilder), 22, 133, 164
Owens-Greygrass, Robert, 307

Pace, 112
Paint charge, 217
Paint elevations, 219
*Painting Churches* (Howe), 292
Palestinian theatre, 313
Paltrow, Gwyneth, 16
Pan Asian Repertory Theatre, 303
Panorama point of view, 137
Pantomime, 21, 89
Parabolic aluminized reflector (PAR), 256
Parallel plots, 150
Parker, Trey, 279
Parks, Suzan-Lori, 18, 302
Parr, Mike, 324
Participatory theatre, 13, 14–15
Pask, Scott, 207–208
Patterns, as dramatic structure, 153–154
Patterson, Louis, 300
Paulus, Diane, 96–97, 207–208
*The Peach Blossom Fan* (Yuqian), 311
*Peer Gynt* (Ibsen), 128, 152
Performance art, 286–287

Performance Group, 58, 61, 154
Performers. *See* Actors
Period, of a production, 101, 207
Period background of an audience, 29–30
Personality, costumes indicating, 225
Personal roles and role playing, 72
*The Phantom of the Opera*, 49, 215, 279
*Phèdre* (Racine), 138
Photo essay
  actor's range, 80–81
  comedy, forms of, 186
  extraordinary characters, 158–159
  masks, 240–241
  modern domestic drama, 176–177
  stage costumes, 226–227
  stage lighting, 250–251
Photo opportunities, 23
Physical acting, 82, 83–89
Physical layout of the stage, 210
  proscenium stages, 48, 50–51
Physical production of a play, 108. *See also* Scenery; Sound; Stage lighting; Theatre spaces
*The Piano Lesson* (Wilson), 18
*Picnic* (Inge), 298
Picture-frame stage, 47. *See also* Proscenium stages
Pierpont, Bill, 69
Piñero, Miguel, 305
Pinter, Harold, 190
*Pippin*, 208, 279
*The Pirates of Penzance*, 275
Place
  costumes indicating, 224–225
  lighting for, 248
Platform stage, 55
Plautus, Titus Maccius, 184
Playhouse of the Ridiculous, 297
Playing area, 210
*Play of Giants* (Soyinka), 315
Plays, background information on, 28–29
*The Play That Goes Wrong*, 181
Playwrights, 121, 124–142
  background information on, 28–29
  and directors, 98, 99
  dramatic structure set by, 132–136
  educational tools and, 14
  point of view of, 137–139

role of, 121, 127–128
society's point of view and, 139–141
structural conventions used by, 129–132
women, 291–294
Plot
in climactic drama, 146–147
comedic complications of, 184–185
in episodic drama, 147, 150
*vs*. story, 134
structure from, 132
in theatre of the absurd, 192
Plum, Paula, 130
*Poetics* (Aristotle), 137, 174
Point of view, 136–141
in film, 136–137
and genre, theatrical, 172
individual, 138
of playwright, 137–139
of society, 139–141
Polish Laboratory Theatre, 154
Polish theatre, 316
Political theatre, 287–289
Politics and theatre, 23
*Polyekran*, 211
Poor theatre, 106, 283
*Porgy and Bess*, 275–276
Porter, Cole, 277
Postmodern directors, 106–107
Postmodernism, 194, 284–286
Practical aesthetics, 82
Previews, 113–114
*The Price* (Miller), 131
*Pride and Prejudice*, 11
Prince, Harold, 276, 278
*Private Lives* (Coward), 187
Problem plays, 189, 194
Producers, 117–121
British, 97
in commercial productions, 117–118
in noncommercial productions, 118–119
role of, 118
Production managers, 119–121
Projection, in scenic design, 212, 214, 217
*Prometheus Bound* (Aeschylus), 174
Property designers, 217
Props, 214, 218

Proscenium arch, 47, 50–51
Proscenium stages, 47–51
  explanation of, 46
  physical layout of, 48, 50–51
Protagonists, 131, 166
Protagoras, 141



Psychodrama, 14
Psychophysical actions and Stanislavski, 78–79
Publicity, 119
Puerto Rican theatre, 305
*Pulcinella Goes to Hell*, 241
Pulling costumes, 230
Punchdrunk, 15, 61
Puns, 183
Puppetry, 77, 91, 286, 311
  in Asian theatre, 302–303, 311
*Pygmalion* (Shaw), 157

Quintessential characters, 160–162

Racine, Jean, 77, 138
*Radio Golf* (Wilson), 228
Rado, Joseph, 278
Raffo, Heather, 288
Ragni, Gerome, 278
*Railway Children*, 200–201
*A Raisin in the Sun* (Hansberry), 18, 20, 26–28, 179, 292, 300, 302
Rake, 47
*Ramakian*, 240
Rame, Franca, 318
Rauch, Bill, 291
Realism, 19–20
  explanation of, 74
  and factual theatre, 22–24
  heightened, 100–101
  naturalism, 99–100
  and nonrealism, 18, 20, 21–22
  scene design and, 205–206
  Stanislavski system and, 74–78
Realistic acting, 18, 74
  modern approaches to, 79
  Stanislavski system, 74–78
Reality television, 23
Real-life roles onstage, 73
Rebeck, Theresa, 293

Regents Park Open Air Theatre, 11
Regional theatre, 34, 275
Rehearsals
  director's role in, 109–110
  dress, 113
  technical, 112–113, 114
Reinforcement of sound, 262
Reinholz, Randy, 306
Relaxation, Stanislavski technique of, 75
Religious celebrations, 68
Rendering, 217
*Rent*, 280
Representative characters, 160–162
Reproduction of sound, 261–262
Resident professional theatre, 34
*Respect for Aging* (Hagen), 79
Restoration period in England, 153, 224
Reviewers, 36, 37. *See also* Critics/criticism
Revues, 154, 274
Reza, Yasmina, 318
*Rhinoceros* (Ionesco), 165
Rhythm, 112, 249–252
Rice, Elmer, 101
Rice, Tim, 279
Richards, Lloyd, 300
Ridiculous situations, 191
Rituals
  as dramatic structure, 145, 153, 155
  Native American, 305–306
  as theatre, 68
*The Rivals* (Sheridan), 183
Robbins, Jerome, 267, 277, 278–279
Robeson, Paul, 299
Rock concert lighting, 258
Rodgers, Richard, 184, 276
Rod puppets, 91
Rodriguez, Dámaso, 250
Role model, 69
Role playing, 68–69, 71
Role reversal, 14
Roman theatre, 271
  stage design for, 55
  women in, 77
Romantic drama, 178
Romanticism, 178
*Romeo and Juliet* (Shakespeare), 134, 135, 228

*Roosters* (Sanchez-Scott), 304–305
Rosenberg, Philip, 206
Ross, Finn, 212
Rostand, Edmond, 165
Rourke, Josie, 320
Royal Shakespeare Company, 21, 317
Ruffalo, Mark, 131
Ruhl, Sarah, 249, 291, 292–293, 294
*Ruined* (Nottage), 302
Run-through of play, 112
*R.U.R.* (Karel), 165
Russian theatre, 315–316
Rylance, Mark, 84

Saddiki, Tayed, 315
*Sagittarius Ponderosa* (Kreimendehl, Barbagallo, and Kaufman), 298
*Saint Joan* (Shaw), 157, 159, 178, 225
Sanchez-Scott, Milcha, 304–305
Sannu, Ya'qub, 313
Sartre, Jean-Paul, 130
Satire, 185–187, 204
Saxe-Meiningen, George II, duke of, 102
*The Scene* (Rebeck), 293
Scene design, 198, 202. *See also* Scenery
  collaboration and production process of, 217–220
  contemporary, 203–217
  elements of, 209–215
  evaluating, 220
  history of, 202–203
  materials and machinery of, 211–214
  objectives of, 203–209
  physical layout and, 210
  practical design problems of, 209
  process for, 215–217
  special effects and, 212, 213, 214–215
  for total environment, 220
Scene designers, 202, 203–209
  central image or metaphor of, 208
  coordinating with the whole, 208–209
  design concept of, 207–208
  design problems, solving, 209
  locale and period, establishing, 207
  tone and style, establishing, 203–207
Scenery, 201–220. *See also* Scene design
  audience's view of, 201
  coordination of, 208–209

environment for a play, 204
realistic and nonrealistic, 18, 206
Scenes and climactic drama, 147
Scenic charge artists, 217
Scenography, 211
Schechner, Richard, 283
Schmidt, Harvey, 235
*The School for Lies*, 227
*The School for Scandal* (Sheridan), 185
*School of Rock*, 279
Schuman, Peter, 91
Schwartz, Stephen, 237
Scotcher, Joanna, 200–201
Scott, A. O., 284
Scott, Jean Bruce, 306
Screen projection, 213–214
Scrim, 212, 213, 214
Scripts, choice of, 98–99
Scrollers and stage lighting, 253, 256
*The Sea-Gull* (Chekhov), 78
*Seascape* (Albee), 165
*The Second Shepherds' Play*, 188
Segments as structure, 155–156
Selective realism, 100
*Self-Defense or death of some salesmen* (Kreitzer), 293
*Seminar* (Rebeck), 293
Serial structure, 154
*The Servant of Two Masters* (Goldoni), 186
Shadow puppets, 91, 312
Shakespeare, William, 30, 271. *See also* specific plays
actors, demands on, 83
casting the plays of, 110
conflict in plays of, 132



Shakespeare, William (*continue*)
costumes in, 225, 227, 228, 239, 241
episodic dramatic structure in, 148–149, 151
lighting for, 246
music of, 274
nonrealism of plays of, 18, 22
scene design for, 207
staging plays by, 56, 58
structure of plays of, 145
theatrical genres and, 171
tragicomedy of, 188–189, 194

Shakespeare festivals, 34
*Shakespeare in Love* (film), 16
Shakespeare's Globe Theatre, 1, 3, 135
Shalhoub, Tony, 131
Shanley, John Patrick, 18
Shape and form of stage lighting, 247–248
Shape of costumes, 230–232
Shaw, Fiona, 90, 320
Shaw, George Bernard, 157, 159, 181, 287
  comedy of ideas of, 188
  costumes in, 225
  heroic drama of, 178
Shaw, Peggy, 295
*The Sheep Well* (Lope de Vega), 147
Shepard, Sam, 272, 275
Sher, Antony, 144–145
Sheridan, Richard Brinsley, 183, 185
*She Stoops to Conquer* (Goldsmith), 171
*Shingeki*, 312
*Short Eyes* (Piñero), 305
Shotgun mike, 263
*Show Boat*, 274–275, 276
Silhouette of costumes, 230
Simon, Neil, 187
Sircar, Badal, 310
Sisto, Rocco, 107
Sitcoms, 187
Site-specific companies, 60, 61, 62
*Six Degrees of Separation* (Guare), 70–71
Slapstick, 181, 203–204
*Sleep No More* (Punchdrunk), 15, 61
Slice-of-life drama, 100
Smith, Anna Deavere, 287
Sobol, Joshua, 314
Social issues in theatre, 30
Social media, theatre reviews on, 37
Social roles and role playing, 71–72
Social status of actors, 76–77
Society, point of view of, 139–141
Society, theatre and, 30, 32, 33
Sociodrama, 14
Socrates, 182
Soft-edged spotlights, 256
Soliloquy, 21
Son, Diana, 303
Sondheim, Stephen, 267, 278

*Song for a Nisei Fisherman* (Gotanda), 303
*Songs of the Dragons Flying to Heaven* (Lee), 303
Soo, Phillipa, 232
Sophocles, 30, 76, 134, 159, 178
  contrasting characters of, 166
  *Electra*, 18, 128
  glorifying humans of, 140
Sound, 259–264
  amplification of, 259–261
  audience view of, 201
  evaluating, 265
  reinforcement of, 262
  reproduction of, 261–262
  technology and, 259–260, 263–264
Sound designers, 199, 261
Sound effects, 260–262
Sound recordings, 263–264
Soyinka, Wole, 315, 316
Space. *See also* Theatre spaces
  director's use of, 112
  limited, 130
*Spamilton*, 185
Spanish thrust stage, 55
Special effects
  lighting and sound, 264–265
  scenic, 212, 213, 214–215
Specifics, importance of, in Stanislavski technique, 75
Spectators. *See* Audience
*Spiderman: Turn Off the Dark*, 40
Spiderwoman Theatre, 306
Spill of light, 248
Spine of a play, 99
Spine of a role, 78, 90
Split Britches, 293–294, 295
*Spunk* (Wolfe), 302
Stage costumes. *See* Costumes
Stage house, 53, 55
Stage left, 50
Stage lighting, 244–259. *See also* Lighting design
  audience view of, 201
  and central image in, 252
  color of, 253, 254
  controls for, 257–258
  distribution of, 253–255
  evaluating, 265
  focus and composition of, 248

history of, 245–246
intensity of, 253
mood and style of, 248, 249
movement in, 255
nonrealism of, 18
photo essay on, 250–251
properties of, 253–255
realistic *vs*. nonrealistic, 18
rhythm in, 249, 252
role of, 199
shape and form of, 247–248
special effects in, 264–265
technology and, 246, 257
time and place of, 248
types of, 255–257
visibility and, 247
Stage managers, 97, 98, 114–115
Stage pictures, 111
Stage right, 50
Stage spaces. *See* Theatre spaces
Stanislavski, Constantin, 74–75, 82, 99, 190
Stanislavski system, 74–78
*Star Wars*, 21
Status, costumes indicating, 225
Stein, Joseph, 277
Stein, Peter, 317, 318
Steinbeck, John, 251
Steppenwolf Theatre Company of Chicago, 82
Sternheim, Carl, 254
Stewart, Michael, 277
*Stick Fly* (Diamond), 302
*Stifter's Things*, 83
*Still Life* (Mann), 292
Stitchers, 229
Stock characters, 157, 162–164
Stone, Matt, 279
Stoppard, Tom, 319
Story
plot *vs*., 134
realistic *vs*. nonrealistic, 18
*The Story of the Chalk Circle*, 133
Strasberg, Lee, 79
Stravinski, Igor, 286
*A Streetcar Named Desire* (Williams), 132, 176, 179, 293–294, 321
realism of, 18
*Streetcar Named Desire* (van Hove's version), 106

Street theatre, 61
Strindberg, August, 106, 258, 273
*The Dream Play*, 18
*Miss Julie*, 131
and realism, 74
Strip lights, 256
Structure. *See also* Climactic structure; Episodic dramatic structure
creation of, 132–136
in experimental and avant-garde theatre, 154–156
in musical theatre, 156–157
plot as, 132–134
realistic *vs*. nonrealistic, 18
segments and tableaux as, 155–156
serial, 154
Studi, DeLanna, 307



Style
of costumes, 224
lighting and, 248, 249
of a production, 99–101
of scene design, 203–207
Subplots, in episodic drama, 150
Sullivan, Arthur, 274, 275
Sullivan, Daniel, 127
*Sunset Boulevard*, 279
Superobjective of a character, 78, 90
Superrealism, 99
Surrealism, 194
Suzuki, Tadashi, 87, 312
Svoboda, Josef, 211, 316
*Sweat* (Nottage), 30, 129, 302
*Sweeney Todd: The Demon Barber of Fleet Street*, 278
*Sweet Charity*, 279
Sword fights on stage, 82, 83
Symbolic characters, 228
Symbols, function of, 17, 19
in scene design, 202
Synthesis and integration, 90–92
Syrian theatre, 313–314

Tableaux as structure, 155–156
Tai chi, 87
Taichman, Rebecca, 153, 250
*Take a Giant Step* (Patterson), 300
*Tamburlaine*, 160
*Tartuffe* (Molière), 187

Tarver, Jennifer, 123, 146
Taylor, James P., 250
Taymor, Julie, 228, 286
Tazewell, Paul, 208, 232
Technical directors, 217, 218
Technical rehearsal, 112–113, 114
Technology
  actors and, 83
  costume design and, 234
  lighting and, 246, 257
  sound and, 259–260, 263–264
Technology and acting, 83
Teichman, Rebecca, 79
Television, films and, 6–7
*The Tempest* (Shakespeare), 18, 144–145, 286
  costumes in, 227
  staging of, 101
Tent theatres, 53
Terry, Megan, 288
Tesori, Jeanine, 281
Text-based directing, 98
Texture, in scene design, 210
*The Thanksgiving Play* (FastHorse), 307–308
Theatre directors. *See* Directors
Theatre genres, 171–194. *See also* specific genres
  additional forms, 194
  bourgeois, 178–180
  comedy as, 171, 181–188
  domestic, 178–180
  heroic drama as, 175–178
  melodrama as, 180
  theatre of the absurd as, 190–194
  tragedy as, 172–175
  tragicomedy as, 188–190, 192
  types of, 171–172
Theatre-in-the-round, 46. *See also* Arena stage
Theatremania.com, 37
Theatre of fact, 23, 317
Theatre of the absurd, 190–194, 281
  characters in, 193–194
  language in, 193
  plot in, 192
*Theatre of the Oppressed* (Boal), 12, 13, 322
Theatre spaces, 46–64, 155
  adapted, 61
  arena stage, 46, 51–53

black box, 46, 63–64, 260
created and found, 58–63
environment, creating, 45–46
evaluating, 65–66
limits of, 130
multifocus environments, 62–63
in nontheatre buildings, 61
popular, 63
proscenium stages, 46, 47–51
site specific, 60
special requirements of, 65
street theatre as, 61
thrust stage, 46, 53–58, 59
*Thirty Nine Steps*, 213
Thomas, Brandon, 67
Thompson, John Douglas, 80–81
*Threepenny Opera* (Brecht-Weill), 155
*Three Sisters* (Chekhov), 132, 168, 208
Through line of a role, Stanislavski technique of, 78
Thrust stage, 53–58, 59
Elizabethan, 44–45, 56–57
explanation of, 46
Spanish, 55
Thumbnail sketches, 215
Time
costumes and, 224–225
director's use of, 112
lighting and, 248
limited, 130–131
stage design and, 207
Tolstoy, Leo, 45
Tone
in costumes, 224
in scene design, 203–207, 208
Tony Administration Committee, 259
*Topdog/Underdog* (Park), 18
Torelli, Giacomo, 47
Touring theatre, 33
Townsend, Justin, 250
Traditional directors, 98–105
Traditional theatre, 271–273
Traditional tragedy, 172–174
Tragedy, 172–175
effect of, 174
modern, 174–175
and society's point of view, 139–141

traditional, 172–174
*The Tragical History of Doctor Faustus* (Marlowe), 76, 158, 160
Tragic circumstances, 173
Tragic irretrievability, 173
Tragicomedy, 188–190, 192
modern, 189–190
Tragic verse, 173–174
Transitory and immediate theatre, 8–9
Trapdoors, 211
Treadmills, 212
Treadwell, Sophie, 292
*The Treatment* (Ensler), 288
Tremblay, Michel, 324
Trestle stage, 55
*A Trip to Coontown*, 299
Trump, Donald, 288, 294
Tryouts of plays, 113–114
Tune, Tommy, 279
Turntables, 212
*Twelfth Night* (Shakespeare), 84
*Twilight: Los Angeles 1992* (Smith), 287
Twitter, 37
*The Two Gentlemen of Verona*, 3
Typecasting, 108

*Uncle Vanya* (Chekhov), 167, 190, 192, 260
Undergarments, 232
*The Underpants*, 254
Underscoring of sound, 262
*Unexploded Ordinances*, 295
University theatre, 35–36
*Unto These Hills*, 11
Upstage, 50

Vaccaro, John, 297
Valdéz, Luis, 304, 305
Valk, Kate, 107
van Hove, Ivo, 92, 106, 321
van Itallie, Jean-Claude, 8
Van Teighem, David, 260
Vaudeville, 274
Vecsey, George, 69
Verbal humor, 183
Versweyveld, Jan, 321
Video design, 214
*Vietgone* (Nguyen), 304

Vietnam War memorial, 17
*Viet Rock* (Terry), 288
*A View from the Bridge* (Miller), 84, 106

346

Viewpoint. *See* Point of view
Viewpoints theory, 87
Viqueira, Richard, 322
Visibility in stage lighting, 247
*The Visit* (Dürrenmatt), 193–194
Visual composition, 111
Vocal exercises, 85
Vogel, Paula, 153, 292
Voice, 83–89
  warm-up exercises for, 85
Voice training, 84
*Volpone* (Jonson), 157

Wagon, 211
Wagon stage, 55, 211–212
*Waiting for Godot* (Beckett), 153–154, 191, 193, 282
*Waiting for Orestes: Electra*, 312
Walker, Alice, 209
Walker, George, 299
Walpole, Horace, 138, 172
Wannamaker, Zoe, 197
*War and Peace* (Tolstoy), 45
Ward, Douglas Turner, 236
*War Horse*, 91, 214
Warm-up exercises for voice, 85
Warner, Deborah, 90, 320
Wasserstein, Wendy, 292
*Water by the Spoonful* (Hudes), 305
*The Water's Edge* (Rebeck), 293
*The Way of the World* (Congreve), 152
*We Are the Children of the Camp*, 313
Weaver, Lois, 295
Webb, Jeremy, 170–171
Webster, John, 173
Weiss, Peter, 104, 317
Welles, Orson, 300
Well-made plays, 147
West, Cheryl, 302
Western European theatre, 317–319
Western theatre, demands of, 76
*West Side Story*, 131, 228, 267
  nonrealism of, 18

Wheeldon, Christopher, 124
*When We Are Married*, 114
Whoriskey, Kate, 30, 302
*Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?* (Albee), 18, 161, 272
*Wicked*, 49, 237, 246
Wigs in costume design, 237, 238
Wilde, Oscar, 183, 187, 188
Wilder, Thornton, 22, 110, 164
  Asian theatre influence on, 133
Williams, Bert, 299
Williams, Tennessee, 272, 274, 293–294, 319
  *Cat on a Hot Tin Roof*, 146
  domestic drama of, 179
  *The Glass Menagerie*, 22, 75, 164, 272
  *A Streetcar Named Desire*, 18, 176, 293–294
Wilson, August, 110, 228, 273, 300, 301
  *Fences*, 161, 302
  *The Piano Lesson*, 18
Wilson, Robert, 20, 89, 106, 107, 206, 283
  dramatic structure of, 155, 156
Winged Victory statue, 5–6, 8
*The Winter's Tale*, 79
*Wit* (Edson), 18, 292
Witkiewicz, Ignacy, 316
Wolfe, George C., 302
Women in theatre, 31, 77
  feminist theatre and, 137, 291–294
Wong, B. D., 303
Woods, Jeannie M., 35
Woolard, David C., 254
Wooster Group, 107, 154, 285
*The World Is Flat* (Friedman), 309
*The Would-Be Gentleman* (Molière), 183
Wright, Lawrence, 288
Wright, Richard, 300
Wuornos, Aileen, 293
Wycherley, William, 102, 188

Yavich, Anita, 241
Yellow Robe, William F., Jr., 306
Yew, Chay, 303
Yexin, Sha, 311
*Yoheen* (Gotanda), 303
Young people's theatre, 35
Youth theatre, 35
YouTube, 37

Yuqian, Ouyang, 311

*Zoot Suit* (Valdéz), 304, 305